A GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE:

FOR THE USE OF

SCHOOLS,

WITH

EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES.

By Wm. BINGHAM, A. M.

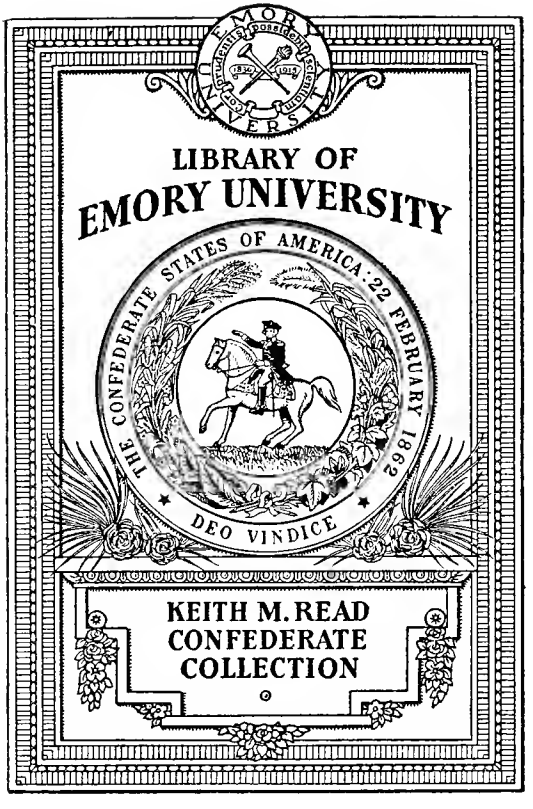
OF THE BINGHAM SCHOOL.

TROY, N. Y.

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY [illegible]

RICHMOND, VA., W. [illegible]

1817.


EMORY UNIVERSITY
1836
1915
LIBRARY OF
EMORY UNIVERSITY
THE CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA: 22 FEBRUARY 1862
DEO VINDICE
KEITH M. READ
CONFEDERATE
COLLECTION

ERRATA.

The following are some of the most important *erratá* in the Etymology and Syntax: the teacher will do well to correct at once.

Page	134, Rem. 1,	for	*bove in*	read	*bovem.*
"	" Ex.	"	*movebitur*	"	*movebuntur*
"	140	"		"	*edis* or *es*, *edit* or *est*; *editis* or *estis.*
"	"	"	*iv-eroris*	"	*iv-ero, -eris, &c.*
"	148	"	§ 83, 2	"	§ 84, 2.
"	152	"	§ 85, 2	"	§ 86, 2.
"	168, Examp.;	"	§ 129	"	§ 129, Rem 6.
"	170, *se ipse;*	"	§ 84, b	"	§ 85, b.
"	173, § 144, Rem. 1,		*ducire*	"	*ducere.*
"	" R. xvi;	"	*Dative to*	"	*Dative of.*
"	" "	"	*gerundine*	"	*gerundive.*
"	175, Germanis;	"	§ 141	"	§ 142.
"	" mihi,	"	xiv	"	xvi.
"	180, annos,	"	§ 152	"	§ 153.
"	191, Rem. 1,	"	*morire*	"	*morire.*
"	192, § 178, Rem. 1;		*epistota*	"	*epistola.*
"	194, capiendi;	"	§ 177	"	§ 176.
"	195, *must love;*	"	§ 178, Rem. 2		§ 178, Rem. 1.
"	203,	"	§ 189, Exc.		§ 189, Ex. (c).
"	206,	"	*as he alleged*		*as they alleged.*
"	207, Rem. 4;	"	*imperus*	"	*imperitus.*
"	216, R. li, b;	"	*occuluftur*	"	*occultatur.*

" 222; the reference, § 183, Rem., should follow *vivamus.*

" 229; the running head should be ORATIO OBLIQUA; and that title should precede § 216.

A GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE:

FOR THE USE OF

SCHOOLS,

WITH

EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES

By Wm. BINGHAM, A. M.,

OF THE BINGHAM SCHOOL.

GREENSBORO, N. C.:

PUBLISHED BY STERLING, CAMPBELL & ALBRIGHT:

RICHMOND, VA., W. HARGRAVE WHITE.

1863

Entered according to Act of Congress,
in the year 1862, by
BY WILLIAM BINGHAM,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Confederate States, for the District of Pamlico,
North Carolina.

PREFACE

In preparing the accompanying work it has been the aim of the author to supply what he has felt in his own experience to be a great desideratum,—a *practical first book in Latin*, suited to the capacity of beginners, and yet full enough for a book of reference throughout a course of preparation for college. Free use has been made of the works of the best German, English, and American authors, and no pains have been spared to produce a book adapted to the wants of our Southern youth. The almost insuperable difficulties in the way of publication render it impossible to present the work in the most desirable style of binding and typography; but the author is assured that such defects as result from the terrible struggle through which our nation is passing, will be readily overlooked.

It will be observed that the paradigms have been syllabicated with reference to the English method of pronunciation; but the teacher can without difficulty use either the Roman or Continental method.

Madvig's system of gender in the third declension has been adopted as the most philosophical and the shortest, all the rules and exceptions occupying but two pages; and

though teachers will find it inconvenient to have old associations broken up, the author is convinced that a fair trial will satisfy all that this system is the best.

The exercises have been taken, for the most part from classical authors, and are so arranged as to constitute a continual review of what precedes. Those teachers who prefer the synthetic method of instruction to the exclusion of the analytic, can omit the exercises, as the work is complete without them.

Many facts of the language, which the pupil will readily find out for himself, have been omitted; also a number which properly pertain to the subject of Latin prose composition, on which subject the author proposes to prepare a work for the use of schools.

The work, imperfect as the author is conscious that it is, is commended to the teachers of the Confederate States as an auxiliary, however feeble, in establishing Southern literary and intellectual independence.

OAKS, N. C., May 10th, 1863.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

§ 1. Latin Grammar is the science of the Latin language. It treats of the words of the language, and the laws by which they are combined into sentences.

It is divided into Etymology and Syntax.

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 2. Etymology treats, 1. Of the letters which make up words, and their pronunciation; 2. Of the changes which words undergo; 3. Of their derivation.

LETTERS.

§ 3. A letter is a mark used to represent a sound of the human voice.

In the Latin alphabet there are twenty-five letters. They are A,a; B,b; C,c; D,d; E,e; F,f; G,g; H,h; I,i; J,j; K,k; L,l; M,m; N,n; O,o; P,p; Q,q; R,r; S,s; T,t; U,u; V,v; X,x; Y,y; Z,z.

* *Remark.* I and J were originally the same letter; so also U and V. K, Y, and Z are used only in words derived from the Greek. H is a breathing.

§ 4. Letters are divided into vowels and consonants. The vowels are. a, e, i, o, u, y.

Of the consonants,
- four are liquids, l, m. n, r;
- three are c sounds, c, g, q, —;
- four are p sounds, p, b, f, v;
- two are t sounds, t, d;
- two are double consonants, x, z.

DIPHTHONGS.

§ 5. A diphthong is the union of two vowels in one sound. The diphthongs are ae, oe, (often written together, æ, œ) ai, au, ei, eu, oi.

PRONUNCIATION.

§ 6. *Continental method.*

Short *a*, as in *hat*.
Long *a*, as in *father*.
Short *e*, as in *met*.
Long *e*, as *a* in *made*.
Short *i*, as in *sit*.
Long *i*, as in *machine*.
Short *o*, as in *not*.
Long *o*, as in *no*.
u, as *o* in *do*.
æ and *œ*, as *a* in *made*.
au, as *ou* in *our*.
eu, as in *feud*.
ei, as *i* in *ire*.

§ 7. *English method.*

The letters are pronounced as in English:

Exc. 1. Final *a* has the broad sound, as in *ah*. Other final vowels have the long sound.

Exc. 2. *Es* final is pronounced like the English *ease*.

Exc. 3. *Os* final in plural cases is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*.

Exc. 4. *C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, i. and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ*, *œ*, and *eu*. Otherwise it has the sound of *k*.

Exc. 5. *ch* has the sound of *k*.

Exc. 6. *G* has the sound of *j* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ*.

SYLLABLES.

§ 8. There are no silent vowels in Latin; but every

word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs; as *ma-re.*

2. A word { of one syllable is called a *monosyllable;* of two syllables, a *dissyllable;* of more than two, a *polysyllable.*

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate;* the next to the last, the *penult;* the third from the last, the *antepenult.*

QUANTITY, ACCENT.

§ 9. *Rule.* 1. All diphthongs are long.

Rule 2. A vowel before another vowel is short.

Rule 3. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long by position.

Rule 4. Dissyllables are accented on the penult; as *de*-us.

Rule 5. Polysyllables are accented

(a) on the penult if the penult is long; as le-*o*-nis.

(b) on the antepenult if the penult is short; as *dom*-i-nus.

EXPLANATION OF MARKS.

§ 10. The marks of punctuation are the *comma* (,), used to mark the shortest pauses; the *semicolon* (;), used to mark a pause twice as long as the comma; the *colon* (:), used to mark a pause three times as long as the comma; the *period* (.), used to mark the longest pause; the *interrogation point* (?), which shows that a question is asked; and the *exclamation point* (!), used to mark expressions of surprise, grief, &c. Penultimate vowels, when long, will be *italicized.*

DIVISION OF WORDS.

§ 11. I. Words are divided according to their *formation* into

1. *Primitive;* i. e. not derived from other words; as, *man, king.*

2. *Derivative;* i. e. derived from other words; as, *manly, kingdom.*

3. *Simple;* i. e. not made up of other words; as, *man.*

4. *Compound;* i. e. made up of other words: as, *mankind.*

II. Words are divided according to their *meaning* into eight classes called parts of speech: viz. the *Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.*

NOUNS.

§ 12. 1. A noun is the name of a thing;* as, *man, city.*

2. A common noun is the name of any one of a class of things; as, *man, city.*

3. A proper noun is the name of an individual thing; as, *Cæsar, Rome.*

4. An abstract noun is the name of a quality, action, being, or mode of action or being; as, *goodness, running.*

5. A collective noun is one which in the singular denotes more than one; as, *multitude.*

Gender, Number, Case, Person.

§ 13. 1. To nouns belong *gender, number, case,* and *person.*

2. *Natural* gender denotes the distinction of sex.

* A *thing* is whatever one can *think* of (res,—reor).

3. *Grammatical* gender is that which is determined, not by sex, but by declension and termination.

Rule 1. Names of *male beings*, and of most *rivers*, *winds*, *months*, *mountains*, and *nations*, are masculine.

Rule 2. Names of *female beings*, *cities*, *countries*, *trees*, *plants*, *islands*, *ships*, and *gems*, are feminine.

Rule 3. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are neuter.

Rule 4. Some nouns are either masculine or feminine. These, if they are names of living beings, are said to be of the *common* gender; if of things without life, of the *doubtful* gender.

§ 14. *Number* is the variation of form which shows whether one thing is meant, or more than one.

The *singular* number is the form which denotes one thing; as, *stell-a*, a star: the *plural* is the form which denotes more than one; as, *stell-æ*, stars.

§ 15. *Case* is the variation of form which shows the relation of the noun to other words.

Latin nouns have six cases: viz.

(a) The *nominative*, which answers the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of;

(b) The *genitive*, which marks those relations expressed in English by *of*, or the possessive case; as, *umbra*, the shade, (*of what?*) *sylvæ*, of the forest;

(c) The *dative*, which denotes that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to* which, any thing is, or is done;

(d) The *accusative*, which is the object of a transitive verb, or of certain prepositions;

(e) The *vocative*, which is used when a person is addressed;

(f) The *ablative*, which marks those relations expressed in English by *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*.

§ 16. *Person* means the character which a noun or pronoun has, according as it represents the *speaker*, the person *spoken to*, or the thing *spoken of*.

A noun or pronoun representing the *speaker* is of the *first person*; as, *I, Darius, make a decree.* Here "*I*," and "*Darius*" are of the 1st person.

A noun or pronoun representing the person *spoken to* is of the second person; as, *Do you hear me, Robert?* Here "*you*" and "*Robert*" are of the 2nd person.

Remark.—Things without life are sometimes addressed and are then said to be *personified*, or treated as persons.

A noun or pronoun representing the thing spoken of is of the third person; as, *John runs, water freezes.* Here "*John*" and "*water*" are of the 3rd person.

INFLECTION.

§ 17 The changes which words undergo to express their different relations is called inflection.

The inflection of nouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the endings of the genitive singular.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 18. Latin nouns which have *æ* in the genitive singular are of the first declension. The terminations are,

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. and Voc.	*a*	*æ*
Gen.	*æ*	*arum*
Dat.	*æ*	*is*
Acc.	*am*	*as*
Abl.	*a*	*is*

By adding these terminations to the stem *mens*—, which means *a table*, we have the following

PARADIGM.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	*mens*-a,	*a table.*	*mens*-æ,	*tables.*
Gen.	*mens*-æ	*of a table.*	*mens*-arum,	*of tables.*
Dat.	*mens*-æ,	*to* or *for a table.*	*mens*-is,	*to* or *for tables.*
Acc.	*mens*-am,	*a table.*	*mens*-as,	*tables.*
Voc.	*mens*-a,	*O table!*	*mens*-æ,	*O tables!*
Abl.	*mens*-a,	*with, from, in, by, a table.*	*mens*-is,	*with, from, in, by, tables.*

Remark.—The Latin has no article; therefore *mensa* may be rendered *a* table, or *the* table, according to the connection.

Rule. Latin nouns of this declension are feminine.

Exc. 1. Names and appellations of men, as *Galba*, *nauta*.

Exc. 2. Names of rivers.

Exc. 3. *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea, is masc.; and *dama*, a fallow deer, and *talpa*, a mole, are common.

Note.—*Dea*, a goddess; *equa*, a mare; *filia*, a daughter; and *mula*, a she-mule, have sometimes *abus* in the dative and ablative plural.

For Greek nouns of 1st Dec., see appendix I.

EXERCISE. 1.

§ 19. Like *mensa* decline the following nouns, and commit to memory their meanings.

Aquila,	*eagle.*	Epistola,	*letter.*
Aqua,	*water.*	Nauta, (§ 18, Exc. 1.)	*sailor.*
Columba,	*dove.*	Insula,	*island.*

Corona,	*crown*	Luna,	*moon.*
Ara,	*altar,*	Medicina,	*medicine.*
Agricola, (§ 18, Exc. 1.)	*farmar.*	Poeta, (§ 18, Exc. 1.)	*poet.*
Ala,	*wing.*	Regina,	*queen.*
Ancilla,	*maid-servant.*	Fuga,	*flight.*
Injuria,	*injury.*	Pluma,	*feather.*
Belga. (§ 18, Exc. 1.)	*a Belgian,*	Filia,	*danghter.*

Translate into English.

Columbæ. Coronarum. Aris. Reginam. Filiabus. Injuriis. Belgarum. Fuga. Alis. Ancillæ. Ancillis. Injuriarum. Columbis.

Translate into Latin.

Of water. For the farmer. Of the maid servants. To the farmers. By wings. Of feathers. To sailors. The letter. By the letters. In the island. Of islands. Of the moon.

EXERCISE. 2.

§ 20. *Rule.* The genitive is used to limit the meaning of nouns, and also of some adjectives, verbs, and adverbs.

Thus *pluma* means *a feather, any feather;* but when the genitive *columbæ* is added, the application of *pluma* is *limited,* or *confined* to the dove; *columbæ pluma* means a *dove's* feather, and no other sort.

Rule of position. The emphatic word, whether limiting or limited, stands first. Thus, *filia* reginæ, the *daughter* (not the son) of the queen; *reginæ* filia, the *queen's* (not the king's) daughter.

Translate into English.

Columbæ pluma. Columbarum plumæ. Columbæ alis. Filia agricolæ. Agricolæ filia. Agricolarum filiabus. Reginarum coronæ. Coronæ reginarum. Nautæ epistola. Injuria poetæ. Insula Belgarum. Fuga ancillæ. Ancillarum fuga.

Translate into Latin.

[Emphatic words are in italics.]

In the island of the Belgians. For the altars of the Belgians. A *sailor's* letter. The *Queen's* letter. By the *flight* of the farmer. The flight of the farmer's doves. The injury of the queen's maid-servants. O daughters of the queen's maid-servants! The water of the island.

EXERCISE. 3.

Subject and Predicate. Partial conjugation of verbs.

§ 21. I. A *sentence* is a thought expressed in words; as, *snow melts.*

1. Every sentence consists of

(a) A *Predicate;* i. e. that which is *declared;*

(b) A *subject;* i. e. that of which the declaration is made.

In the sentence "*snow melts,*" the predicate is "*melts,*" because "*melts*" is what is declared or asserted about "*snow;*" the subject is "*snow,*" because it is the thing about which the declaration is made—what *melts? snow.*

2. The *Predicate* is a verb alone, (as *melts* in the above example,) or the verb *to be* with a noun, adjective, or participle; as, *snow is cold.*

3. The *subject* is a noun, or some word or phrase used as a noun, and may be known by asking the question *who?* or *what?* with the predicate; as, *John runs.* (*Who* runs? *John.*) *To play is pleasant.* (*What* is pleasant? *To play.*)

4. The subject and predicate may stand alone, or each may have other words limiting its meaning; as, *boys run; some boys run fast.*

II. A verb is a word which declares, or affirms something.

1. Verbs have

(a) *Moods*, or different forms which express different *kinds* of affirmation.

(b) *Tenses*, or different forms to show the *time* when the thing declared takes place.

(c) *Voices*, or different forms which show whether the subject acts, (as, *John strikes*,) or is acted upon, (as, *John is struck.*)

(d) *Persons* and *Numbers*, or different forms which correspond to the person and number of the subject.

2. These various forms are distinguished from one another by certain endings; and the adding of these endings to the *stem* is called *conjugation.*

MOODS.

III. 1. The *Infinitive* mood expresses the action of the verb *simply*, without reference to any subject; as, *am-are, to love.*

2. The *Indicative* mood declares a fact, or asks a question; as, *amat*, he loves; *amat-ne?* Does he love?

TENSES.

IV 1. The *Present* tense expresses incomplete action in present time; as, *amo, I love, I am loving.*

2. The *Imperfect* tense expresses incomplete action in past time; as, *amabam, I was loving.*

3. The *Future* tense expresses incomplete action in future time; as, *amabo, I will love, I will be loving.*

CONJUGATIONS.

V 1. There are four Conjugations, distinguished from one another by the termination of the Infinitive Present Active. The Infinitive Present Active of the first Conjugation ends in-*are*.

Rule. To find the stem of a verb, strike off the *Infinitive ending*.

ACTIVE TERMINATIONS.

INFINITIVE, *a*-re.

INDICATIVE.

		Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
			Singular.	
1st	Person	o	*a*-bam	*a*-bo
2nd	"	as	*a*-bas	*a*-bis
3rd	"	at	*a*-bat	*a*-bit
			Plural.	
1st	"	*a*-mus	a-*ba*-mus	*ab*-i-mus
2nd	"	*a*-tis	a-*ba*-tis	*ab*-i-tis
3rd	"	ant	*a*-bant	*a*-bunt

By adding these terminations to the stem *am* of *amare*, to love, we have the following:

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, a-*ma*-re, *to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	a-mo,*	*I love*, or *am loving*,
	a-mas,	*thou lovest*, or *art loving*,
	a-mat,	*he loves*, or *is loving*,
Plur.	a-*ma*-mus,	*we love*, or *are loving*,
	a-*ma*-*tis*,	*ye* or *you love*, or *are loving*,
	a-mant,	*they love*, or *are loving*.

*Accented syllables are italicized above, whether long or short.

Imperfect.

Sing.	a-*ma*-bam,	*I was loving,*
	a-*ma*-bas,	*thou wast loving.*
	a-*ma*-bat,	*he was loving,*
Plur.	am-a-*ba*-mus,	*we were loving,*
	am-a-*ba-tis*,	*ye* or *you were loving,*
	a-*ma*-bant,	*they were loving.*

Future.

Sing.	a-*ma*-bo,	*I shall love,*
	a-*ma*-bis,	*thou wilt love,*
	a-*ma*-bit,	*he will love,*
Plur.	a-*mab*-i-mus,	*we shall love,*
	a-*mab*-i-tis,	*ye* or *you will love,*
	a-*ma*-bunt,	*they will love.*

Form in the same manner these tenses of

vol-*are*,	*to fly*,	laud-*are*,	*to praise*,
salt-*are*,	*to dance*,	voc-*are*,	*to call*,
cant-*are*,	*to sing*,	occup-*are*,	*to seize*,
delect-*are*,	*to delight*,	arm-*are*,	*to arm*,
par-*are*,	*to prepare*,	ædific-*are*,	*to build.*

EXERCISE. 4.

1. A *Transitive* verb is one which requires an object to complete the sense; as, *poeta reginam laudat*, the poet praises the queen.

2. An *Instransitive* verb is one which does not require an object to complete the sense; as, *aquila volat*, the eagle flies.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative.

4. *Rule of Syntax.* The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. (*Reginam* above is the *direct object* of *laudat*; i. e. the thing to which the praising is directed.)

5. *Rule of Syntax.* The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

6. *Rule of Position.* The subject usually stands at the beginning of the sentence.

7. *Rule of Position.* The direct object precedes the verb.

8. To *analyze* a sentence is to separate it into its parts and show their relation to each other.

9. To *analyze* a word is to tell its properties, and its relation to other words.

Poeta reginam laudat, *the poet praises the queen.*

ANALYSIS OF THE SENTENCE.

The predicate of this sentence is *laudat,* because it is that which is *declared* or asserted about the poet.

The subject is *poeta,* because it is that of which the *praising* is *declared.* (Who *praises?* The *poet.*)

The predicate is limited by *reginam,* the direct object, (i. e. the thing to which the praising is *directed.*)

ANALYSIS OF THE WORDS.

Poeta is a common noun, masculine, 1st (decl.),—here decline it,—found in the nominative singular, subject of *audat.* Rule, *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.* (Here let the teacher ask, "Why called a noun Why a common noun? Why masc.? Why of the 1st decl.? Why accented on the penult? &c.")

Reginam is a common noun, feminine, 1st. (here decline it,) found in the accusative singular, object of *laudat.* Rule, *The object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.*

Laudat is a verb, transitive, 1st (conj.), found in the Indicative-Present active, 3rd person singular, (here inflect the tense,) agreeing with *poeta* as its subject. Rule, *The*

verb agrees with its subject in number and person. (Here let the teacher ask, "Why called a verb? Why transitive? Why of 1st conj.? Why indicative? &c.)

Translate into English and analyze.

§ 22. Agricola poetam amat. Aquila volabat. Ancillæ medicinam parabunt. Belgæ aras ædificabant. Nautæ insulam occupabunt. Corona reginam delectabit. Agricola filiam vocabat.

Translate into Latin.

The maid-servants are preparing the table. The queen was calling the farmer's daughter. The poets will praise the queen. The sailor's daughter will sing. The farmers are building an altar. The moon delights the poet. We love the queen. You were calling the maid-servants.

§ 23. EXERCISE 5.

Vocabulary.

umbra,æ, *shadow.*
obscur-are *to obscure.*
terra,æ, *earth.*
incola,æ, *inhabitant.*
insidiæ, arum, used only in plural, { *ambush, snares.*
puella,æ, *girl.*
copiæ, arum, *forces.*
(copia, in the singular, means *abundance* in the plural, *forces.*)

1. The subject, as well as the predicate may have words limiting its meaning.

2. The pronouns *I, thou, we, you,* are not usually expressed in Latin, as the endings of the verb show the person and number.

3 The words *my, thy, his, their,* &c., are not expressed in Latin, when the relation is obvious. Thus, *The queen loves her daughter,* Regina filiam amat.

Translate into English and analyze.

In analysis of sentences give the predicate with its limiters, then the subject with its limiters.

Ancilla reginæ agricolæ filiam vocabit. Terræ umbra lunam obscurat. Fuga nautarum incolas insulæ delectat. Copiæ Belgarum insulam occupabant. Nautæ puellas vocant. Plumæ columbarum reginæ ancillas delectabunt.

Translate into English.

The flight of the queen delights the Belgians. Farmers love (their) daughters. The sailor loves the queen's maid-servant. The farmer's daughter will prepare the queen's table. A dove's feather delights the *sailor's* daughter. A crown delights the *queen's* daughter. An eagle's feather delights the queen's *maid-servant;* a crown delights the queen's *daughter.*

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 24. Latin nouns whose genitive ending is *i* are of the second declension.

Those which have *um* in the nominative, are neuter; the rest, masculine.

ENDINGS.

	Masculine.			*Neuter.*	
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	us	i	Nom.	um	a
Gen.	i	orum	Gen.	i	orum
Dat.	o	is	Dat.	o	is
Acc.	um	os	Acc.	um	a
Voc.	e	i	Voc.	um	a
Abl.	o	is	Abl.	o	is

By adding these endings to the stem *domin—*, *master*, and the stem *regn—*, *kingdom* we obtain the following:

PARADIGM.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	* *dom* i nus, *a master.*	*dom* i ni, *masters.*
Gen.	*dom* i ni, *of a master.*	dom i *no*-rum, *of masters.*
Dat.	*dom* i no, *to* or *for a master.*	*dom* i nis, to or *for masters.*
Acc.	*dom* i num, *a master.*	*dom* i nos, *masters.*
Voc.	*dom* i ne, *O master!*	*dom* i ni, *O masters!*
Abl.	*dom* i no, *with, &c., a master.*	*dom* i nis, *with, &c., masters.*

*In paradigms, accented syllables will be italicized, whether long or short.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	*reg* num, *a kingdom.*	*reg* na, *kingdoms.*
Gen.	*reg* ni, *of a kingdom.*	reg *no* rum, *of kingdoms.*
Dat.	reg no, *to* or *for a kingdom.*	*reg* nis, *to* or *for kingdoms.*
Acc.	*reg* num, *a kingdom.*	*reg* na, *kingdoms.*
Voc.	*reg* num, *O kingdom!*	*reg* na, *O kingdoms!*
Abl.	*reg* no, *with, &c., a kingdom.*	*reg* nis, *with, &c., kingdoms.*

Rem. 1. Names of *trees, plants*, &c., are fem. by the general rule. Alvus, *belly;* carbasus, *linen;* colus, *distaff;* humus, *ground;* and vannus, *fan*, are fem.

Virus, *juice*, and pelagus, *sea*, are neuter. Vulgus, *common people*, is neuter—rarely masculine.

Rem. 2. In proper names in *ius*, with filius, *son*, and genius, *guardian* spirit, the vocative ending *e* is absorbed; as, *Tullius*, voc. *Tulli*. *Meus* has *mi* in the voc. Deus, *god*, has *Deus* in the voc., and in the plural N. and V *Dii;* G. *Deorum;* Dat. and Abl. *Diis, Deis, Dis;* Acc. *Deos.*

Rem. 3. The ending *orum* of the Gen. pl. is sometimes contracted into *um*.

Rem. 4. Neuter nouns of *all declensions* have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike, and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

§ 25. EXERCISE 6.

Vocabulary.

dominus,i, { *master (of a family),* / *lord.*
servus,i, *slave.*
nuntius,i, *messenger.*
Tullius,i, *Tully.*
Crassus,i, *Crassus.*
captivus,i, *captive.*
Helvetius,i, *a Helvetian.*
Gallus,i, *a Gaul.*
nec-are, *to kill, murder.*
ulul-are, *to howl.*
auxilium,i, *aid.*
legatus,i, { *ambassador,* / *lieutenant.*
vicus,i, *village.*
hortus,i, *garden.*
lupus,i, *wolf.*
Germanus,i, *a German.*
re-voc-are, *to recall, call back;* re- means *back.*
con-voc-are, *to call together;* con- means *together.*
rog-are, *to ask for, entreat.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Lupi ululant. Dominus servos amat. Reginæ filios amant. Crassus nuntios Gallorum convocabit. Tullius agricolæ hortum occupabat. Crassus vicos Helvetiorum

occupabit. Galli Germanorum legatos necabunt. Germani captivos necant. Helvetii legatos revocant. Belgæ insularum incolas necabant. Tullius servum vocat.

Translate into Latin.

Tully's slaves love their* master. The master calls together his* slaves. The slaves of Crassus will call the queen's maid-servants. The inhabitants of the island are killing the captives. We will call together the sons of Crassus. Tully's son loves the sailor's daughter. The ambassadors of the Helvetians praise the queen. He will call together the farmer's sons. The messengers ask for aid. The Belgians will ask for aid.

STEMS IN *ER*.

§ 26. Nouns whose stems end in *er*, drop the endings *us* and *e* of the nom. and voc.; as *gener*, not *generus*. Most of them likewise drop the *e* of the stem in the oblique cases (all but nom. and voc.;) as *ager*, Gen. *agri*.

PARADIGM.

	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
	A son-in-law.			*A field.*	
N.	*Ge* ner,	*gen*-e-ri,	N.	*A* ger,	*a* gri,
G.	*gen* e ri,	gen e *ro* rum,	G.	*a* gri,	a *gro* rum,
D.	*gen* e ro,	*gen* e ris,	D.	*a* gro,	*a* gris,
Ac.	*gen* e rum,	*gen* e ros,	Ac.	*a* grum,	*a* gros,
V.	gen er,	*gen* e ri,	V.	*a* ger,	*a* gri,
Ab	*gen* e ro,	*gen* e ris.	Ab.	*a* gro,	*a* gris.

Rem. 1. The following nouns retain *e* of the stem in all the cases adulter, *adulterer;* gener, *son-in-law;* Liber, *Bacchus;* liberi, *children;* puer, *boy;* socer, *father-in-law;* vesper, *evening;* and compounds of *fer* and *ger;* also the national names *Iber* and *Celtiber*.

* See § 23, 3.

Rem. 2. The solitary noun *vir*, *man*, is declined like *gener*. N. vir; G. viri, &c.

For Greek nouns of the 2nd Dec., see appendix II.

§ 27 EXERCISE 7

Vocabulary.

puer,i, *boy.*
vir,i. *man.*
socer,i. *father-in-law.*
gener,i, *son-in-law.*
magister,i, *master* (of a school.)
ager,i, *field.*
liberi, orum, *children.*
equus,i, *horse.*
infren-are, *to bridle.*
lani-are, *to tear in pieces*
bellum,i, *war.*
folium,i, *leaf.*
ovum,i. *egg.*
aper,i, *wild boar.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Agricola equum filiæ infrenat. Apri generum reginæ laniabunt. Folia silvæ ancillam reginæ delectant. Magister pueros convocabat. Pueri magistrum amant. Tullii filia socerum amabit. Germani Gallorum agros occupabant. Columbarum ova liberos delectant. Viri equos infrenabunt. Bellum Germanos delectant. Socer generum amat. Servus domini equum infrenat. Nauta liberos amat.

Translate into Latin.

The poet's children love the queen. Crassus praises the fields of the Helvetians. The Germans love war. The wolves will tear in pieces the farmer's children. Wild boars love the shade of the forest. The master will call back the boys. Tully's horse loves (his) master. The farmer's slaves are bridling the horses.

EXERCISE 8.

§ 28. *The Dative Case.*

1. The Dative expresses that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to*, which any thing is, or is done.

2. *Rule of Syntax.* The *remote object* of a verb is in

the Dative; as, *servus domino medicinam parat*, the servant prepares medicine for his master.

Rem. The *remote object* of a verb is the thing towards which its action *tends* without necessarily *reaching* it. Thus in the above example the action expressed by *parat* is exerted directly upon *the medicine,—medicinam*, and the point to which it *tends* is *the master,—domino,*—though it does not necessarily *reach* that point, since it is not implied that the master *receives* or *uses* the medicine prepared for him.

3 *Rule of Position.* The *remote* object precedes the *direct.*

Vocabulary.

liber,i, *book.*
via,æ, *way.*
taurus,i, *bull.*
agnus,i, *lamb.*
hædus,i, *kid.*
monstr-are, *to show.*
mact-are, *to sacrifice.*
dare, *to give,* (the only verb of the 1s conj. having *a* short in the pres.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Magister puero librum dat. Puella Crasso viam monstrabat. Agricola diis aram ædificabit. Galli diis tauros mactant. Servi reginæ hædum parant. Lupi agnos laniabunt. Agricolæ filius puellæ ovum dat. Galli Germanis insidias parabunt. Crassus copiis Gallorum insidias parat. Regina agricolæ equum dat. Galli nautis insulam monstrant. Reginæ ancilla Gallis Germanorum insidias monstrat.

Translate into Latin.

The queen's father-in-law will give (to) the poet a field. The queen of the Helvetians is preparing snares for Tully' forces. The inhabitants of the island were sacrificing a lamb to the gods. The master is preparing a book for the boys. The slaves are preparing a way for their master. The master gives (to) his slave a kid. The slave gives (to) the farmer's son a dove's egg.

EXERCISE 9.

§29. *The Ablative Case.*

1. *Rule of Syntax.* The Ablative expresses the *cause, manner, means,* and *instrument;* as,

Cæcus *avaritia,* Blinded by avarice.
Hoc modo fecit, He did it in this manner.
Aquila *alis* volat, The eagle flies with his wings.
Captivum *gladio* necat, He kills the captive with a sword.

2. *Rule of Syntax.* The Ablative, (usually with the preposition *in,*) expresses the *place where.*

3. *Rule of Position.* Expressions of *cause, manner, means, instrument, time,* and *place,* precede the predicate. Expressions of *manner, means,* and *instrument,* are placed after the direct object, while those of *cause, time,* and *place* usually precede it.

Vocabulary.

in, *in;* (preposition with abl.)
terra,æ, *the earth, ground.*
tuba,æ, *trumpet.*
signum,i, *signal, sign.*
venenum,i, *poison.*
gladius,i, *sword.*
Marcus,i, *Mark.*
ar-are, *to plow.*
vex-are, *to annoy, trouble.*
vulner-are, *to wound.*
cultr.tri, *knife.*
ambul-are, *to walk.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Marci filius Gallis signum tuba dat. (*The predicate is here limited by* Gallis, *the remote object;* signum, *the direct object;* and *tuba, the ablative of the instrument.*) Agricola terram equis arat. Captivus Tullium cultro vulnerabit. Poeta in silvis ambulat. Marcus Helvetios injuriis vexabat. Nauta reginæ generum gladio necabit.* Germani captivos gladiis necant.* Aquilæ alis volant. Regina filio regnum dat. Ancilla reginæ Crassum veneno neca-

* *Necare* means *to murder,* usually with poison, hunger, &c.; but somrtimes also with a weapon.

bit. Umbram silvæ amamus. Dominus servos tuba convocat. Reginæ socer filium Tullii injuriis vexat.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer's sons will plow the fields with horses. The girls are dancing in the forest. The poet was walking in the garden. The slaves of Tully are preparing snares for the ambassadors of the Helvetians in the forest. The inhabitants of the islands will kill the ambassadors with their swords. The Germans were annoying the Gauls with injuries. Doves fly with their wings. The farmer will give the sailor's daughter a lamb. Wolves are howling in the forest.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 30. Nouns whose genitive ending is *is* are of the third declension.

CASE ENDINGS.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Masc. and fem.	Neut.	Masc. and fem.	Neut.
N.	s, (*generally*).	e, (*sometimes.*)	es.	a, (ia).
G.	is.	is.	um, (ium).	um, (ium).
D.	i.	i.	ibus.	ibus.
Ac.	em, (*sometimes* im).	*Like nom.*	es.	a, (ia).
V.	*Like nom.*	*Like nom.*	es.	a, (ia).
Ab.	e, (*sometimes* i).	(e, *sometimes* i).	ibus.	ibus.

Nouns of the third declension are divided into six classes, viz.:—

I. Nouns which add *s* to the stem in the nominative without any vowel change. (*Feminines*). As, *urb-s, urbs.*

II. Nouns which insert a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*. (*Feminines*). As, *rup-e-s, rupes.*

III. Nouns which change the stem-vowel *i* into *e* before adding *s*. As, stem *milit, milet-s, miles.* (*Masculines.*)

IV Nouns which add *e* to the stem. (*Neuters*). As, *mar-e, mare.*

V Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nominative without adding *s*. (*Masculines*, except nouns in *al, ar, ur*, which are neuter). As, *consul.*

VI. Nouns which change the stem in the nominative without adding *s*. As, stem *virgin*,— Nom. *virgo.*

N B. A c-sound with *s* makes *x*. As, *leg-s, lex; arc-s, arx. D* or *t* before *s* is dropped. As, *font-s, fons.*

§ 31. CLASS I. The nominative is formed by adding *s* to the stem without changing the stem-vowel.

PARADIGMS.

	City.	*Law.*	*Praise.*	*Art.*	*Citadel.*
	Singular.				
N. & V.	Urb-s,	Lex, (leg-s,)	Laus, (laud-s)	Ars, (art-s,)	Arx, (arc-s,)
G.	*ur*-bis,	*le*-gis,	*lau*-dis,	*ar*-tis,	*ar*-cis,
D.	*ur*-bi,	*le*-gi,	*lau*-di,	*ar*-ti.	*ar*-ci,
Ac.	*ur*-bem,	*le*-gem,	*lau*-dem,	*ar*-tem.	*ar*-cem,
Abl.	*ur*-be,	*le*-ge,	*lau*-de.	*ar*-te,	*ar*-ce
	Plural.				
N. & V.	*ur*-bes,	*le*-ges,	*lau*-des,	*ar*-tes,	*ar*-ces.
G.	*ur*-bi-um,	*le*-gum,	*lau*-dum,	*ar*-ti-um,	*ar*-ci-um,
D.	*ur*-bi-bus,	*le*-gi bus,	*lau*-di-bus.	*ar*-ti-bus,	*ar*-ci-bus,
Ac.	*ur*-bes,	*le*-ges,	*lau*-des,	*ar*-tes.	*ar*-ces.
Abl.	*ur*-bi-bus.	*le*-gi-bus.	*lau*-di-bus.	*ar*-ti-bus.	*ar*-ci-bus.

Rule. Stems ending in two consonants, with *dos, lis, fraus, vis, faux*, (nom. obs.), *nix, compes, strix*, have *ium* in the genitive plural.

Rule. Stems of more than one syllable in *nt* and *rt* (adding *s*), with names of nations in *as*, have *ium* and sometimes *um.*

Rem. 1. Other nouns in *as* with *fornax* and *palus*, sometimes have *ium*. *Quiris* and *Samnis* have *ium.*

Rem. 2. *Pars*, part, and *lens*, lentile, have sometimes *im* in the

accusative; and the same, with *sors*, lot, and *tridens*, trident, have *e* or *i* in the abl. *Partim* is usually an adverb.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which form the nominative by adding *s* to the stem without vowel change, are feminine; except

Masculines.

1. *Dens*, tooth, and its compounds; *fons*, fountain; *pons*, bridge; and *mons*, mountain; *cliens*, client; *rudens*, rope, (rarely fem.); and compounds of *as*.

2. *Grex*, flock; Greek nouns in *ax*. and *ix*, with *calix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *perdix*, partridge; *traduxy* vine-branch.

3. *Paries*, wall; *pes*, foot; *lapis*, stone.

Masculine or Feminine.

Many nouns denoting living beings, with *scrobs*, ditch: *stirps*, trunk of a tree: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime.

EXERCISE 10.

§ 32. 1. The ablative is used with prepositions which imply *rest in* a place; as, *in urbe habitat*, he lives in the city; or *motion from* a place; as, *ex urbe equitat*, he rides *out of* the city.

2. The accusative (the *whither* case) is used with prepositions implying *motion to* a place; as, *in urbem venit*, he comes *into* the city; as, *ad regem venit*, he comes *to* the king.

3. *Caution.* *To*, when it implies motion must be translated by *ad* with the acc.

4. *Rule of Position.* A preposition with its case precedes the predicate.

Vocabulary.

in, (preposition with acc. or abl.) *in* or *into*.
ad, (prep. with acc.) *to, towards*.
ex, (prep. with abl.) *out of*.
equit-are, *to ride on horseback*.
dens, dent-is, *tooth*.
rudens, rudent-is, *rope*.
pes, ped-is, *foot*.
calx, calc-is, *heel*.

hiem-are, *to winter, spend the winter.*
serv-are, *to preserve, protect.*
viol-are, *to dishonor, break, (a law, &c.)*
habit-are, *to dwell, live.*
mand-are, *to intrust.*
destin-are, *to fasten.*
rex, reg-is, *king.*
plebs, pleb-is, *common people.*
ferrum,i, *iron, the sword.*
cliens, client-is *client.*
grex, greg-is, *flock.*
lapis, lapid-is, *stone.*
Gallia,æ, *Gall.*
Germania,æ, *Germany.*
antenna,æ, *sail-yard.*
malus,i, *mast.*
pilum,i, *dart.*
libertas, libertat-is, *liberty.*
nobilitas, nobilitat-is, *nobility.*
Orgetorix, Orgetorig-is, *Orgetorix.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Orgetorix leges Helvetiorum violabat. Plebs libertatem ferro servabit. Nautæ antennas ad malos rudentibus destinant. Puer calcem servi lapide vulnerat. Crassus ex urbe ad vicum equitat. Copiæ Germanorum in Gallia hiemabunt. Galli in Gallia habitant. Rex nobilitati urbem mandat. Crassi filius clientes ex agris in urbem convocat. Lupi dentibus agnos laniant. Galli Crassum pilis necabunt. Germani, Gallos bellis vexant.

Translate into Latin.

The boys are riding from the village to the city. The farmer's sons live in the forest. The doves will fly out of the fields into the forest. The king was calling together the common people out of the village into the city. The king will give the kingdom to his son. Crassus will break the laws of Gaul. The king's son will preserve the liberties of the common people. The boys are wounding the king's messengers with stones. The inhabitants of Germany will winter in the island of the Belgians. Horses walk with (their) feet. A flock of doves is flying out of the forest. The sailor will fasten the yard to the mast with ropes. The king was slaying the nobility with the sword.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 33. CLASS II. The nominative inserts a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*,) before adding *s* to the stem. (*Feminines.*)

Singular.	*Rup e s, rock.*	*Vall i s, valley.*
N. and V.	*Ru* pes.	*Val* lis.
Gen.	*ru* pis.	*val* lis.
Dat.	*ru* pi.	*val* li.
Acc.	*ru* pem.	*val* lem.
Abl.	*ru* pe.	*val* le.
Plural.		
N., A. and V.	*ru* pes.	*val* les.
Gen.	*ru* pi um.	*val* li um.
Dat. and Abl.	*ru* pi bus.	*val* li bus.

Rem. 1. The following nouns have *im* in the accusative.

(a) Names of *places*, *rivers*, and *gods* in *is*; these sometimes also have *in* in the acc. *Scaldis* has *in* and *im*; *Liris* has *im*, *in*, and *em*; and *Liger* has *Ligerim*.

(b) Amussis, *a mason's rule.*
Buris, *a plough tail.*
Cannabis, *hemp.*
Cucumis, (*gen.* is), *a cucumber.*
Mephitis, *foul air.*
Pelvis, *a basin.*
Ravis, *hoarseness.*
Securis, *an axe.*
Sinapis, *mustard.*
Sitis, *thirst.*
Tussis, *a cough.*
Vis, *strength.*

Rem. 2. The following have *im*, and sometimes *em*:

Febris, *a fever.*
Restis, *a rope.*
Puppis, *the stern.*
Turris, *a tower.*

Rem. 3. The following have *em*, and rarely *im*:

Bipennis, *a battle-axe.*
Clavis, *a key.*
Messis, *a harvest.*
Navis, *a ship.*
Præsepis, *a stall.*
Sementis, *a sowing.*
Strigilis, *a flesh-brush.*

Rem. 4. Nouns which have *im* in the accusative, with names of months in *er* and *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi; Aprilis, Aprili.*

But *Bœtis, cannabis*, and *sinapis* have *e* or *i*.

Rem. 5. Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *turris, turre* or *turri.*

But *restis* has *e* only.

Rem. 6. The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i*:

Amnis,	Civis,	Corbis,	Ignis,	Postis,
Anguis,	Classis,	Finis,	Mugilis,	Sordes,
Avis,	Collis,	Fustis,	Orbis,	Unguis,
Bilis,	Convallis,	Canalis,	Ovis,	Vectis.

Rem. 7 Names of towns, when denoting the *place where*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *Carthagini*, at Carthage.

Rem. 8. Nouns of this class (adding *s* with connecting vowel *e* or *i*,) have *ium* in the genitive plural.

Exc. Canis, *dog;* juvenis, *young man;* foris, *door;* mugilis, *mullet;* proles, *offspring;* strues, *pile;* vates, *prophet*, have *um;* also generally apis, *bee;* strigilis, *flesh-brush;* volucris, *bird;* sometimes, *mensis* and *cædes*.

Rule of Gender. Nouns of this class are feminine.

Exc. 1. *Palumbes, vates, vepres*, are masculine or feminine.

Exc. 2. The following in *is* are masculine or feminine:

Amnis, *river.*	Canis, *dog.*	Funis, *rope.*
Anguis, *snake.*	Clunis, *haunch.*	Scrobis, *ditch.*
Callis, *path.*	Corbis, *basket.*	Tigris, *tiger.*
Canalis, *pipe.*	Finis, *end.*	Torquis, *chain.*

Fines, *boundaries*, is always masculine.

Exc. 3. The following are masculine:

Axis, *axle.*	Follis, *bellows.*	Piscis, *fish.*
Aquælis, *water-pot.*	Fustis, *club.*	Postis, *post.*
Caulis, *stalk.*	Ignis, *fire.*	Sentis, *brier.*
Cassis, *net.*	Manes, pl., *shades.*	Sodalis, *companion.*
Collis, *hill.*	Mensis, *month.*	Torris, *firebrand.*
Crinis, *hair.*	Mugilis, *mullet.*	Unguis, *nail.*
Ensis, *sword,*	Orbis, *circle.*	Vectis, *lever.*
Fascis, *bundle.*	Panis, *bread.*	Vermis, *worm.*

EXERCISE 11.

§ 34. 1. Conjunctions connect words which are in the same construction. As, *Cæsar et Brutus*, Cæsar and Brutus; *gladiis pilisque*, with swords and darts.

N. B. *Et* connects things which are separate and distinct, and of

equal importance; *que* (always written at the end of a word,) connects one thing closely to another as an appendage, the two making one complete idea. Thus the "swords and darts" above constitute together *offensive armor*.

2. If the subject consists of more than one thing, the verb must be plural. Hence

Rule of Syntax. A collective noun *may* have a plural verb; as, *plebs clamant*, the people shout.

Vocabulary.

ignis,is, *fire.*
port-are, *to carry.*
formid-are, *to dread.*
vigil-are, *to watch.*
festin-are, *to hasten.*
import-are, *to import.*
confirm-are, *to establish.*
vast-are, *to lay waste.*
nidific-are, *to build a nest.*
lev-are, *to relieve.*
vallis,is, *a valley.*
pars, part-is, *a part.*
Athenæ, arum, *Athens.*
pax, pac-is, *peace.*
host-is, (§ 13. Rule 4.) *enemy.*
cum, *with* (prep. with abl.)
in, *in, on,* (prep. with abl.)
civ-is, *citizen.*
av-is, *bird.*
ov-is, *sheep.*
class-is, *fleet.*
coll-is, *hill.*
per, *through,* (prep. with acc.)
Grecia,æ, *Greece.*
litera,æ, *a letter (of the alphabet.)*
Cecrops, Cecrop-is, *Cecrops.*
Cadmus,i, *Cadmus.*
amicitia,æ, *friendship.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Cadmus in Greciam literas importat. Aves in silvis nidificant. Aqua sitim levat. Fons in valle poetam delectat. Helvetii agros Germanorum ferro ignique vastabunt. Galli cum Germanis pacem et amicitiam confirmant. Crassus ex agro in urbem festinat. Plebs in urbe nobilitatem necant. Crassus copias gladiis pilisque armabat. Cives Cecropi claves urbis dant. Lupi oves et hædos laniant. Crassus in colle turrem ædificat. Galli naves et copias Germanorum formidant. Crassus partem plebis cultris lapidibusque armabit. Columbæ per silvam volant. Cecrops Athenas ædificabit. Canes et lupi oves laniant. Rex et regina in horto ambulant. Cives in urbe vigilant.

Translate into Latin.

Crassus will lay waste the fields of the Belgians with fire

and sword (*ferro ignique*). The nobility dread the fleet of Tullius. The nobility will preserve the liberty of the citizens with the sword. The maid-servant is preparing a mullet for her master. The queen will walk in the garden with her daughters. The farmer's sons will carry sheep and kids to the city. The nobility will arm their slaves with stones and knives. The farmer's son will show (to) the ambassadors of the Belgians the way through the forest. Tullius will take possession of the hill. Medicine will relieve fevers.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 35. CLASS III. The stem-vowel is changed (*i* into *e*) before adding *s* to form the nominative.

Singular.

	Miles (*milet-s*), *soldier.*	*Princeps* (*princep-s*), *chief.*
N. and V	*mi* les,	*prin* ceps,
G.	*mil* i tis,	*prin* ci pis,
D.	*mil* i ti,	*prin* ci pi,
Acc.	*mil* i tem,	*prin* ci pem,
Abl.	*mil* i te,	*prin* ci pe,

Plural.

N., A. and V	*mil* i tes,	*prin* ci pes,
G.	*mil* i tum,	*prin* ci pum,
D. and Abl.	mil *it* i-bus.	prin *cip* i bus.

Rule of Gender Nouns which change the stem-vowel, (*i* into *e*,) before adding *s* to form the nominative are masculine.

Exc. 1. Merges, fem. (mergitis,) *a sheaf.*

Exc. 2. Masc. or fem. Adeps, adipis, *grease;* forceps, forcipis, *pincers.*

EXERCISE 12.

§ 36. 1. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in *apposition* with it.

2. *Rule of Syntax.* Nouns in apposition agree in case; as, Jugurtha rex, *Jugurtha the king.*

Rem. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is put in the plural; as, Jugurtha et Bocchus, reges, *Jugurtha and Bocchus, kings.*

Vocabulary.

sec-are, *to cut.*
postul-are, *to demand.*
viol-are, *to maltreat.*
duplic-are, *to double.*
redintegr-are, *to renew.*
explor-are, *to explore, search out.*
crem-are, *to burn.*
virtus, virtut-is, *valor.*
profligare, *to rout, dash to pieces.*
a or ab, *from.* (prep. with abl.)
prœlium,i, *battle.*
Numidia,æ, *Numidia.*
numerus,i, *number.*
hospes, hospit-is, *guest.*
obses, obsid-is, *hostage.*
eques, equit-is, *horseman.*
pedes, pedit-is, *footman.*
horreum,i, *granary.*
merges, mergit-is, *sheaf.*
comes, comit-is, *companion.*
cæspes, cæspit-is, *turf.*
trames, tramit-is, *by-path.*
veles, velit-is, *skirmisher.*
Davus,i, *Davus.*
Balbus,i, *Balbus.*
Jugurtha,æ, *Jugurtha.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Milites gladiis cæspitem secabant. Agricola in horreum mergites portabit. Tullius a Germanis obsides postulat. Jugurtha, rex Numidiæ Crasso obsides dat. Davus et Balbus, servi agricolæ, domini liberos amant. Orgetorix, princeps Helvetiorum, ab Æduis obsides postulabit. Helvetii Orgetorigem igni cremabunt. Equites et pedites prœlium redintegrabunt. Poeta virtutem Jugurthæ, regis Numidiæ, laudat. Copiæ Crassi equites peditesque hostium profligabant. Velites Tullii tramites per silvam explorant. Comites Orgetorigis, principis Helvetiorum, agros Gallorum ferro ignique vastant. Jugurtha numerum obsidum duplicat.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer is walking with his sons, Davus and Balbus, in the forest. The Gauls dread the ships of Crassus. Davus, the king's slave, will show (to) the boys the way through the forest. Part of the skirmishers will occupy the hill. The Germans will maltreat their guests. Tully will give

the signal to the king's horsemen with the trumpet. The horsemen are bridling their horses.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 37 CLASS IV Nouns which add *e* to the stem to form the nominative.

	Singular.	Plural.
N., Ac. and V	*mar* e. *the sea,*	*mar* i a,
Gen.	*mar* is,	*mar* i um,
Dat. and Abl.	*mar* i.	*mar* i bus.

Rem. Nouns of this class have *i* in the ablative singular, *ia* in nom., acc. and voc. plural, an *ium* in gen. plural.

Exc. Names of towns in *e* have *e* in the abl. *Rete*, a net, has *e* or *i* in the abl.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which add *e* to the stem to form the nominative are neuter.

EXERCISE 13.

Vocabulary.

terra marique, *by sea and land.*
dormit-are, *to fall asleep.*
celeritas, celeritat-is, *swiftness.*
crudelitas, crudelitat-is, *cruelty.*
Marcus,i, *Marcus.*
Lucius,i, *Lucius.*
Cassius,i, *Cassius.*
Syphax, Syphac-is, *Syphax.*
expugn-are, *to storm.*
cubile, cubil-is, *couch.*
rete, ret-is, *net.*
navale, naval-is, *dock-yard.*
sedile, sedil-is, *seat.*
monile, monil-is, *necklace.*
Romanus,i, *Roman.*
Carthaginiensis,is; *Carthagenian.*
dux, duc-is, *leader.*
Marius,i, *Marius*
oppidum,i, *town.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Reginæ filia in cubili dormitabit. Deus cervis et canibus celeritatem dat. Marcus et Lucius, agricolæ filii, (§ 36, Rem.) agros equis arabunt. Cassius in navalibus naves ædificat. Syphax, dux Carthaginiensium, Romanis insidias parabat. Galli crudelitatem Germanorum formidant. Marius, dux Romanorum, oppida Jugurthæ expugnabit. Lucius, dux Romanorum, hostium copias terra

marique profligabit. Regina filiabus monilia dabit. Servi in silva domino sedile parant. Davus apris retia parabit.

Translate into Latin.

Syphax, the leader of the Carthagenians, will build ships in the dock-yards. The forces of the Gauls will storm the city. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, will rout the forces of the Romans by sea and by land. Lucius and Balbus, slaves of Marius, will prepare seats for their master. The queen's daughter gives (to) the poet a necklace. Marius will lay waste the fields of Numidia with fire and sword. The foot-soldiers are bridling the horses of the horsemen. Orgetorix dreads the cruelty of the Helvetians.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 38. CLASS V. Nouns which present the stem unchanged in the nominative.

I. MASCULINES.

	Honor, *honor*; masc.			Pater, *a father*; masc.	
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	*ho* nor,	ho *no* res.	N.	*pa* ter,	*pat* tres.
G.	ho *no* ris,	ho *no* rum.	G.	*pa* tris,	*pa* trum.
D.	ho *no* ri,	ho *nor* i bus.	D.	*pa* tri,	*pat* ri bus.
Ac.	ho *no* rem,	ho *no* res.	Ac.	*pa* trem,	*pa* tres.
V.	*ho* nor,	ho *no* res.	V.	*pa* ter,	*pa* res.
Ab.	ho *no* re,	ho *nor* i bus.	Ab.	*pa* tre,	*pat* ri bus.

Rem. 1. Nouns in *ter* and *ber* drop *e* in the oblique cases; as, *imber, imbris; pater, patris.*

Rem. 2. *Imber, pugil,* and *vesper* have *e* or *i* in the ablative, and *imber, linter, venter, uter,* have *ium* in gen. plural.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nominative, (except stems in *al, ar, ur,*) are masculine.

Exc. 1. Arbor, *tree,* is fem.; ador, *spelt,* æquor, *sea,* marmor,

marble, cor, *heart*, fel, *gall*, lac, *milk*, mel, *honey*, os, *bone*, are neuter. (Masculine stems have *o* long, neuters, *o* short; as, honor-is, *of honor*, æquor-is, *of the sea.*) *Cor, fel, lac, mel*, and *os* drop the last letter of the stem.

Exc. 2. Linter, *boat*, is feminine. Cadaver, *corpse;* spinther *clasp;* tuber, *swelling;* uber, *teat;* ver, *spring;* verber, *lash;* also names of trees and plants in *er*, are *neuter*. But *laver* and *tuber* (names of trees) are feminine, and *siser* is masculine in the plural.

EXERCISE 14.

Vocabulary.

Cæsar, Cæsar-is, *Cæsar.*
imperator, *or*-is, *commander.*
consul, consul-is, *consul.*
anser, anser-is, *goose.*
frater, fratris, *brother.*
mater, matris, *mother.*
soror, soror-is, *sister.*
linter, lintris, *boat.*
imber, imbris, *rain.*
conjux, conjug-is, *husband* or *wife.*
sagittarius, i, *archer.*
funditor, *or*-is, *slinger.*
pastor, *or*-is, *shepherd.*
venator, *or*-is, *hunter.*
mercator, *or*-is, *merchant.*
hiberna, *orum*, *winter-quarters.*
in hiberna colloc-are, *to put into winter-quarters.*
defens-are, *to defend.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Plebs libertatem ferro servabunt, (§ 24. Rule.) Imperator equites peditesque convocabat. Cæsar ex urbe in Galliam festinabat. Agricola conjugem liberosque amat. Pastor gregem a lupo defensabit. Crassus, consul, in navalibus naves et lintres ædificat. Agricolæ anseres in horto habitant. Milites imperatorem a gladiis pilisque hostium defensabunt. Cæsar copias in hiberna collocat. Venator in silva apris retia parat. Cæsar cum sagittariis et funditoribus in Galliam festinat. Rex mercatores convocat. Balbus, Lucii gener, fratres sororesque amat. Puer patrem matremque amat. Imbres agricolas delectant.

Translate into Latin.

The horsemen will rout the archers and slingers of the enemy. The shepherds are sacrificing bulls and sheep to the gods. The geese are flying into the forest. The sis-

ters of Orgetorix are dancing in the garden. The brother of Lucius was defending his mother and sisters with (his) sword. The common people entrust their liberty to the consul. The hunter will show (to) the shepherd a by-path through the forest. Cæsar will hasten from the winter-quarters into the city. The slingers are wounding the horsemen of the enemy with stones.

§ 39. CLASS V Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nominative.

II. NEUTER FORMS.

	Animal, *an animal;* neut.		Calcar, *a spur;* neut.	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	*an*-i-mal,	an-i-*ma*-li-a,	*cal*-car,	cal-*ca*-ri-a.
G.	an-i-*ma*-lis,	an-i-*ma*-li-um,	cal-*ca*-ris,	cal-*ca*-ri-um.
D.	an-i-*ma* li,	an-i-*mal*-i-bus,	cal-*ca*-ri,	cal-*car*-i-bus.
Ac.	*an*-i-mal,	an-i-*ma*-li-a,	*cal*-car,	cal-*ca*-ri-a.
V.	*an*-i-mal,	an-i-*ma*-li-a,	*cal*-car,	cal-*ca*-ri-a.
Ab.	an-i-*ma*-li.	an-i-*mal*-i-bus.	cal-*ca*-ri.	cal-*car*-i-bus.

Note. Nouns in *e, al, ar,* were originally adjectives, the adjective ending of those in *al* and *ar* having been dropped. Thus, *anim-a,* breath; neuter adjective, *anim-ale, (animal,)* a thing having breath, an animal; *calc-s, (calx,)* the heel; *calc-are, (calc-ar,)* a thing pertaining to the heel, a spur.

Rem. 1. Nouns ending in *al* and *ar* have *i* in the ablative singular, *ium* in gen. pl., and *ia* in nom., acc. and voc. plural. Other nouns of this class have the regular endings; but

Rem. 2. *Os,* bone, has *ossium; fur,* thief; *ren,* kidney, *lar,* tutelar deity, have *um* or *ium.*

Rem. 3. *Baccar, far, jubar, nectar, par* and *sal* have *e* in the ablative singular.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which present in the nominative the unchanged stem in *al, ar, ur,* are neuter.

EXCEPTION: *Sal, salt,* is masculine or neuter in the singular, but always masculine in the plural, *(sales.)* Fur, *thief;* furfur, *bran;* salar, *trout;* turtur, *dove;* vultur, *vulture,* are masculine.

§ 40. EXERCISE 15.

Vocabulary.

jumentum,i. *yoke-horse, beast of burden.*
jubar,is, *sunshine.*
vultur,is. (masc.) *vulture.*
templum,i, *temple.*
marmor,is, *marble.*
templum de marmore, *a temple of marble.*
furfur,is, *bran.*
dic-are, *to dedicate.*
concit-are, *to arouse, urge on.*
rapt-are, *to snatch away, carry off.*
stimulus,i, *goad.*
fug-are, *to put to flight.*
tempestas, tempestat-is, *tempest.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Crassus diis templum de marmore dicabit. Vultures agnos et hœdos raptant. Jubar mantas delectat. Agricola jumenta stimulo concitat. Cecrops, rex Græciæ, equum calcaribus concitat. Regina in insula aram de marmore ædificat. Agricola jumentis furfurem dat. Velites Cæsaris hostium sagittarios funditoresque fugabunt. Tempestates maris classem hostium profligabunt.

Translate into Latin.

The boys love the master. Cæsar will lay waste the fields of the Gauls with fire and sword. Tully will rout the forces of the enemy by sea and land. Tully's foot-soldiers occupy the hill. Farmers plough their fields with work-horses. Eagles and vultures build nests in the rocks. Cæsar's skirmishers will search out the by-paths through the forests. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, was storming his brother's towns. Sailors dread tempests. Horsemen urge on their horses with spurs.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 41. CLASS VI. Nouns which present the stem *changed* in the nominative.

I. MASCULINE FORMS.

	n of stem dropped.	*r* of stem changed into *s*.	
Singular.	Speech, (m.)	Dust, (m.)	Flower, (m.)
N.	*ser* mo,	*pul* vis,	flos.
G.	ser *mo* nis,	*pul* ver is,	*flor* is.
D.	ser *mo* ni,	*pul* ver i,	*flor* i.
Ac.	ser *mo* nem.	*pul* ver em,	*flor* em.
V	*ser* mo,	*pul* vis,	flos.
Ab.	ser *mo* ne,	*pul* ver e,	*flor* e.
Plural.	Speechs.		Flowers.
N.	ser *mo* nes,	*pul* ver es,	*flor* es.
G.	ser *mo* num,	*pul* ver um,	*flor* um.
D.	ser *mon* i bus,	pul *ver* i bus,	*flor* i bus.
Ac.	ser *mo* nes,	*pul* ver es,	*flor* es.
V	ser *mo* nes,	*pul* ver es,	*flor* es.
Ab.	ser *mon* i bus.	pul *ver* i bus.	*flor* i bus.

Rem. 1. Most Latin nouns drop final *n* of the stem in the nominative. *Sanguis* (*sanguin*,) and *pollis* (*pollin*,) change *n* into *s*.

Rem. 2. Final *r* of the stem is often changed into *s*; as, *mos*, *mor-is*.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which drop *n* of the stem in the nominative are masculine.

Exc. Abstracts in *io* (mostly formed by adding *io* to the supine stem of verbs,) are feminine. *Bubo* is masc. and fem.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which change *er* of the stem into *is*, *r* into *s*, are masculine.

Exc. Os, *mouth*, is neuter. *Cinis* is masculine or feminine in the singular; *cineres*, ashes of the dead, is always masculine. Pulvis, *dust*, is very rarely feminine.

EXERCISE 16.

Vocabulary.

mos, mor-is, *manner, custom.*
centurio, on-is *centurion.*
leo, on-is, *lion.*
mons, mont-is, (§ 31. Exc. 1.) *mountain.*
latro, on-is, *robber.*
pirata, æ, *pirate.*
Cato, on-is, *Cato.*
rebellio, on-is, (f.) *rebellion.*
Varro, on-is, *Varro.*
oratio, on-is, (f.) *speech, oration.*
trucid-are, *to slay.*
concit-are, *to excite, raise.*
apud, (prep. with ac.) *among*, (of persons among whom anything is done.)
apud Helvetios, *among the Helvetians*
apud Catonem, *with, at the house of, Cato*
Cicero, on-is, *Cicero.*
orator, or-is, *orator.*
cœn-are, *to sup.*
more regis, *after the manner of a king.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Cæsar, more regis, obsides ab Helvetiis postulat. Centurio tures (§ 33. Rem. 2) ædificat. Varro consul in silvis more latronis habitat. Orgetorix apud Helvetios rebellionem concitabit. Cicero, orator, plebem oratione delectat. Oratio Catonis nobilitatem delectat. Pars nobilitatis apud regem cœnant. Leones in montibus et silvis habitant. Latrones in silva filium reginæ trucidabant. Rex latrones piratasque trucidabit. Regis filiæ apud agricolam cœnant. Nobilitas rebellionem [illegible] plebem formidant. Cecrops nobilitatem concitat. Nautæ piratas formidant.

Translate into Latin.

The conversation (*sermo*) of the poet delights the queen. A lion will tear in pieces the children of Cadmus. The daughter of Cecrops gives flowers to her father-in-law. The common people are breaking the laws of the city. Marcus, the brother of Marius, was building a tower upon a hill. Crassus will sup at the house of Cicero. Cæsar dreads a rebellion among the Gauls. Cæsar demands hostages of (*from*) the Germans. The Gauls, after the manner of the Germans, burn pirates with fire. Kings slay robbers and pirates. Part of the nobility dread Cato. The poet loves Cato's daughter.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 42. CLASS VI. Nouns which present the stem changed in the nominative.

II. FEMININE FORMS.

Virgo, *a virgin*; fem.; (stem *virgin*.)

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	*vir* go,	*vir* gi nes,
G.	*vir* gi nis,	*vir* gi num,
D.	*vir* gi ni,	vir *gin* i bus,
Ac.	*vir* gi nem,	*vir* gi nes,
V.	*vir* go,	*vir* gi nes,
Ab.	*vir* gi ne,	vir *gin* i bus.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which change *in* of the stem into *o*, are feminine.

Exc. *Ordo, cardo.* and *turbo* are masculine. *Nemo, homo,* and *margo* are masculine or feminine.

Rem. Caro, flesh, has *carnis.* &c., contracted for *carinis,* and has *ium* in the genitive plural.

EXERCISE 17

§ 43. *Rule of Position.* Adverbs usually stand immediately before the words they limit.

Rule of Position. A genitive limiting the object of a preposition usually stands between the preposition and its case; as, *in Cæsaris horto.*

Rule of Syntax. Adverbs limit verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

Vocabulary.

multitudo, in-is, *multitude.*
turbo, turbin-is, *whirl-wind.*
origo, origin-is, *origin.*
ordo, ordin-is, *rank.*
consuetudo, in-is, *custom, habit.*
magnitudo, in-is, *greatness.*
immortalitas, at-is, *immortality.*
non, [adverb,] *not.*
disput-are, *to discuss, debate, dispute.*
turb-are, *to confuse, disorder.*
per-turb-are, *to throw into great confusion, confound.*
de, [prep. with abl.] *concerning.*
periculum,i, *danger.*
animus,i, *soul, mind.*
ex consuetudine, *according to custom.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Oratio Cæsaris multitudinem delectat. Equites Crassi multitudinem hostium fugabunt. Cato de animi origine cum Cicerone disputat. Magnitudo periculi consulem perturbat. Equites copias hostium turbabunt. Rex ex consuetudine in Crassi horto ambulabat. Cicero de animi immortalitate disputabat. Pedites ordines non servabant. Nautæ piratas et turbines formidant. Rex captivos non necabit. Lucius ex agricolæ agro in vicum festinat. Consul multitudinem hostium non formidat. Velites in Helvetiorum agris prœlium redintegrabunt.

Translate into Latin.

The Gauls sacrifice virgins to the gods. The poet, according to custom, was walking in Tully's field. The King of the Belgians is sacrificing bulls and sheep in the Queen's garden. The Gauls do not debate concerning the origin of the soul. The Helvetians will not burn Orgetorix with fire. Cæsar will not arm the skirmishers with javelins (*pilis.*) Cæsar rides into the city after the manner of a King. Tully, according to custom, demands hostages from the Belgians. The soldiers will confuse the ranks of the enemy. Cæsar does not dread the whirlwind.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 44. CLASS VI. Nouns which present the stem changed in the nominative.

III. NEUTER FORMS.

Carmen, *a verse;* neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	*car* men,	*car* mi na,
G.	*car* mi nis,	*car* mi num,
D.	*car* mi ni	car *min* i bus.
Ac.	*car* men,	*car* mi na,
V.	*car* men.	*car* mi na,
Ab.	*car* mi ne,	car *min* i bus.

Opus, *a work;* neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	o pus,	*op* e ra,
G.	*op* e ris,	*op* e rum
D.	*op* e ri,	o *per* i bus,
Ac.	o pus,	*op* e ra,
V.	o pus,	*op* e ra,
Ab.	*op* e re,	o *per* i bus.

Caput, *a head;* neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	*ca* put,	*cap* i ta,
G.	*cap* i tis,	*cap* i tum,
D.	*cap* i ti,	ca *pit* i bus,
Ac.	*ca* put,	*cap* i ta,
V.	*ca* put,	*cap* i ta,
Ab.	*cap* i te,	ca *pit* i bus.

Rule of Gender. Nouns which change *in* of the stem into *en; or* into *ur*; *er, or, ur* into *us*, &c., are neuter.

Exc. Pecten, pectin-is, *comb;* lepus, lepor-is, *hare;* and mus, mur-is, *mouse*, are masculine. Tellus, tell*ur*-is, *earth*, is feminine.

Rem. Occiput has *i* in abl. sing., and *rus* has *e* and *i*.

EXERCISE 18.

Vocabulary.

robur, roboris, *strength.*
corpus, corpor-is, *body.*
jus, jur-is, *justice, law,* [generally *unwritten* law, as opposed to *lex, written* law.]
mus, mur-is, *mouse.*
port-are, *to carry.*
natura,æ, *nature.*
tard-are, *to hinder.*
munus, muner-is, *gift.*
lepus, lepor-is, *hare.*
fœdus, fœder-is, *treaty.*
onus, oner-is, *burden.*
flumen, flumin-is, *river.*
tran-are, *to swim across.*
Tiberis,is, [masc.] *the Tiber.*
nemus, nemoris, *grove.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Dominus robur servi laudat. Regina ancillis munera dabit. Belgæ fœdus non violabunt. Lepores et mures in agris habitant. Servi reginæ in oppidum onera portant. Carmina poetæ imperatorem delectant. Crassus Tiberim, (§ 33, Rem. 1) tranabit. Robur corporis multitudinem delectat. Robur animi Catonem delectat. Equites flumen tranant. Cicero de jure legibusque disputat. Poeta Cæsari carmina dicabit. Magnitudo operis consulem non tardabit. Puellæ in Cæsaris nemore saltant. Cicero de animi et corporis natura disputat.

Translate into Latin.

The poet was walking with the king in Cæsar's garden. The boys and girls are dancing in Tully's grove. The soldiers of Orgetorix will swim across the river. Whirlwinds will dash in pieces the fleet of the enemy The commander praises the valor of the soldiers. The consul is building ships and boats in the dock-yards of Gaul. The enemy violate the treaty. The nature of the work hinders the forces of the enemy Davus and Balbus, Tully's slaves, will carry burdens into the city.

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 45.

Vis, *strength*, fem.

	Singular.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	*Ju* pi ter,	vis,	*vi* res,
G.	*Jo* vis,	vis,	*vir* i um,
D.	*Jo* vi,	—	*vir* i bus,
Ac.	*Jo* vem,	vim,	*vi* res,
V.	*Ju* pi ter,	vis,	*vi* res,
Ab.	*Jo* ve.	vi.	*vir* i bus

Iter, *a journey*; neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	i ter,	i *tin* e ra,
G.	i *tin* e ris,	i *tin* e rum,
D.	i *tin* e ri	it i *ner* i bus,
Ac.	i ter,	i *tin* e ra,
V.	i ter,	i *tin* e ra,
Ab.	i *tin* e re,	it i *ner* i bus.

Jus-jurandum, *oath*; neut.

N.	jus ju *ran* dum,	ju ra ju *ran* da.
G.	ju ris ju *ran* di,	———
D.	ju ri ju *ran* do,	———
Ac.	jus ju *ran* dum.	ju ra ju *ran* da,
V.	jus ju *ran* dum,	ju ra ju *ran* da.
Ab.	ju re ju *ran* do,	———

Materfamilias, *mother of a family.*

Singular.

N.	ma ter fa *mil* i as,
G.	ma tris fa *mil* i as,
D.	ma tri fa *mil* i as,
Ac.	ma trem fa *mil* i as,
V.	ma ter fa *mil* i as,
Ab.	ma tre fa *mil i* as, &c.

Supellex, *furniture ;* fem.

N.	su *pel* lex,
G.	supel *lec* ti lis,
D.	supel *lec* ti li,
Ac.	supel *lec* ti lem,
V.	su *pel* lex,
Ab.	supel *lec* ti le *or* i.

Jecur, *liver ;* neut.

N.	jecur,
G.	je *cin* o ris,
D.	je *cin* o ri,
Ac.	je cur,
V.	je cur,
Ab.	je *cin* o re.

Bos, *an ox* or *cow ;* masc. *or* fem

N.	bos,	*bov* es,
G.	*bov* is,	*bo* um,
D.	*bov* i,	*bo* bus, or *bu* bus,
Ac.	*bov* em,	*bov* es,
V.	bos,	*bov* es,
Ab.	*bov* e,	*bo* bus, or *bu* bus.

Jecur has also *jecoris* and *jecineris.* *Lac,* milk, has *lactis.* Like *materfamilias* is declined *paterfamilias,* father of a family.

EXERCISE 19.

Vocabulary.

comedo, on-is, *glutton.*
provincia,æ, *province.*
aurum,i, *gold.*
argentum,i, *silver.*
cibus,i, *food.*
tent-are, *to attempt.*
per vim, *by force.*
decor-are, *to adorn.*
vor-are, *to devour, gulp down.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Helvetii jurejurando fœdus confirmant. Paterfamilias servos tuba convocat. Imperator Jovi oves taurosque mactat. Jugurtha, rex Numidiæ, Jovi templum de marmore dicabit. Helvetii iter per provinciam per vim tentabant. Jecinora anserum comedones delectant. Leones incolas in-

sulæ vorabant. Comedo cibum more canis vorat. Galli templa deorum auro et argento decorant. Materfamilias ancillis cibum dat. Agricola genero supellectilem dabit. Agricola agros bubus arat.

Translate into Latin.

The king will not violate his oath. Farmers plow their fields with horses and oxen. Gluttons love the liver of the goose. The queen of the Belgians will sacrifice a flock of sheep to Jupiter. Dumnorix, the chief of the Æduans, will attempt a journey through the province by force. The Gauls will bring sheep and oxen to (*ad*) Cæsar. The mother of the family will give food to her children. Farmers urge on their oxen with the goad. Robbers dread the power (*vis*) of kings. The soldiers of Marius were cutting turf with their swords. The merchants will import swords into the villages of the Helvetians.

§ 46. SUMMARY OF THE RULES OF GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Nouns which change stem vowel (*i* into *e*) and add *s*; as, *miles* (stem *milit*,) *princeps* (stem *princip.*)

Exc. *Merges*, fem.; *adeps* and *forceps*, masc. or fem.

2. Nouns which present the stem unchanged in the nominative; as, *honor*, *consul*, *anser*.

Exc. 1. Unchanged stems in *al*, *ar*, *ur*, with *ador*, *æquor*, *marmor*, *cor*, *fel*, *lac*, *mel*, *os*, neuter.

Exc. 2. *Arbor* and *linter*, *fem.* *Cadaver*, *spinther*, *tuber*, *uber*, *ver*, *verber*, with names of trees and plants in *er*, are neuter. But *laver* and *tuber* (names of trees,) are fem.; and *siser* is masc., in the plural.

3. Nouns which drop *n* of the stem in the nom., without adding *s*; as, *sermo*, *sermonis*.

Exc. Abstracts in *io* all fem. *Bubo* masc. or fem.

4. Nouns which change *er* of the stem into *is*, *r* into *s*; as, *pulvis*, *pulver-is*; *flos*, *flor-is*.

Exc. *Os*, *oris*. neut. *Cinis*, *cineris*, masc. and fem. in singular.

II. FEMININES.

1. Nouns which add *s* to the stem without vowel change; as, *urbs*, *lex* (*leg-s*), *ars* (*art-s*), *arx* (*arc-s*).

Exc. 1. Masc. *Dens* and its compunds, *fons*, *pons*, *mons*, *cliens*, *rudens* (rarely fem.), and compounds of *as*; *grex*, Greek nouns in *ax* and *ix*, with *calix*, *fornix*, *perdix*, *tradux*; *paries*, *pes*, *lapis*.

Exc. 2. Masc. or fem. *Many nouns denoting living beings*, with *scrobs*, *stirps*, *calx*.

2. Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*; as, *host-i-s*, *rup-e-s*.

Exc. 1. Masc. and fem. *Palumbes, vates, vepres; amnis, anguis, callis, canalis, canis, clunis, corbis, finis,* (always masc. in pl.), *funis, scrobis, tigris, torquis.*

Exc. 2. Masc. *Axis, aqualis, caulis, cassis, collis, crinis, ensis, fascis, follis, fustis, ignis, manes, mensis, mugilis, orbis, panis, piscis, postis, sentis, sodalis, torris, unguis, vectis vermis.*

3. Nouns which change *in* into *o*; as, *virgo, virgin-is.*

Exc. *Ordo, cardo, turbo,* masc. *Nemo, homo, margo,* masc. or fem.

III. NEUTERS.

1. Nouns which add *e* to the stem; as, *mare, mar-is.*

2. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in *al, ar, ur;* as, *animal, animal-is; calcar, calcar-is; fulgur, fulgur-is.*

Exc. *Sal,* masc. or neut. in singular, always masc. in pl. Masc. *Fur, furfur, salar, turtur, vultur.*

3. Nouns changing *in* into *en; or* into *ur; er, or, ur,* into *us.*

Exc. Masc. *Pecten, lepus, mus.* Fem. *Tellus.*

N. B. Many nouns on account of their meaning vary from these rules. See § 13, Rules.

TENSES OF THE VERB

EXPRESSING COMPLETED ACTION.

§ 47. I. The tenses which express *incomplete* action are the *present, imperfect* and *future;* those which express *completed* action are the *present-perfect* (*perfect,*)

past-perfect (*pluperfect*,) and *future-perfect*. These three tenses are always formed on the same stem, called the *perfect-stem*.

II. The *perfect-stem* in the first conjugation is formed by adding *-av-* to the *present-stem;* as, present-stem, *am-;* *perfect-stem*, *am-av-*.

III. The *present-perfect* tense expresses completed action in *present* time; as, *pres.* cœno, *I sup;* *pres. perf.* cœnavi, *I have supped*. The same form of the verb is used to express an action *indefinitely* as past, without reference to its continuance or completion. This is called the *aorist-perfect*, or *indefinite-perfect;* as, cœnavi, *I supped*, (at some indefinite past time.)

IV The *past-perfect* tense expresses completed action in *past* time; as, *imp.* cœnabam, *I was supping;* *past-perf.* cœnav-eram, *I had supped*.

V. The future-perfect tense expresses action completed in *future* time; as, *fut.* cœnabo, *I shall sup;* *future-perf.* cœnav-ero, *I shall have supped*.

ENDINGS. INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT-PERF.	PAST-PERF.	FUTURE-PERF.
Singular.			
1st pers.	i,	e ram	e ro.
2nd "	* *is* ti,	e ras,	e ris.
3rd "	it,	e rat,	e rit.
Plural.			
1st "	imus,	e *ra* mus,	*er* i mus.
2nd "	*is* tis,	e *ra* tis,	*er* i tis.
3rd "	*e* runt *or* e re	e rant.	e rint.

By adding these endings to the perfect stem, *am-av-*, of *amare* we obtain the following:

* Accented syllables are italicized.

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Present-Perfect.	*loved*, or *have loved.*
Sing.	a *ma* vi,	*I have loved,*
	am a *vis* ti,	*thou hast loved,*
	a *ma* vit,	*he has loved ;*
Plur	a *mav* i mus,	*we have loved,*
	am a *vis* tis,	*ye have loved.*
	am a *ve* runt *or* re,	*they have loved.*
	Past-Perfect.	*had.*
Sing.	a *mav* e ram,	*I had loved,*
	a *mav* e ras,	*thou hadst loved,*
	a *mav* e rat,	*he had loved ;*
Plur.	a mav e *ra* mus,	*we had loved,*
	a mav e *ra* tis,	*ye had loved,*
	a *mav* e rant,	*they had loved.*
	Future-Perfect.	*shall*, or *will have.*
Sing.	a *mav* e ro,	*I shall have loved,*
	a *mav* e ris,	*thou wilt have loved,*
	a *mav* e rit,	*he will have loved ;*
Plur.	am a *ver* i mus,	*we shall have loved,*
	am a *ver* i tis,	*ye will have loved,*
	a *mav* e rint,	*they will have loved.*

Rem. 1. A few verbs of the first conjugation form the perfect stem by adding *u* to the present stem ; as, *nec-at*, he kills ; *nec-u-it*, he has killed ;—or by lengthening the present stem ; as, *juv-at*, (*u* short) he helps ; *juv-it*, (*u* long) he has helped.

Rem. 2. The *supine-stem* is generally formed in the 1st conjugation by adding *-at* to the present-stem ; as, *amo*, *am-at-um*. The ending of the supine is *-um*.

NOTE. The pupil should hereafter give the principal parts, in analyzing verbs. Where the perfect and supine stems vary from the usual formation, they will be given in the vocabularies.

EXERCISE 20.

Vocabulary.

Dare [*perf. stem* ded-, *sup. stem* dat-,] *to give.*
Nec-are, [necav- *or* necu-, necat-, *rarely* nect-,] *to kill.*
Sec-are, [secu-, sect-,] *to cut.*
Lav-are, [lav-, lavat, laut-, lot-.] *to wash, bathe.*
The other verbs used, thus far, form the perfect supine stems regularly.

Translate into English and analyze.

Germani in fluminibus lavant. Rex filio regnum dedit. Princeps captivos veneno necavit. Milites cæspites gladiis secuerunt. Orgetorix leges Helvetiorum violavit; Helvetii iter per provinciam per vim tentaverunt. Principes Gallorum Cæsari obsides dederant. Cæsar cum Gallis fœdus jurejurando confirmaverat. Lupi et leones incolas insulæ voraverunt. Jugurtha more regis a Romanis obsides postulaverat. Servi equos infrenaverint. Crassi copiæ in Gallorum agris hiemaverant. Latrones tramites per silvam exploraverunt. Equites Cæsaris hostium funditores fugaverant, et in vicum festinabant. Marius numerum obsidum duplicavit. Magister puero librum dedit.

Translate into Latin.

Cicero disputed concerning the origin of the soul. The consul had routed the forces of the enemy by land and sea. The brother of Cicero the orator, called together the common people. Balbus, Tully's slave, brought burdens into the city. The queen had walked in the farmer's garden. The king's son had given (to) his sister a necklace. The boys loved the master's children. The ambassadors of the Æduans had asked aid. The nobility dreaded a rebellion among the common people. Cæsar hastened into Gaul The Gauls prepared snares for Crassus.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 48. Nouns whose genitive ending is *us* (long,) are of the fourth declension. The nominative endings are *us* and *u*.

Rem. 1. These nouns were originally of the third declension, the termination *us* of the genitive being contracted from *uis*.

	Masculine Endings.		Neuter Endings.	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. and V.	us,	us,	u,	ua.
G.	us,	uum,	us,	uum.
D.	ui,	ibus, (ubus,)	u,	ibus, (ubus.)
Ac.	um,	us,	u,	ua.
Ab.	u,	ibus, (ubus,)	u,	ibus, (ubus.)

PARADIGM.

	Fructus, *fruit*, mas.		Cornu, *a horn*, neut.	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	*fruc* tus,	*fruc* tus.	*cor* nu,	*cor* nu a.
G.	*fruc* tus,	*fruc* tu um.	*cor* nus.	*cor* nu um.
D.	*fruc* tu i,	*fruc* ti bus.	*cor* nu,	*cor* ni bus.
Ac.	*fruc* tum,	*fruc* tus.	*cor* nu,	*cor* nu a.
V.	*fruc* tus,	*fruc* tus.	*cor* nu,	*cor* nu a.
Ab.	*fruc* tu,	*fruc* ti bus.	*cor* nu,	*cor* ni bus.

Rem. 2. Some nouns of this declension have likewise the inflection of the second declension, especially in the genitive singular; as, *senatus, senati.*

Rem. 3. A contracted form of the dative in *u* sometimes occurs.

Rem. 4. The following nouns have *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

Acus, *a needle.* Artus, *a joint.* Partus, *a birth.* Specus, *a den.*
Arcus, *a bow.* Lacus, *a lake.* Pecu, *a flock.* Tribus, *a tribe.*

Genu, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *veru*, a spit, have *ibus* or *ubus*.

Rem. 5. Domus, a *house*, is thus declined:

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	*do* mus,	*do* mus.
G.	*do* mus, *or do* mi,	*dom* u um, *or* do *mo* rum.
D.	*dom* u i, *or do* mo,	*dom* i bus.
Ac.	*do* mum,	*do* mus, *or do* mos.
V.	*do* mus,	*do* mus.
Ab	*do* mo,	*dom* i bus.

Domus in the genitive singular generally means *of a house ; domi at home.* The ablative *domu* is found. *Domorum* and *domos* are the most common forms of the gen. and acc. plural.

Rule of Gender. Nouns of the fourth declension in *us* are masculine ; those in *u*, neuter.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine :

Acus, *needle.* Idus, *Ides.* Manus, *hand.* Tribus, *tribe.*
Domus, *house,* Ficus, *fig.* Porticus, *gallery.*

Exc. 8. Penus, *storehouse,* is masculine or feminine. Secus, *sex,* is neuter. Specus, *den,* is masculine, rarely feminine or neuter.

EXERCISE 21.

Vocabulary.

fluctus, us, *wave.*
arbor, or-is, [fem.] *tree.*
homo, in-is, *man.*
Lemannus,i, *Lemannus.*
Rhenus,i, *Rhine.*
expect-are, *to await.*
cre-are, *to create.*
exercitus, us, *army.*
adventus, us, *arrival.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Agricola in penum mergites portaverat. Deus fructus arborum creavit. Poeta in domo ambulat. Agricola domum ædificat. Deus tauris cornua dedit. Deus hominibus animos dedit. Agricola in domum fructus terræ portat. Venator arcum sagittasque parat. Nautæ fluctus non formidant. Cæsar a lacu Lemanno ad flumen Rhenum festinavit. Cæsar adventum legatorum expectaverat. Imperatoris adventus exercitum delectat. Leones in specubus habitant.

Translate into Latin.

The soldiers bathed in the lake. The consul will hasten

with the army to Lake Lemannus. The master will build houses for his slaves in the field. Marcus gave (to) his son Lucius a bow and arrows. The boys awaited their father's arrival. The waves will dash in pieces the enemy's ships. The sailors fastened the yards to the masts with ropes. Lions do not dread the horns of bulls. The chief of the Germans lives in a cave. A hunter wounded the consul's son-in-law in the King's forest.

FIFTH DECLENSIO OF NOUNS.

§ 49. Nouns which have *ei* in the genitive from *es* of the nominative are of the fifth declension. They are all feminine except *dies*, day, (masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural,) and *meridies*, midday, (masc.).

ENDINGS.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. and V.	es,	es.
G.	*ei*,	*e*rum.
D.	*ei*,	*e*bus.
Ac.	em	es.
Ab.	e,	ebus.

PARADIGM.

	Res, *a thing.*		Dies, *a day.*	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	res,	res.	*di* es,	*di* es,
G.	*re* i,	*re* rum.	di *e* i,	di *e* rum,
D.	*re* i,	*re* bus.	di *e* i,	di *e* bus,
Ac.	rem,	res.	*di* em,	*di* es,
V.	res,	res.	*di* es,	*di* es,
Ab.	re,	*re* bus.	*di* e,	di *e* bus.

Rem. 1. *Dies*, day, is feminine only when it denotes a fixed day.

Rem. 2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *e* or *i*, instead of *ei*.

Rem. 3. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension,

and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. *Acies, effigies, eluvies, facies, glacies, progenies, series, species, spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

Rem. 4. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plebes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies, aries, paries, quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

EXERCISE 22.

senatus, us, *senate*. [§ 48. Rem. 2.]
plebes, ei, *common people*.
tribunus, i, *tribune*.
acies, ei, *edge, point*,
also *line of battle*.
parens, ent-is, *parent*.
facies, ei, *face*.
vultus, us, *countenance*.
salus, salut-is, *safety, health*.
nox, noct-is, *night*.
currus, us, *chariot*.
fides, ei, *faith, promise*.
spes, ei, *hope*.
victoria, æ, *victory*.
progenies, ei, *offspring*.
effigies, ei, *likeness, image*.
præda, æ, *booty*.
scelus, er-is, *crime*.
dictator, or-is, *dictator*.

Translate into English and analyze,

Senatus dictatori salutem urbis mandaverat. Animalia progeniem amant. Leones faciem vultumque hominis formidant. Spes prædæ latrones ad scelera concitat. Lælius, tribunus plebis, centuriones convocavit. Marcus filium acie gladii vulneravit. Spes victoriæ exercitum delectavit. Jugurtha, rex Numidiæ, fidem non servavit. Tribuni libertatem plebei servaverunt. Crassus consul in templo effigiem Jovis collocavit. Helvetii exercitum Cassii consulis fugavere. Parentes progeniem amant. Regina poetæ currum equosque dedit. Turbines classem hostium profligavere.

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar put his army into winter-quarters. The dictator will slay robbers and pirates. Crassus the tribune will not violate his promise. The hope of victory and booty urges the chiefs to (*ad*) war. The queen's daughter will set-up

(*collocare*) an image of Jupiter in the king's garden. The queen adorned the image of Jupiter with silver and gold The boy wounded his brother's foot with the point of a knife. The senate committed to the tribunes the liberty of the common people. God created day and night. The waves of the sea dashed in pieces the ships of the enemy The poet's children loved their parents.

§ 50 Respublica, (fem.), *the state.*

	Singular.		*Plural*
N. V	res *pub* li ca,	N. V	res *pub* li cæ,
G. D.	re i *pub* li cæ,	G.	re rum pub li ca rum,
Ac.	rem *pub* li cam,	D. Ab.	re bus *pub* li cis.
Ab.	re *pub* li ca.	Ac.	res *pub* li cas.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 51. Irregular nouns are either variable or defective.

1. VARIABLE NOUNS

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous;* those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites.*

1. *Heterogeneous nouns.*

(a.) Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,

Avernus, *a hill in Campania.* Pangæus, *a promontory in Thrace*
Dindymus, *a hill in Phrygia.* Tœnarus, *a promontory in Laconia.*
Ismarus, *a hill in Thrace.* Tartarus, *hell.*
Mænalus, *a hill in Arcadia.* Taygetus, *a hill in Laconia.*

(b.) Masculine in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural; as, *jocus*, a jest, plural *joci* and *joca; locus*, a place, plural *loci*, passages in books, topics, places; *loca*, places; *sibilus*, a hissing, plural, *sibila*, rarely *sibili.*

(c.) Feminine in the singular, neuter in the plural; as, *carbasus*, a sail, plural *carbasa; Pergamus*, the citadel of Troy, plural *Pergama.*

(d.) Neuter in the singular, masculine in the plural; as, *Argos*, Argos, a city, in Greece plural *Argi; Elysium*, the Elysian fields, plural *Elysii; cælum*, heaven, plural *cæli.*

Note 1.—*Argos*, in the singular, is used only in the Nom. and Acc.

(e.) Neuter in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural; as, *frenum*, a bridle, plural *freni* and *frena*; *rastrum*, a rake, plural *rastri* and *rastra*.

(f.) Neuter in the singular, feminine in the plural; as, *balneum*, a bath, plural *balneæ*, seldom *balnea*; *epulum*, a banquet, plural *epulæ*.

(g.) Feminine or neuter in the singular and feminine in the plural; as, *delicia* or *delicium*, plural *deliciæ*.

2. *Heteroclites.*

(a.) Second and third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as, *jugerum*, an acre; gen. *jugeri*, or *jugeris*; abl. *jugere* or *jugero*; plur., nom. and acc. *jugera*; gen. *jugerum*; abl. *jugeris* and *jugeribus*, from the obsolete *jugus* or *juger*.

(b.) Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Defective nouns want some of their cases. The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those occurring but once in Latin authors are marked with the sterisk.

Abactus, *acc. pl.*; *a driving away*.
Accitu, *abl.*; *a calling for*.
Admissu, *abl.*; *admission*.
Admonitu, *abl*; *admonition*.
Ambes, not used in *gen. pl.*
Affatu, *abl.*; *an addressing*;—*pl.* affatus, -ibus.
Algus, *nom.*; algum, *acc.*; algu, *or* -o, *abl.*; *cold*.
Ambage, *abl.*; *a winding stair*; *pl.* entire.
Amissum, *acc.*; *a loss*.
Aplustre, *nom.* and *acc.*; *the flag of a ship*;—*pl.* aplustria, *or* aplustra.
Arbitratus, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *judgment*.
Arcessitu, *abl.*; *a sending for*.
Astu, *nom., acc.*; *a city*.
Astus, *nom.*; astu, *abl.*; *craft*;—astus, *acc. pl.*
Cacoethes, *nom., acc.*; *an evil custom*;—cacoethe, *nom. pl.*; -e *and* -es, *acc. pl.*
Cœlite, *abl.*; *pl.* entire, *inhabitants of heaven*.
*Commutatum, *acc*; *an alteration*.
Compedis, *gen.*; compede, *abl.*; *a fetter*;—*pl.* compedes, -ium, -ibus.
Concessu, *abl.*; *permission*.
Condiscipulatu, *abl.*; *companionship at school*.
Cratim, *or* -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *a hurdle*;—*pl.* crates, -ium, ibus.
Cetos, *acc.*; *a whale*;—cete, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*

Chaos, *nom., acc.;* chao, *abl.; chaos.*
Cassem, *acc.;* casse, *abl.; a net;* *pl.* entire.
Circumspectus, *nom.;* -um; -u; *a looking around.*
Coactu, *abl.; constraint.*
Daps, *nom.; scarcely used;* dapis, *gen. &c.; a feast.*
*Datu, *abl.; a giving.*
Derisui, *dat.;* -um, *acc;* -u, *abl.; ridicule.*
Despicatui, *dat.; contempt.*
Dica, *nom.;* dicam, *acc.; a legal process;*—dicas, *acc., pl.*
Dicis, *gen.; as,* dicis gratia, *for form's sake.*
Ditionis, *gen.;* -i, *dat.;* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.; power.*
Diu, *abl.; in the day time.*
Divisui, *dat.; a dividing.*
Ebur, *ivory;*—not used in the plural.
*Efflagitatu, *abl.: importunity*
*Ejectus, *nom.; a throwing out.*
Epos, *nom.* and *acc.; an epic poem.*
Ergo, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *for the sake.*
Essedas, *acc. pl.; war chariots.*
Evectus, *nom.; a carrying out.*
Fæx, *dregs,* wants *gen. pl.*
Fame, *abl.; hunger*
Far, *corn,* not used in the *gen., dat.* and *abl. pl.*
Fas, *nom.; acc.; right.*
Fauces, *abl.; the throat;*—*pl.* entire.
Fax, *a torch,* wants *gen. pl.*
Fel, *gall,* wants *gen. pl.*
Feminis, *gen.;* -i, *dat.;* -e, *abl.; the thigh;*—*pl.* femina, -ibus.
Flictu, *abl.; a striking.*
Foris, *nom.* and *gen.;* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.; a door;*—*pl.* entire.
Fors, *nom.;* -tis, *gen.;* -tem, *acc.;* -te, *abl.; chance.*
*Frustratui, *abl.; a deceiving.*
Frux, *fruit, nom.;* scarcely used;—frugis, *gen.,* etc.
Fulgetras, *acc. pl.; lightning.*
Gausape, *nom., acc., abl.; a rough garment;*—gausapi, *acc. pl.*
Glos, *nom.; a husband's sister*
Grates, *acc. pl.;*—gratibus, *abl.; thanks.*
Hebdomadam, *acc.; a week.*
Hiems, *winter.* not used in *gen., dat.* and *abl. pl.*
Hippomanes, *nom* and *acc.*
*Hir, *nom.; the palm of the hand.*
Hortatu, *abl.; an exhorting;*—*pl.* hortatibus.
Impetis, *gen.;* -e, *abl.; a shock;*—*pl.* impetibus.
Incitas, *or* -a, *acc. pl.; as,* ad incitas redactus, *reduced to a strait.*
*Incónsultu. *abl.; without advice.*
*Indultu, *abl.; indulgence.*
Inferiæ, *nom. pl.;* -ās, *acc.;* -is, *abl.: sacrifices to the dead.*
Infitias, *acc. pl.; a denial; as,* ire infitias, *to deny.*
Ingratiis, *abl. pl.,* (used adverbially): *against one's will.*
Interdiu, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *in the day time.*
*Invitatu, *abl.; an invitation.*
Irrisui, *dat.;* -um, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; derision.*
Injussu, *abl.; without command.*
Inquies, *nom.; restlessness.*
Instar, *nom., acc.; a likeness.*
Jovis, *nom.,* rarely used;—*pl.* Joves.
Jugeris, *gen.;* -e, *abl.; an acre;*—*pl.* jugera, -um, -ibus.
Jussu, *abl.; command.*
Labes, *a spot,* wants *gen. pl.*
Lucu, *abl.; day-light.*
*Ludificatui, *dat.; a mockery*

Lux, *light*, wants *gen. pl.*
Mandatu, *abl.*; *a command.*
Mane, *nom.*, *acc.*; mane *or* rarely -i, *abl.*: *the morning.*
Mel, *honey*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.* and *abl. pl.*
Melos, *nom.*, *acc.*; melo, *dat.*; *melody*:—mele, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*
Metus, *fear*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.* and *abl. pl.*
Missu, *abl.*; *a sending*;—*pl.* missus, -ibus.
Monitu, *abl.*; *admonition*:—*pl.* monitus.
Natu, *abl.*; *by birth.*
Nauci, *gen.*, with non: *as*, homo non nauci, *a man of no account.*
Nefas, *nom.*, *acc.*: *wickedness.*
Nemo, *nobody*, wants the *voc.* and the *pl.*; gen. & abl. rarely used.
Nepetulæ, *nom.*, *acc.*; *an herb.*
Nex, *death*, wants the *voc.*;—necis, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*
Nihil, *or* nihilum, *nom.* and *acc.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*: *nothing.*
Noctu, *abl.*; *by night.*
Nuptui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*: *marriage.*
Obex, *nom.*; -icem, *acc.*; -ice *or* -jice, *abl.*: *a bolt*:—*pl.* obices, -jicibus.
Objectum, *acc.*: -u, *abl.*: *an interposition*;—*pl.* objectus.
Obtentui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*: *a pretext.*
Opis, *gen.*: opem, *acc.*; ope, *abl.*; *help*:—*pl.* entire.
Oppositu, *abl.*; *an opposing*;—*pl.* oppositus, *acc.*
Opus, *nom.*, *acc.*: *need.*
Os, *the mouth*, wants the *gen. pl.*
Panaces, *nom.*; -is, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *an herb.*
Pax, *peace*, wants *gen. pl.*
Peccatu, *abl.*; *a fault.*
Pecudis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*;—*pl.* entire.
Pelage, *acc. pl.* of pelagus; *the sea.*
Permissu, *abl.*; -um, *acc.*; *permission.*
Piscatus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *a fishing.*
Pix, *pitch*; pices, *acc. pl.*
Pondo, *abl.*; *in weight.*
Preci, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *prayer*;—*pl.* entire.
Procer, *nom.*; -em, *acc.*; *a peer*;—*pl.* entire.
Promptu, *abl.*; *readiness.*
Pus, wants *gen.*, *dat.* and *abl. pl.*
Relatum, *acc.*;—u, *abl.*; *a recital.*
Repetundarum, *gen. pl*; -is, *abl.*; *money taken by extortion.*
Rogatu, *abl.*; *a request.*
Ros, *dew*, wants *gen. pl.*
Rus, *the country*, wants *gen.*, *dat.* and *abl. pl.*
Satias, *nom.*; -atem, *acc.*; ate, *abl.*; *satiety.*
Sexus, *nom.*, *acc.*; *sex.*
Situs, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *situation*;—situs, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*
Situs, *nom.*; -us, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*: *rust*:—situs, *acc. pl.*
Sol, *the sun*, wants *gen. pl.*
Sordis, *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e *and* -i, *abl.*; *filth*;—*pl.* sordes, -ium.
Suboles, *offspring*, wants *gen. pl.*
Sponte, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *of one's own accord.*
Suppetiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*, *supplies.*
Tabum, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *corrupt matter.*
Tempe, *nom.*, *acc. voc. pl.*; *a vale in Thessaly.*
Tus, wants *gen.*, *dat.* and *abl. pl.*

Venui *and* -o, *dat.*; um, *acc.*; -o, *abl.*; *sale.*
Veprem, acc.; -e, abl.; a brier;—pl. entire.
Verberis, gen.; -e, abl.; a stripe; —pl. verbera, -um, -ibus.
Vesper, nom.; -um, acc.; -e -i, *or* -o, abl.; the evening.
Vicis, gen.; -i, dat.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; change; —pl. entire, except gen.
Vespera, nom.; -am, acc.; abl.; the evening.
Virus, nom.; -i, gen.; -us. acc -o, abl.; poison.
Vis, gen. and dat. rare; strength pl. vires, -ium, etc. See § 4
Viscus, nom.; -eris, gen.; -er abl.; an internal organ; p viscera, etc.
Vocatu, abl.; a calling;—vocatu acc. pl.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 52. 1. All verbs that have *ere* (penult long) in the In finitive-Present are of the second conjugation.

2. The perfect-stem in verbs of this conjugation is usu ally formed by adding *u*, and the supine-stem by adding *i* to the present-stem; as, *mon-eo*, I advise; *monu-i*, I hav advised, supine *mon-it-um*. (Perfect and supine stem which are otherwise formed will be given in the vocabu laries.)

ENDINGS OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

	Singular			*Plural.*		
	1st Pers.	2nd.	3rd.	1st Pers	2nd.	3rd.
Present.	eo,	es,	et,	*e* mus,	*e* tis,	ent.
Imperfect.	*e* bam,	*e* bas,	*e* bat,	e *ba* mus,	e *ba* tis,	*e bant.*
Future.	*e* bo,	*e* bis,	*e* bit,	*eb* i mus,	*eb* i tis,	*e* bunt.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	1st Pers.	2nd.	3rd.	1st Pers.	2nd.	3rd.
Present-perf.	i,	*is* ti,	it,	i mus,	*is* tis,	*e* runt or *e* r
Past-perf.	e ram,	e ras,	e rat,	e *ra* mus,	e *ra* tis,	e rant.
Future-perf.	e ro,	e ris,	e rit,	*er* i mus,	*er* i tis,	e rint.

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
	I advise.	*I was advising.*	*I shall* or *will advise*
Sing.	*mo* neo,	*S.* mo *ne* bam,	*S.* mo *ne* bo,
	mo nes,	mo *ne* bas,	mo *ne* bis,
	mo net,	mo *ne* bat,	*P* mo *ne* bit,
Plur.	mo *ne* mus,	*P.* mon e *ba* mus,	mo *neb* i mus,
	mo *ne* tis,	mon e *ba* tis,	mo *neb* i tis,
	mo nent.	mo *ne* bant.	mo *ne* bunt.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

Present-perfect.	Past-perfect.	Future-perfect.
I advised, or *have advised.*	*I had advised.*	*I shall have advised.*
S. *mon* u i,	*S.* mo *nu* e ram,	*S.* mo *nu* e ro,
mon u *is* ti,	mo *nu* e ras,	mo *nu* e ris,
mon u it;	mo *nu* e rat;	mo *nu* e rit.
P mo *nu* i mus,	*P.* mon u e *ra* mus,	*P* mon u *er* i mus,
mon u *is* tis,	mon u e *ra* tis,	mon u *er* i tis,
mon u *e* runt *or* e re.	mo *nu* e rant.	mo *nu* e rint.

§ 53. EXERCISE 23.

Vocabulary.

Hab-ere, *to have, hold.*
Præb-ere, (for prae-hab-ere,) *to offer, furnish.*
Lat-ere, *to lie hid,* (no sup.)
Terr-ere, *to frighten.*
Per-terr-ere, *to frighten thoroughly, to terrify.*
Tim-ere, *to fear,* (no snp.)
Impetus, us, *attack.*
Mov-ere, (mov—,mot-,)*to move.*
Man-ere, (mans—,mans-,) *to remain.*
Mord-ere, (momord—,mors-,) *to bite, champ*
Tond-ere, (totond—,tons-,) *to shear.*
Vid-ere, (vīd—,vīs-,) *to see.*
Castra, ornm, pl. *camp.*
Frumentum,i, *corn.*
Frennm,i, (§ 51. I. 1. e,) *bit.*
Legio, legion-is, (f.), *legion.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Plebs nobilitatem timuerunt (§ 34, 2, Rule.) Puer taurum cornibus habebat. Impetus equitum hostes terret. Puer librum in manu habet. Agricolæ oves totonderant. Canis ancillam mordebit. Rex Germanorum castra moverat. Plebs in regis horto reginam vidit. Leones in specubus, (§ 48, R. 4,) latent. Magnitudo periculi servos perterrebit. Nautæ fluctus turbinesque non timent. Exerci-

tus Crassi in hibernis mansit. Galli Cæsaris exercitu frumentum præbebant. Equi frena momordere. Hoste impetum equitum timebant. Marius consul castra ad co lem movorat.

Translate into Latin.

The chief of the Eduans feared the cruelty of the He vetians. The attack of the cavalry thoroughly frightene the enemy's archers and slingers. The skirmishers lay hi in the forest. The works of Cicero the orator delight th poet. The farmers had not sheared their sheep. Th horses were champing their bits. The King and Quee remained in the temple. The Helvetians had moved thei camp from the hill to the river. The Gauls furnished cor to Cæsar's army.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 54. 1. An adjective is a word which qualifies c limits the meaning of a noun.

2. Adjectives are declined like nouns; they are e ther of the first and second declension, or of the thir only.

CLASS I. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AN SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 55. Adjectives of this class have their masculin and neuter endings of the second declension, their fem nine endings of the first.

PARADIGM.

Bon-us, bon-a, bon-um, *good.*

Singular

M.	F.	N.
bon **us,**	*bon* **a,**	*bon* **um,**
bon **i,**	*bon* **æ,**	*bon* **i,**
bon **o,**	*bon* **æ,**	*bon* **o,**
bon **um,**	*bon* **am,**	*bon* **um,**
bon **e,**	*bon* **a,**	*bon* **um,**
bon **o,**	*bon* **a,**	*bon* **o.**

Plural.

bon i,	*bon* æ,	*bon* a,
bon *o* rum,	bon *a* rum,	bon *o* rum,
bon is,	*bon* is,	*bon* is,
bon os,	*bon* as,	*bon* a,
bon i,	*bon* æ,	*bon* a,
bon is,	*bon* is,	*bon* is.

Rem. 1. Participles and pronouns in *us* are declined like *bonus*.

Rem. 2. Adjectives whose stems end in *er* generally drop the endings *us* in the nominative, and *e* in the vocative; and most of them drop *e* of the stem in inflection; as, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum. *beautiful*; pulchr-i, pulchr-æ, pulchr-i, &c.

Rem. 3. The following retain *e* of the stem:

Asper; *rough*; exter, *foreign*; gibber, *crook-backed*; lacer, *torn*; liber, *free*; miser, *wretched*; prosper, *prosperous*; and compounds of *fer* and *ger*; as, corniger, *horned*.

Rem. 4. Alter, *the other of two*, has altera, alterum; and dexter, *right*, has sometimes dextera, dexterum.

Satur, *full*, has satura, saturum.

§ 56. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *ius*, and their dative in *i*, in all the genders:

Alius, *another*.	Totus, *whole*.	Alter, -tera, -terum, *the other*.
Nullus, *no one*.	Ullus, *any*.	Uter, -tra, -trum, *which of the two*.
Solus, *alone*.	Unus, *one*.	Neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither*.

To these may be added the other compounds of *uter*,—namely, *uterque*, each of two; *utercumque*, *uterlibet*, and *utervis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*. etc.—also, *alteruter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterutri*. So *alteruterque*, and *unusquisque*.

Nullus, *solus*, *totus*, *ullus*, and *unus* are thus declined:

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	*u* nus,	*u* na,	*u* num,
G.	u *ni* us,	u *ni* us,	u *ni* us,
D	*u* ni,	*u* ni,	*u* ni,
Ac.	*u* num,	*u* num,	*u* num,
V.	*u* ne,	*u* na,	*u* num,
Ab.	*u* no.	*u* na.	*u* no.

The plural is regular, like that of *bonus*.

Rem. 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius* contracted for *alīius*.

Rem. 2. Some of these adjectives occasionally form their genitive and dative regularly.

§ 57 EXERCISE 24.

Vocabulary.

Alt-us, a, um, *high, deep.*
Long-us, a, um, *long.*
Lat-us, a, um, *broad.*
Magn-us, a, um, *great, large.*
Mult-us, a, um, *much, many.*
Dens-us, a, um, *thick.*
Benign-us, a, um, *kind.*
Fid-us, a, um, *faithful.*
Improb-us, a, um, *wicked.*
Iniqus, a, um, *unjust.*
Judex, judic-is, *judge.*
Thrax, Thracis, *Thracian.*

1. *Rule of Position.* The adjective, unless emphatic follows the noun which it limits; as, puer bonus, *a good boy.*

2. *Rule of Syntax.* Adjective words agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender, number, and case; as

Puer *bonus*, *A good boy.*
Puella *pulchra*, *A beautiful girl.*
Flumen *latum*, *A broad river.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Rex Thracum in colle turres altas ædificat. Filius improbus patrem lapide vulneraverat.

Silvæ densæ nuncios reginæ terruerunt. Venator canes fidos amat. Improbi homines faciem vultumque judicis timent. Plebes iniquum judicem formidat. Nubes densæ lunam obscuraverant. Equites hostium flumen latum transabunt. Agricolæ filii bobus magnis agros aravere. Cæsar multa oppida expugnavit. Puer cultrum longum in manu habuit. Pueri boni parentes amant. Magister benignus bonis pueris libros dedit.

Translate into Latin.

The consul slew many robbers. The kind mother gives

food to her children. The wicked consul killed the tribunes of the people. The chief of the Thracians lay hid in the King's grove. The shepherd armed his sons with long knives. The enemy's skirmishers swam across a broad river. The faithful servants defended their master with knives and stones. The attack of the enemy did not frighten the general. The great commander slew many captives. The hunter saw many wolves in the forest. Wicked men do not fear the countenance of an unjust judge. The kind master, according to custom, was advising the boys.

EXERCISE 25.

§ 58. I. *Rule of Position:* When a noun is limited by an adjective and a genitive, the adjective is generally put first, as, *fidus* Tullii servus, *Tully's faithful slave.*

2. *Rule of Position* An adjective limiting the object of a preposition is often put before the preposition; as, magno in prœlio, *in a great battle.*

3. *Rule of Syntax.* With words expressing a part, the genitive is used to denote the whole; as, *unus militum,* one of the soldiers; *multi equitum,* many of the horsemen.

Remark. This is usually called the *partitive genitive.* The partitive word, if an adjective, agrees in gender with the word denoting the whole. *Unus militum* is equivalent to *unus miles militum.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Magnæ hostium copiæ in silva latuerunt. Magna pars nobilitatis apud Crassum cœnabant. Cives multi magna in urbe habitant. Consul in hostium castris multos milites vidit. Pastor oves multosque agnorum totonderat. Imperator magnus uno in prœlio copias hostium fugavit. Alter fratrum magnum ad oppidum festinat. Una Romanorum

legio totum hostium exercitum perterruit. Neutra ancillarum canes timet. Germani in prœlio nullum ordinem servant. Rex Thracum nullam reipublicæ (§ 50) legem violaverat. Una in urbe homines multi habitant. Impetus hostium nullius legionis ordines turbavit.

Translate into Latin.

The Thracians will furnish corn to the consul's great army. One of the skirmishers saw the enemy's horsemen in the dense forest. The shepherd's faithful dog defended the sheep from (*a*) the wolves. The general, after the manner of a king, demanded a great number of hostages. The whole army dreaded the cruelty of the general. The inhabitants of the whole village feared the farmer's big bull. Cæsar feared no danger. A great multitude of footmen hastened to the camp.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 59. CLASS II. *Adjectives having two endings in the nominative. Third Declension.*

Adjectives of the second class have *is* in the masculine and feminine, and *e* in the neuter, and are of the third declension.

Paradigm. Brev-is, *short.*

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. V.	*brev* is,	*brev* e,	*brev* es,	*brev* ia,
G.	*brev* is,	*brev* is,	*brev* ium,	*brev* ium,
D.	*brev* i,	*brev* i,	*brev* ibus,	*brev* ibus,
Ac.	*brev* em,	*brev* e,	*brev* es,	*brev* ia,
Ab.	*brev* i,	*brev* i,	*brev* ibus.	*brev* ibus.

Rem. 1. Comparatives may be considered of this class.

Rem. 2. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative neuter, have *i* in the ablative singular; *ium* in gen. pl.; and *ia* in nom. acc. voc. pl. neut. Comparatives have *um* and *a*.

Rem. 3. The following have also *er* in the nominative singular masculine; as, *acer* or *acris, acris, acre.*

acer, *sharp.*	celeber, *famous.*	silvester, *woody.*
alacer, *cheerful.*	equester, *of a horse.*	terrester, *of the earth.*
campester, *of the plain.*	paluster, *marshy.*	volucer, *winged.*
celer, *swift.*	pedester, *on foot.*	saluber, *wholesome.*
	puter, *rotten.*	

Rem. 4. *Volucer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ 60. EXERCISE 26.

Vocabulary.

Fort-is, e, *brave.*	Adventus, us, *arrival.*
Agil-is, e, *active.*	Fatig-are, *to weary.*
Crudel-is, e, *cruel.*	Civitas, civitat-is, *state.*
Grav-is, e, *heavy, severe.*	Locus, i, [§ 51, I, 1, (b)] *place.*
Omn-is, e, *all, every.*	Levis, e, *light, slight.*
Nobil-is, e, *noble.*	Piger, gra, grum, *lazy.*

Rem. The adjective is often used as a noun, the noun with which it agrees being omitted; as, boni, *the good;* bona, *good things, property.* Masculine adjectives thus used express persons; neuter adjective, things.

Translate into English and analyze.

Imperator fortis centuriones omnes convocavit. Magister bonus omnes pueros monuerat. Servi agiles taurum cornibus habebant. Onera gravia magnos agricolæ boves fatigant. Materfamilias liberis servisque omnibus cibum salubrem dabit. Puer manum cultro secuit. Pedestres Carthaginiensium copiæ equites fortes fugaverant. Bella longa multas civitates ferro ignique vastavere. Princeps nobilis apud regem cœnaverat. Deus omnia creavit. Boni gravia bella formidant. Latrones improbi multos cives trucidaverunt. Velites agiles multos silvarum tramites explorabunt. Canis fidus per totam noctem vigilat. Equites palustria loca timent.

Translate into Latin.

The cruel chief has slain all the captives with the sword.

All the citizens dreaded the great cruelty of the wicked king. Lazy slaves love short days and light work. One of the swift horsemen is hastening to (*ad*) the camp of Cæsar. The active sailors were fastening the yards to the masts with long ropes. The arrival of the brave consul thoroughly frightened all the chiefs of the Gauls. Lazy boys do not love their books. Cæsar's army laid waste many states of Gaul. The farmer's lazy son loves the shade of the thick trees. The brave general fears no danger. Cæsar put all the legions into winter-quarters.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. CLASS III. *Adjectives of the Third Declension. One Ending.*

1. Adjectives of this class have but one ending for all genders in the nominative.

PARADIGMS.

FELIX, *happy*.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. & F	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	*fe* lix,	*fe* lix,	fe *lic* es,	ia.
G.	fe *lic* is,	is,	fe *lic* ium,	ium,
D.	fe *lic* i.	i.	fe *lic* ibus,	ibus,
Ac.	fe *lic* em,	*fe* lix,	fe *lic* es,	ia,
V.	*fe* lix,	*fe* lix,	fe *lic* es,	ia,
Ab.	fe *lic* e *or* i.	e *or* i.	fe *lic* ibus,	ibus.

PRUDENS, *prudent*.

Singular.

	M. & F.	Neuter.
N.	*pru* dens,	*pru* dens,
G.	pru *dent* is,	pru *dent* is,
D.	pru *dent* i,	pru *dent* i,
Ac.	pru *dent* em,	*pru* dens,
V.	*pru* dens,	*pru* dens,
Ab.	pru *dent* e *or* i,	pru *dent* e *or* i; &c.

2. Present participles are declined like *prudens*. When used as articiples they have *e* rather than *i* in the ablative singular; but hen used as adjectives they have *i* rather than *e*. Comparatives lso have oftener *e* than *i*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the abtive.

Exc. 1. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* i the ablative:

Bicorpor, bipes, cælebs, compos, deses, discolor, hospes, impos, npubes, juvenis, locuples, pauper, princeps, puber *or* pubes, senex. ospes, superstes, tricorpor, tricuspis, *and* tripes.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* i the ablative:

Anceps, concors, discors, hebes, immemor, iners, ingens, inops. iemor, par, præceps, recens, repens, vigil, and most adjectives in especially those in *plex*.

Rem. 1. *Inerte, recente,* and *præcipe* sometimes occur.

Rem. 2. *Præsens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i*; hen used of persons, it has *e*.

4. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in , and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium*; but *vetus*, old, and *ber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um*.

Exc. 1. Those adjective that have only *e* in the ablative singular, ave *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *facio* and *capio*, and of such nouns as make *m* in their genitive plural, with *celer, compar, cicur, dives, memor, mmemor, præpes, supplex*, and *vigil*, make their genitive plural in *m*.

Exc. 3. *Dis, locuples, sons*, and *insons* have either *um* or *ium*; and ther adjectives have sometimes *um* instead of *ium* in the poets and ter prose writers.

§ 62 EXERCISE 27

Vocabulary.

ives, divit-is, *rich.*
erax, *ac-is, fertile.*
nocens, ent-is, *innocent.*
auper, pauper-is, *poor.*
etus, veter-is, *ancient*; pl. veteres, *the ancients.*
Ingens, ent is, *huge.*
Augere, (aux-,auct-,) *to increase, swell.*
Ferox, feroc-is, *warlike, fierce.*
Atrox, atroc-is, *terrible, cruel, savage.*
Recens, ent-is, *recent.*
Civilis, *e, civil.*

Translate into English and analyze

Imbres recentes flumina omnia auxerunt. Vir bonus pauperibus cibum dabit. Pastor prudens oves agnosque a lupis defensabit. Orgetorix, princeps Helvetiorum, copias auxerat. Veteres Jovi tauros ingentes mactabant. Agricolæ prudentes in penum margites omnes portant. Cæsar fortes centuriones laudabat. Marius, Romanorum imperator, feroces Numidiæ agros ferro ignique vastavit. Princeps crudelis innocentem plebem trucidavit. Bella civilia nobilitatem et cives divites perterruerant. Principes feroces atrocia bella amant. Rex ferox nobilitatem ad bellum magnum et atrox concitavit.

Translate into Latin.

No prudent (man) will give his sheep to the wolves. The happy mother loves her children. The innocent do not fear the face and countenance of a judge. The consul will preserve the ancient laws of the commonwealth. The prudent shepherds had sheared their sheep. A terrible lion tore in pieces all the inhabitants of the village. The enemy's soldiers had laid waste the whole city with fire and sword. The rich dread civil wars. The recent rains have swelled the great river. The poor (man) does not fear the robber.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 63. 1. Adjectives expressing number are called *numerals*, and are divided into three classes, viz :

(a.) *Cardinals*, which answer the question "*How many?*" as, unus, *one ;* duo, *two :*

(b.) *Ordinals*, which express order or rank ; as, primus, *first ;* secundus, *second :*

(c.) *Distributives*, which answer the question, "*How many to each?*"—"*How many apiece?*" as, singuli, *one to each, one at a time, one apiece;* bini, *two apiece.*

2. To these may be added numeral adverbs, which answer the question "*How many times?*" as, semel, *once;* bis, *twice.*

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
One, two, &c.	*First, second, &c.*	*One by one, &c.*	*Once, twice, &c.*
1 Unus	Primus	Singuli	Semel
2 **Duo**	**Secundus**	**Bini**	**Bis**
3 Tres	Tertius	Terni	Ter
4 **Quatuor**	**Quartus**	**Quaterni**	**Quater**
5 Quinque	Quintus	Quini	Quinquies
6 **Sex**	**Sextus**	**Seni**	**Sexies**
7 Septem	Septimus	Septeni	Septies
8 Octo	Octavus	Octoni	Octies
9 Novem	Nonus	Noveni	Novies
10 Decem	Decimus	Deni	Decies
11 Undecim	Undecimus	Undeni	Undecies
12 Duodecim	Duodecimus	Duodeni	Duodecies
13 Tredecim	Tertius- decimus	Terni- deni	Tredecies
14 Quatuordecim	Quartus- decimus	Quaterni- deni	Quatuordecies
15 Quindecim	Quintus- decimus	Quini- deni	Quindecies
16 Sexdecim	Sextus- decimus	Seni- deni	Sedecies
17 Septendecim	Septimus- decimus	Septeni- deni	Decies & septies
18 Octodecim	Octavus- decimus	Octoni- deni	Duodevicies
19 Novendecim	Nonus- decimus	Noveni- deni	Undevicies
20 Viginti	Vicesimus	Viceni	Vicies
30 Tringinta	Tricesimus	Triceni	Tricies
40 Quadraginta	Quadragesimus	Quadrageni	Quadragies
50 Quinquaginta	Quinquagesimus	Quinquageni	Quinquagies
60 Sexaginta	Sexagesimus	Sexageni	Sexagies
70 Septuaginta	Septuagesimus	Septuageni	Septuagies
80 Octoginta	Octogesimus	Octogeni	Octogies
90 Nonaginta	Nonagesimus	Nonageni	Nonagies
100 **Centum**	**Centesimus**	**Centeni**	**Centies**
200 Ducenti	Ducentesimus	Ducenteni	Ducenties
300 Trecenti	Trecentesimus	Trecenteni	Trecenties
400 Quadringenti	Quadringentesimus	Quadringenteni	Quadringenties
500 Quingenti	Quingentesimus	Quingenteni	Quingenties
600 **Sexcenti**	**Sexcentesimus**	**Sexcenteni**	**Sexcenties**
700 Septingenti	Septingentesimus	Septingenteni	Septingenties
800 Octingenti	Octingentesimus	Octingenteni	Octingenties
900 Noningenti	Nongentesimus	Nongenteni	Nongenties
1000 Mille	Millesimus	Milleni	Milies

Rem. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined. From four to a hundred they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus.*

Rem. 2. For the declension of *unus*. See § 56. *Tres* is declined like the plural of *brevis*.

§ 64. *Duo* is thus declined.—

		Plural.	
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	*du* o,	*du* æ,	*du* o,
G.	du *o* rum,	du *a* rum,	du *o* rum,
D.	du *o* bus,	du *a* bus,	du *o* bus,
Ac.	*du* os, or *du* o,	*du* as,	*du* o,
V.	*du* o,	*du* æ,	*du* o,
Ab.	du *o* bus.	du *a* bus.	du *o* bus.

Rem. 1. *Duorum, duarum*, are often contracted into *duum*, especially in compounds, as, *duumvir*, and when joined with *millium*.—*Ambo*, both, is declined like *duo*.

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

Rem. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *unæ nuptiæ*, one marriage; *una castra*, one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. So, also, when it takes the signification of "alone" or "the same" as, *uni Ubii*, the Ubians alone; *unis moribus vivere*,—with the same manners.

3. (*a.*) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et*: thus, *decem et tres*, *decem et novem*, or, omitting *et*, *decem novem*. *Octodecim* has no good authority. See *infra*, 4.

(*b.*) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et*: as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*; *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used, but the poets sometimes take *ac* atque, or *que*, instead of *et*.

4. For eighteen, twenty eight, &c., *duodeviginti*, *duodetriginta*, &c. (*two-from-twenty*, *two-from-thirty*, &c.) are more commonly used; and for nineteen, twenty nine, &c., *undeviginti*, *undetriginta*, &c. (one-from-

twenty, one-from-thirty, &c.) Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* are declined in these combinations.

5. (*a.*) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia;* as, *decem millia*, ten thousand; *ducenta millia*, two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille*, (a thousand,) the higher units of modern numeration are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to the combinations *centena millia;* as, *decies centena millia*, a million; *centies centena millia*, ten millions. In such combinations *centena millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies, scil, centena millia.*

(*b.*) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodecim*; *bis centum* for *ducenti*, etc.

6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(*a.*) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites.*

(*b.*) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable; as, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *cum bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

§ 65. 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus.*

2. (*a.*) From thirteenth to nineteenth, the smaller number is usually put first without *et;* as, *tertius decimus*, but sometimes the greater with or without *et;* as, *decimus tertius et tertius*, or *decimus tertius.*

(*b.*) Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *unus et vicesimus*, *unus et tricesimus*, etc., one and twentieth, etc.; and twenty-second, etc., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimus*, etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et;* as, *vicesimus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimus.*

(*c.*) For eighteenth, etc., to fifty-eight, and for nineteenth, etc., to fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodevicesimus*, etc., and *undevicesimus*, etc., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives, *duodeviceni*, etc., *undeviceni*, etc.

4. (*a.*) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers: as, *bina spicula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, two weddings.

(*b.*) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, two-fold. So *terunus*, *quinus*, *septenus*.

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22 etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et*; and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetricies* and *undequadragies* are found.

EXERCISE 28.

§ 66. 1. *Rule of Syntax.* The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative. As, tertia hora, *at the third hour*. (*Ablative of Time.*)

2. *Rule of Syntax.* Duration of time, and extent of space, are expressed by the accusative, sometimes by the ablative. As, tres horas mansit, *he remained three hours*; fossa duos pedes lata, *a ditch two feet wide*.

3. *Rule of Position.* Designations of time usually precede the predicate.

Vocabulary.

Fossa, æ, *ditch.*
Hora, æ, *hour.*
Mensis, is, (§ 33. Exc. 3.) *month.*
Dies, ei, *day.*
Annus, i, *year.*
Una ex parte, *on one side.*
Hiems, hiem-is, *winter.*
Passus, us, *pace.*
Con-tin-ere, (tinu-, tent-) *to keep, [illegible] restrain.*
Sus-tin-ere, (tinu-, tent-) *to sustain, bear.*
Tempus, or-is, *time.*
Noster, a, um, *our.*
Æstas, æstat-is, *summer.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Servi fidi horas multas vigilaverant. Nullus agricola prudens oves hieme tondebit. Cæsar, Romanorum imperator, tres legiones in hibernis* collocavit. Consul multos

* *In hibernis* refers to the resting of troops in winter quarters; *in hiberna*, to the action of going there.

annos in urbe habitaverat. Mons altus una ex parte Helvetios continuit. Equites nostri hostium impetum duas horas sustinuerunt. Pastor prudens oves omnes æstate tondit. Legatus fortis decem dies Cæsaris adventum expectabat. Imperator tertio die castra movit. Princeps atrox multos menses civitatem perterrebat Consul fortis nullo anni tempore adventum hostium timuit. Rex latrones omnes brevi tempore trucidavit. Crassus tria millia passuum equitavit. Consul mille passus castra movit.

Translate into Latin.

The great rains had kept our soldiers in the camp many months. In one summer Cæsar laid waste many States of Gaul with fire and sword. For many years (*acc.*,) the Romans routed all their enemies by sea and land. Cæsar moved his camp ten thousand paces from the city. The soldiers of the tenth legion had carried heavy burdens for many hours (*acc.*) Our skirmishers sustained the attack of the Germans three hours. Lake Lemannus held in the Helvetians on one side. The farmer had a ditch three feet wide in his field. The farmer will have in his fields five ditches, each three feet (*terios*) wide. The master gave (to) the boys four books apiece. A ditch twelve feet wide and six feet deep had hindered the attack of the enemy many days.

EXERCISE 29.

§ 67. 1. PARTIAL PARADIGM OF ESSE, *to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Person.	1. sum, *I am*,	su mus, *we are*,
	2. es, *thou art*,	es tis, *ye or you are*,
	3. est, *he is*;	sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect.

1. *e* ram, *I was*,	e *ra* mus, *we were*,
2. *e* ras, *thou wast*,	e *ra* tis, *ye or you were*,
3. *e* rat, *he was*;	*e* rant, *they were*.

Future. *shall, or will.*

1. *e* ro, *I shall be*,	*er* i mus, *we shall be*.
2. *e* ris, *thou wilt be*.	*er* i tis, *ye or you will be*.
3. *e* rit, *he will be*;	*e* runt, *they will be*.

*Present-perfect. *have been, or was.*

1. *fu* i, *I have been*,	*fu* i mus, *we have been*,
2. fu *is* ti, *thou hast been*,	fu *is* tis, *ye have been*.
3. *fu* it, *he has been*,	fu *e* runt *or* re, *they have been*

Past-perfect.

1. *fu* e ram, *I had been*,	fu e *ra* mus, *we had been*,
2. *fu* e ras, *thou hadst been*,	fu e *ra* tis, *ye had been*,
3. *fu* e rat, *he had been*;	*fu* e rant, *they had been*.

Future-perfect. *shall* or *will have.*

1. *fu* e ro, *I shall have been*.	fu *er* i mus, *we shall have been*,
2. *fu* e ris, *thou wilt have been*.	fu *er* i tis, *ye will have been*,
3. *fu* e rit, *he will have been*;	*fu* e rint, *they will have been*.

2. A noun or adjective may limit the predicate as well as the subject; thus we may say Cicero orator, *Cicero the orator*: and Cicero orator fuit, *Cicero was an orator*; ager ferax, *a fertile field*, and ager ferax est, *the field is fertile*.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* A noun in the predicate denoting the same thing as the subject, agrees with it in case, and is called the *predicate nominative*; as, Cicero orator fuit, *Cicero was an orator*.

Rem. 1. If the subject consists of more than one thing, the *predicate nominative* is plural.

Rem. 2. Adjectives in the predicate agree with the subject. See § 57, 2.

* The aorist-perfect is translated, *I was, thou wast, he was, we were, &c.*

EXERCISE 29.

Vocabulary.

Integer, a, um, *untouched, unhurt, fresh.*
Humanus, a, um, *human.*
Incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
Verus, a, um, *true.*
Turpis, e, *base.*
Ingens, ent-is, *huge.*
Duplex, duplic-is, *double.*
Triplex, triplic-is, *triple.*
Vulnus, vulner-is, *wound.*
Vita, æ, *life.*
Velox, veloc-is, *swift.*
Cæcus, a, um, *blind.*
Mendacium,i, *lie.*
Corniger, a, um, *horned.*
Præclarus, a, um, *distinguished.*
Acies, ei, *line of battle.*
Renunciatio, on-is, *report.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Non omnia animalia cornigera sunt. Aquilarum alæ magnæ sunt. Non omnes homines sapientes sunt. Res humanæ incertæ sunt. Vita hominum incerta est. Unus equorum cæcus fuit. Cæsaris milites veloces fortesque fuerunt. Cæsar fuit imperator magnus. Marius dux fuit Romanorum. Regis filius rex erit. Renunciatio legatorum vera fuit. Aper ingens in silva habitat. Imperator in prœlio integer fuit. Vulnera militum gravia sunt. Consul annos multos cæcus fuerat. Cæsaris acies triplex fuit. Omnes decimæ legionis milites integris viribus (§ 45) prœlium redintegraverant. Mendacia turpia sunt. Cicero fuit orator præclarus. Improborum (§ 60 Rem,) vita onus est grave. Gallorum acies duplex est.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer's oxen are large. Many bulls are horned. All generals are not wise. The inhabitants of the villages dread the huge lion. Cicero was a wise consul and a great man. The wounds of the brave soldiers were severe. Many of the swift horsemen were unhurt. Davus, Cæsar's slave, has been blind many years. Our soldiers in a triple line renew the battle. All human things are uncertain. The shade of the dense forest will frighten the king's swift messenger.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 68. 1. The change which adjectives undergo to express different degrees of quality is called comparison.

2. Grammarians generally give three degrees of comparison, the *positive*, *comparative* and *superlative*.

3. The simple form of the adjective is usually called the positive; as, altus, *high*.

4. The *comparative* represents the quality as existing in one of *two* things or sets of things, in a higher degree than in the other; as, mons arbore *altior* est, *a mountain is higher than a tree*.

5. The superlative represents the quality as existing in one of *several* things, or sets of things, in a higher degree than in any of the rest; as, trium montium *altissimus*, *the highest of the three mountains*.

Rem. 1. When two qualities of the same thing are compared, the comparative is used; as, *Aristides* justior quam sapientior fuit, *Aristides was more just than wise*.

Rem. 2. The comparative may often be translated by *too* or *rather* with the positive, especially when one of the things compared is omitted; as, rex clementior est, *the king is too merciful*.

Rem. 3. The superlative often expresses a high degree of a quality; as, *mons altissimus*, a very high mountain.

FORMATION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

§ 69. 1. The comparative is formed by adding *ior*, and the superlative by adding *issimus* to the stem of the adjective; as, *alt-us*, high, *alt-ior*, higher, *alt-issimus*, highest.

2. Superlatives are of the first and second declensions.

Comparatives are of the third declension, and are thus declined:

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	*dur* ior,	dur ius,	dur ior es,	dur ior a,
G.	dur ior is,	dur ior is,	dur ior um,	dur ior rum,
D.	dur ior i,	dur ior i,	dur ior ibus,	dur ior ibus,
Ac.	dur ior em,	dur ius,	dur ior es,	dur ior a,
V.	dur ior,	dur ius,	dur ior es,	dur ior a,
Ab.	dur ior e *or* i.	dur ior e *or* i.	dur ior ibus.	dur ior ibus.

EXERCISE 30.

§ 70. 1. That with which anything is compared is connected by the conjunction *quam*, than, in the same case, or in the nominative, subject of *est*, *fuit*, *&c.*, understood; as, fortiorem vidi neminem quam Marium, *I have seen no braver man than Marius;* or fortiorem vidi neminem quam *Marius* (est,) *I have seen no braver man than Marius is.*

2. *Quam* is sometimes omitted; then

Rule of Syntax. The ablative is used with the comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, to express that with which something is compared; as, mons est *arbore* altior, *a mountain is higher than a tree.*

Vocabulary.

Sanctus, a, um, *sacred;* (of a man, *pure.*)
Durus, a, um, *hard.*
Nemo, nemin-is, *no man.*
Nihil, (indeclinable,) *nothing.*
Regio, on-is, *region.*
Gens, gent-is, *race, nation.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Prudentiorem vidi neminem quam Marium, Romanorum ducem. Lupi sunt canibus ferociores. Nulla regio est Gallia feracior. Nihil est jurejurando (§. 45) sanctius. Equus est bove velocior. Germani fuerunt Gallis ferociores. Nullum bellum est bello civili atrocius. Nemo Romanorum sanctior fuit quam Cato. Consul gentem ferociorem

nullam videbit quam Helvetios. Cæsar in exercitu fortiorem habet neminem quam Lucius. Aurum gravius est quam argentum. Ferrum est auro durius. Nihil incertius est quam vita humana. Agricola canem quam lupum ferociorem habuit. Equites quam pedites sunt velociores.

Translate into Latin.

The general is braver than the soldiers. The consul's son will be more prudent than his father. No nation was braver than the Helvetians. The king's messengers are swifter than horses. Lions are fiercer than dogs. Nothing is more sacred than the oath of a good man. A good man's promise is more sacred than a wicked man's oath. The Belgians were a braver race than the Gauls. No general was more prudent than Cæsar. The king's garden is more fertile than the farmer's field. Iron is harder than silver. Silver is not heavier than gold. The general is not more prudent than the centurion.

EXERCISE 31.

§ 71. The *partitive genitive* is used with comparatives and superlatives; as, *fortior duorum fratrum*, the braver of the two brothers; *fortissimus militum*, the bravest of the soldiers.

Vocabulary.

Jura, æ, (masc.) *Jura, (a mountain.)*
Italia, æ, *Italy.*
Roma, æ, *Rome.*
Ira, æ, *anger, wrath.*
Noster, tra, trum, *our.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Jura, mons altissimus, (§ 69, Rem. 3) Helvetios una ex parte continet. Imperator fortissimos militum laudavit. Judex iniquus quam latro est turpior. Velitum velocissimi omnes silvarum tramites exploraverant. Prudentior duorum imperatorum copias hostium fugabit. Fortissimi

centurionum magnitudinem periculi timebant. Orgetorix fuit Helvetiorum noblissimus. Nostrorum (§ 60, Rem.) impetus fortissimos hostium perterruerat. Jugurtha, homo improbissimus, fratres trucidavit. Vulnera militum fuerunt gravissima.

Translate into Latin.

The bravest of the enemy did not sustain the attack of our horsemen. The Rhine, a very broad river, keeps in the Helvetians on one side. The wicked king had slain the noblest of the hostages. The consul will lay waste the most fertile states of Gaul. On the third day the general moved his camp into the most fertile part of the province. The most wicked of men fear the wrath of God. The greatness of the danger frightened the bravest of our soldiers. The general is wiser than the king's ambassadors. One of the enemy wounded Lucius, a very brave man, with a stone. Davus is the most faithful of all the slaves. Rome is the noblest city of Italy.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 72. 1. Adjectives whose stems end in *er* form the superlative by adding *rimus;* as, *pulcher*, beautiful, *pulchrior, pulcherrimus.*

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *limus* to the stem :

Facilis,	facilior,	facillimus,	*easy.*
Difficilis,	difficilior,	difficillimus,	*difficult.*
Gracilis,	gracilior,	gracillimus,	*slender.*
Humilis,	humilior,	humillimus,	*low.*
Similis,	similior,	simillimus,	*like.*
Dissimilis,	dissimilior,	dissimillimus,	*unlike.*

Imbecillus or *imbecillis*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus.*

3. Compound adjectives ending in *dicus, ficus* and *volus*, form the comp. and superl. by adding *entior* and *entissimus* to the stem; as, *benevolus*, benevolent, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*.

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextimus,	*right.*
Extera, (*fem.*)	exterior,	extremus, *or* extimus,	*outward.*
Postera, (*fem.*)	posterior,	postremus *or* postumus,	*hind.*
Inferus,	inferior,	infimus, *or* imus,	*below.*
Superus,	superior,	supremus, *or* summus,	*above.*

Remark 1. The nominative singular of *postera* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extera* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison:

Bonus,	melior,	optimus,	*good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus,	*bad,*	*worse.*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	*great,*	*greater,*	*greatest*
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	*little,*	*less,*	*least.*
Multus,	———	plurimus.	*much,*	*more,*	*most.*
Multa,	———	plurima,			
Multum,	plus,	plurimum,			
Nequam,	nequior,	nequissimus,	*worthless,* etc.		
Frugi,	frugalior,	frugalissimus	*frugal,* etc.		

Plus, *more,* is thus declined:—

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	N.	*M & F.*	*N.*	
N.	plus,	N. *plu* res,	*plu* ra,	*rarely plu* ri a,
G.	*plu* ris,	G. *plu* ri um,	*plu* ri um,	
D.	———,	D. *plu* ri bus,	*plu* ri bus,	
Ac.	plus,	Ac. *plu* res,	*plu* ra,	
V.	———	V. ———,	———	
Ab.	*plu* re, (*obs.*)	Ab. *plu* ri bus,	*plu* ri bus.	

So, but in the plural number only, *complures*, a great many.

EXERCISE 32.

§ 73. The *partitive genitive* is frequently used with neuter adjectives, such as *multum, plus, minimum, plurimum,* &c.; as, *multum auri,* much gold.

Translate into English and analyze.

Principes Gallorum Cæsaris exercitui plurimum frumenti præbuerunt. Cives in domibus multum auri habent. Minimum virtutis est in judice iniquo. Agricolæ plus frumenti habent quam auri. Iter per Alpes difficillimum est. Magister optimos puerorum laudabit. Cæsar maximus fuit imperatorum Romanorum. Multum cibi comedonem delectat. Reginæ filia est pulcherrima. Agricolæ boves pigerrimi sunt. Pastor minimos agnorum non totondit.

Translate into Latin.

The great whirlwinds will dash in pieces very many of the ships. The poet's daughter is the most beautiful of all the girls. The greatest city in Italy is Rome. The soldiers will bring much corn into the city. The commander will remain in the camp the whole winter. The consul's soldiers demanded gold from the citizens. The citizens gave (to) the consul's soldiers more (of) wounds than (of) gold. The general called together the greatest of the chiefs. Cæsar was a greater general than Crassus.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 74. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive:

Citerior, citimus, *nearer.*
Deterior, deterrimus, *worse.*
Interior, intimus, *inner.*
Ocior, ocissimus, *swifter.*
Prior, primus, *former.*
Propior, proximus, *nearer.*
Ulterior, ultimus, *further.*

2. Eight want the terminational comparative:

Consultus, consultissimus, *skillful.*
Intlutus, inclutissimus, *renowned.*
Invictus, invictissimus, *invincible.*
Invītus, invitissimus, *unwilling.*
Meritus, meritissimus, (very rare), *deserving.*
Par, parissimus, (very rare), *equal.*
Persuasus, persuasissimum (neuter) *persuaded.*
Sacer, sacerrimus, *sacred.*

3. The following want the terminational superlative:

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young.*
Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic.*
Alacer, alacrior, *active.*
Ater, atrior, *black.*
Cæcus, cæcior, *blind.*
Deses, desidior, *inactive.*
Diuturnus, diuturnior, *lasting.*
Infinītus, infinitior, *unlimited.*
Ingens, ingentior, *great.*
Jejunus, jejunior, *fasting,*
Juvenis, junior, *young.*
Licens, licentior, *unrestrained.*
Longinquus, longinquior, *distant.*
Opimus, opimior, *rich.*
Proclivis, proclivior, *sloping.*
Pronus, pronior, *bending down.*
Protervus, protervior, *violent.*
Propinquus, propinquior, *near.*
Salutāris, salutarior, *salutary.*
Satis, *sufficient:* satius, *preferable.*
Satur, saturior, *full.*
Senex, senior, *old.*
Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody.*
Sinister, sinisterior, *left.*
Supinus, supinior, *lying on the back.*
Surdus, surdior, *deaf.*
Teres, teretior, *round.*

Rem. 1. The superlative of *juvenis* and *adolescens* is applied by *minimus natu*, youngest; and that of *senex* by *maximus natu*, oldest. The comparatives of *minor natu* and *major natu* sometimes also occur.

4. Many adjectives form the comparative and superlative by prefixing *magis*, more, and *maxime*, most; as, *pius, magis pius, maxime pius;* pious, more pious, most pious. This is especially the case with adjectives in *bundus, inus, inus, orus, ivus,* and *us* with a vowel before it.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 75. Verbs of the third conjugation have *ere* (short) in the infinitive present; those of the fourth conjugation, *ire.*

2. INDICATIVE ENDINGS; THIRD CONJUGATION.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Persons.			*Persons.*		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present,	-o,	-is,	-it,	-i-mus,	-i-tis,	-unt.
Imperfect,	-*e*-bam,	-*e*-bas,	-*e*-bat,	-e-*ba*-mus,	-e-*ba*-tis,	-*e*-ban
Future,	-am,	-es,	-et,	-*e*-mus.	-*e*-tis,	-ent.

3. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Singular.

Persons.

	1.	2.	3.
Present,	-io,	-is,	-it,
Imperfect,	-i-*e*-bam,	-i-*e* bas.	-i-*e*-bat,
Future,	-i-am,	-i-es,	-i-et,

Plural.

Persons.

	1.	2.	3.
Present,	-*i*-mus,	-*i*-tis,	-i-unt.
Imperfect,	-i-e-*ba*mus,	-i-e-*ba*-tis,	-i-*e*-bant.
Future,	-i-*e*-mus,	-i-*e*-tis,	-i-ent.

4. By adding these endings to the stems *reg*-, *rule*, and *aud*-, *hear*, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INDICATIVE MOOD; THIRD CONJUGATION.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
	I rule.	*I was ruling.*	*I shall* or *will rule.*
Sing.	*re* go, *re* gis, *re* git:	S. re *ge* bam, re *ge* bas, re *ge* bat;	S. *re* gam, *re* ges, *re* get;
Plur.	*reg* i mus, *reg* i tis, *re* gunt,	P. reg e *ba* mus, reg e *ba* tis, re *ge* bant.	P. re *ge* mus, re *ge* tis, *re* gent.

INDICATIVE MOOD; FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
	I hear.	*I was hearing.*	*I shall* or *will hear.*
S.	*au* di o,	S. au di *e* bam,	S. *au* di am,
	au dis,	au di *e* bas,	*au* di es,
	au dit;	au di *e* bat;	*au* di et;
P.	au *di* mus,	P. au di *e ba* mus,	P. au di *e* mus,
	au *di* tis,	au di *e ba* tis,	au di *e* tis,
	au di unt.	au di *e* bant.	*au* di ent.

5. The endings of the perfect tenses are the same in all conjugations. The perfect-stem is variously formed in the third conjugation; in the fourth it is formed by adding *-iv* to the present-stem; as, *aud-io*, I am hearing; *aud-i-i*, I have heard. See § 47

6. The supine-stem is generally formed, in the third conjugation by adding *t* to the present-stem; in the fourth, by adding *-it*; as, duc-ere, duct-um; aud-*i*re, aud-*i*t-um.

§ 76. EXERCISE 33.

Vocabulary.

Reg-ere, (rex,rect-) *to rule.*
Duc-ere, (dux-, duct-) *to lead*
E-duc-ere, (edux-, educ-) *to lead out.*
Re- duc-ere, (redux-, reduct-) *to lead back.*
Vert-ere, (vert.-vers-.) *to turn.*
Pun-ire, *to punish.*
Sc-ire, *to know.*
Vallum, i, *rampart.*
Castellum, i, *tower.*
Fur, fur-is, (§59, Rem. 2.) *thief.*
Finis, is, (§ 53, Rem. 6, Ex. 2,) *boundary, end.*
Vigilia, æ, *watch.*
Tertius, a, um, (§ 56, 2, b,) *third.*
De, (*prep. with abl.*) *about, concerning;* of time, *at, after;* de tertia vigilia, *at, or after the third watch.*
Tergum, i, *back.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Deus omnia regit. Imperator magnus civitates multas rexit. Consul annos multos (§66, 2,) provinciam rexerat. Consulis frater exercitus reipublicæ ducet. Princeps ferox plebem omnem ad bellum ducebat. Cæsar de tertia vigilia exercitum e castris eduxit. Marius nostros ad victoriam duxerat. Hostes terga vertere. Fures latronesque vultum

regis timent. Imperator castra vallo fossaque munivit. Princeps prudens omnia Helvetiorum oppida muniet. Marius consul exercitum ad urbem reduxit. Principes Thracum castella multa munient. Rex fures latronesque punichat. Dominus pigros servos punit. Davus nihil scit de legibus reipublicæ.

Translate into Latin.

The centurion has led back many of the brave soldiers. All the horsemen of the enemy are turning their backs. The boy rules his horse with the bridle. Our men knew nothing about the journey of the enemy. Cæsar was leading the whole army through the boundaries of the Æduans. The consul will lead out the army from the town after the third watch. The great king will punish many thieves and robbers. The prudent general had fortified his camp with a rampart and ditch. One of the consuls has led the Romans to victory.

PRONOUNS.

§77. 1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:

Ego, *I.*	Hic, *this, the latter.*	Suus, *his, hers, its,* etc.
Tu, *thou.*	Is, *that* or *he.*	Cujus? *whose?*
Sui, *of himself,* etc.	Quis? *who?*	Noster, *our.*
Ille, *that, the former.*	Qui, *who.*	Vester, *your.*
Ipse, *himself.*	Meus, *my.*	Nostras, *of our country.*
Iste, *that, that of yours*	Tuus, *thy.*	Cujas? *of what country?*

3. Of these *ego, tu,* and *sui,* are called *substantive,* because they are used as nouns; and *personal,* because *ego,* always denotes the *speaker; tu,* the person *spoken to;* and *sui,* the person *spoken of.*

SUBSTANTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 78. The substantive personal pronouns are thus declined:

Singular

N.	e-go, *I.*	tu, *thou.*	———
G.	me-i, *of me.*	tu-i, *of thee.*	su-i, *of himself, herself, itself.*
D.	mi-hi, *to me.*	tib-i, *to thee.*	sib-i, *to himself,* &c.
Ac.	me, *me.*	te, *thee.*	se, *himself,* &c.
V.	———	tu, *thou.*	———
Ab.	me, *with me.*	te, *with thee.*	se, *with himself,* &c.

Plural.

N.	nos, *we.*	vos, *ye* or *you.*	———
G.	nos-trum *or* nos-tri, *of us.*	ves-trum *or* ves-tri, *of you.*	su-i, *of themselves.*
D.	no-bis, *to us.*	vo-bis, *to you.*	sib-i, *to themselves.*
Ac.	nos, *us.*	vos, *you.*	se, *themselves.*
V.	———	vos, *O ye* or *you.*	———
Ab.	no-bis, *with us.*	vo-bis, *with you.*	se, *with themselves.*

Rem. 1. The nominatives *ego, tu, nos, vos,* are expressed with the verb only for the sake of emphasis or contrast; as, *ego equito, tu ambulas; I* am riding, *you* are walking; *nos vocabamus, respondistis vos; we* were calling, *ye* answered.

Rem. 2. The syllable *met* is annexed to all the forms of the personal pronouns, except *tu, nostrum* and *vestrum,* for emphasis; *sese* is frequently used for *se,* being more emphatic; also *tute, tutemet* for *tu.*

Rem. 3. The pronoun *sui* is also called *reflexive,* because it refers to the subject of the sentence; as, *puer se laudat,* the boy praises himself.

EXERCISE 34.

§ 79. 1. *Rule of Syntax.* If the subject consist of more than one, the verb is plural. If the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, *ego*

et tu (=*nos*) *valemus*, I and you are well; *tu et Cicero* (=*vos*) *valetis*, you and Cicero are well.

2. *Rule of Position.* The preposition *cum* is always put after the ablative of the substantive personal pronouns; as, *mecum*, with me.

3. *Rule of Position.* The substantive personal pronouns, when connected by conjunctions to other words, stand first; as, *tu et rex*, you and the king.

Ego always precedes; as, *ego et rex*, the king and I; *ego et tu*, you and I.

4. *Rule of Position.* Contrasted words are put as near together, or as far apart as possible. *Nos* equitamus, ambulatis *vos*; *or*, equitamus *nos*, *vos* ambulatis.

Translate into English and analyze.

Nos equitabimus, ambulatis vos. In urbe magnam multitudinem hominum videbis. Ego et pater in regis horto cœnabimus. Tu et Lucius nobiscum manebitis. Ego et Cicero pueris libros dabamus. Rex Thraeum tibi multum auri dabit. Reginæ nuncius mihi viam monstrabit. Tu et Tullius mecum ambulabatis. Ancilla sibi medicinam paraverat. Imperator fortis multos captivos secum ducet. Consul mercatores omnes ad se convocaverat. Poetæ carmina audiemus. Sapiens sese non laudat. Ego et tu apud Tullium cœnabamus. Improbi sese timent. Puer bonus in urbem nos ducet. Davus, Catonis servus, sese cultro vulneravit.

Translate into Latin.

In a great city we see many men. (My) father and I sustained the attack of the enemy many hours (§ 66. 2.) In a short time Lucius and I will have given books to all

the boys. I rode, you* walked. You and Tully will remain many days with us. The general has given (to) one of the soldiers much silver and gold. Wise men do not praise themselves. We shall hear the songs of the great poet. We have punished all the thieves in the province. I have held the fierce bull by the horns. The wicked king does not rule himself. Ye have walked five thousand paces (§ 66. 2.)

ADJECTIVE-PERSONAL, OR POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 80. From the substantive pronouns are derived the *adjective-personal*, or *possessive* pronouns, so called, because they are *adjectives*, and denote possession. They are:

From *mei*,	meus, mea, meum, *my, mine.* (Voc. *masc.*, mi, *rarely* meus;) like *bonus.*
From *tui*,	tuus, tua, tuum, *thy, thine, your*, (like *bonus.*)
From *sui*,	suus, sua, suum, *his, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*
From *nostri*,	noster, nostra, nostrum, *our, ours*, (like *pulcher.*
From *vestri*,	vester, vestra, vestrum, *your, yours*, (like *pulcher.*)

Rem. 1. The emphatic suffixes *met* and *pte*, are sometimes added to the possessive pronouns, especially in the ablative singular; as, *meamet manu*, with my own hand.

Rem. 2. *Suus*, like *sui*, is always reflexive, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands.

EXERCISE 35.

§ 81. 1. Questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, are asked in Latin by means of the interrogative particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num*.

2. (*a.*) The enclitic *ne* asks for information, and is pla-

* *You* will be translated by *tu* when it refers to one; by *vos* when it means more than one.

ced after the verb, usually standing with it at the beginning of the sentence.

Scribit-*ne* Caius? *Is Caius writing?*

Pater tuus tibi equum dedit-*ne*? *Has your father given you a horse?*

(*b.*) *Ne* stands with any specially emphatic word at the beginning of the sentence.

Tu-ne scribis? Are *you* writing?

3. *Num* stands at the beginning of the sentence, and expects the answer *no.*

Num tu patrem tuum necavisti? *Have you murdered your own father?*

4. *Nonne* (placed at, or near the beginning of the sentence,) expects the answer *yes.*

Nonne epistolam scripsisti? *Have you not written the letter?*

Vocabulary.

Scrīb-ĕre, (scrips-, script-,) *to write.*
Con-scrīb-ĕre, (conscrips-, conscript-,) *to levy, to enroll.*
Relinqu-ĕre, (relinqui, relictum.) *to leave.*
Ven-īre, (ven-, vent-,) *to come*
Dorm-īre, *to sleep.*
Cubiculum,i, *bed-chamber.*
Salus, salūt-is, *safety.*
Tuæ salūt-is causa, *for the sake of your own safety,* (causa, *always put last.*)
Cantus, us, *singing.*
Vox, voc-is, *voice.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Audis-ne vocem patris mei? Nonne magnitudo operis consulem sapientem tardabit? Nonne filii imperatoris in castris dormiebant? Num servus tuus totam noctem in silva mansit? Vidisti-ne magnum ovium gregem in agro meo? Tu-ne regem nostrum vidisti. Nostri (§ 60. Rem.) totum diem impetum hostium sustinuerant. Vestræ salutis causâ vos monui. Tuæ salutis causa in urbem te duxi. Audies-ne cantum avium? Num consul tres legiones parvo in vico conscripsit? Pulchra puella manu sua epistolam

scribet. Veniet-ne in urbem imperator magnus cum omnibus copiis? Conscripsit-ne Cæsar legiones duas in provincia? Mater improba suam filiam veneno necavit. Marius, dux Romanus, omnes copias suas ex hibernis eduxerat.

Translate into Latin.

(*My, thy, his, her, their, our*, &c., will not be translated into Latin when the relation is obvious.)

My father advised the poet's daughter. Will not the beautiful queen write the whole letter with her own hand? Will a kind father murder his own children? Will a wise king break the laws of the state? Shall we sup with (*apud*) Tully's son-in-law? Will not the brave general lead the forces of the republic to victory? Has your father seen my slave in his garden? Were your slaves carrying heavy burdens through the city? Our kind brother will advise us for the sake of our own safety. The shepherd will shear all his own sheep. Will not the good shepherd defend all his own sheep from dogs and wolves. Thou shalt sleep in the little bed-chamber. Will a brave general leave his army in the boundaries of the enemy? Hast thou heard the singing of the birds in the forest? We shall hear the voice of the general.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 82. 1. Demonstratives are so called, because they are used to *point out* things; as, *ille puer*, *that* boy; *hæc silva*, *this* forest.

2. They are *is*, *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F	N.
N.	*il* le,	*il* la,	*il* lud,	*il* li,	*il* læ,	*il* la,
G.	il *li* us,	il *li* us,	il *li* us,	il *lo* rum,	il *la* rum,	il *lo* rum,
D.	*il* li,	*il* li,	*il* li,	*il* lis,	*il* lis,	*il* lis,
Ac.	*il* lum,	*il* lam,	*il* lud,	*il* los,	*il* las,	*il* la,
V.	*il* le,	*il* la,	*il* lud,	*il* li,	*il* læ,	*il* la,
Ab.	*il* lo,	*il* la,	*il* lo.	*il* lis,	*il* lis,	*il* lis.

Iste is declined like *ille*.

	Singlar.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G.	*hu*-jus,	*hu*-jus,	*hu*-jus,	*ho*-rum,	*ha*-rum,	*ha*-rum,
D.	huic,	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
Ac.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	hos,	has.	hæc,
V.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab.	hoc,	hac,	hoc.	his.	his,	his.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F	N.
N.	is,	e-a,	id,	*i*-i,	*e*-æ,	*e*-a,
G.	*e*-jus,	*e*-jus,	*e*-jus,	e-*o*-rum,	e-*a*-rum,	e-*o*-rum,
D.	*e*-i,	*e*-i,	*e*-i,	*i*-is *or* *e*-is,	*i*-is *or* *e*-is,	*i*-is *or* *e*-is,
Ac.	*e*-um,	*e*-am,	id,	*e*-os,	*e*-as,	*e*-a,
V.	———	———	———	———	———	———
Ab.	*e*-o,	*e*-a,	*e*-o.	*i*-is *or* *e*-is,	*i*-is *or* *e*-is,	*i*-is *or* *e*-is.

3. *Istic*, (sometimes written *isthic*,) and *illic* are compounded of *iste hic*, and *ille hic*, and are more emphatic than *iste* and *ille*.

N. *is* tic, *is* tæc, *is* toc, *or is* tuc, N. ——— *is* tæ, ———
Ac. *is* tunc, *is* tanc, *is* toc, *or is* tuc, Ac. ——— ——— *is* tæc,
Ab. *is* toc, *is* tac, *is* toc.

Illic is declined in the same manner.

4. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, "the same," which is thus declined :

Singular.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	*i* dem:	*e* a dem,	*i* dem,
G.	e *jus* dem,	e *jus* dem,	e *jus* dem,
D.	e *i* dem,	e *i* dem,	e *i* dem,
Ac.	e *um* dem,	e *am* dem,	*i* dem.
V	———	———	———
Ab.	e *o* dem,	e *a* dem,	e *o* dem.

Plural.

N.	i *i* dem,	e *æ* dem,	*e* a dem,
G.	e o *rum* dem,	e a *rum* dem,	e o *rum* dem.
D.	e *is* dem, *or* i *is*- dem,	e *is* dem, *or* i *is* dem,	e *is* dem, *or* i *is*- dem.
Ac.	e *os* dem,	e *as* dem,	*e* a dem,
V	———	———	———
Ab.	e *is* dem *or* i *is* dem,	e *is* dem *or* i *is* dem	e *is* dem *or* i- *is* dem.

EXERCISE 36.—*Is*, and *Idem*.

§83. 1. *Is*, that, is very often used as a substantive-personal pronoun, (*he, she, it, they, them*, &c.,) of the same gender with the noun for which it stands; as, *Cicero multos libros scripsit;* eos (=libros) *libenter lego;* Cicero has written many books; I read *them* (*i. e. the books*,) with pleasure.

2. (*a.*) *His, her, its, their,* will be translated by *suus* when they refer to the subject; (*b.*) if they refer to any other word in the sentence, they will be translated by the genitive of the demonstrative, *is, ea, id.*

(*a.*) Rex filium *suum* ad se vocat; — *The king calls his* (*own*) *son to him.*

(*b.*) Rex agricolam et filium *ejus* ad se vocat; — *The king calls the farmer and his* (the farmer's) *son to him.*

Vocabulary.

Scriptor, -or-is, *writer.*
Præstans, -ant-is, *excellent, distinguished.*
Ovidius, i, *Ovid.*
Virgilius, i, *Virgil.*
Plato, -on -is, *Plato.*
Contendere, (contend, content) *to strive, fight.*
Ger-ere, [gess, gest-] *to carry on, to wage*
Dumnorix, -ig-is, *Dumnorix.*
Libenter, (adv.] *gladly, with pleasure.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Cæsar hostes fugavit, et ab iis obsides multos postulavit. Romani cum Gallis contenderunt, atque in eorum finibus bellum gesserunt. Rex mercatores omnes ad se convocavit, atque iis multum auri (§73) dedit. Consulis filia pulcherrima est; eam in urbe vidi. Dumnorix eo (*that*) tempore §66, 1,) in Germania bellum gerebat. In eodem oppido multi milites fuerunt. Tullius eundem servum ad se vocavit. Eodem die imperator clarus ad castra venit. Ovidius et Virgilius sunt poetæ clarissimi; opera eorum libenter legimus. Cæsar Labienum et ejus filium in Gallia reliquerat. Poetæ opera sua laudant. Poeta clarus imperatorem amat, et ejus virtutem laudabit. Pater tuus filiam suam amat, et ejus liberis multum argenti (§73) dabit. In ea provincia sunt quatuor legiones.

Translate into Latin.

Cicero is a very distinguished orator; we shall hear him with pleasure. Plato is an excellent writer; have you read all his works? Will the Queen see her son and his daughter in our city? The King will not leave Tully and his (Tully's) son in the city. A wise man does not carry all his gold with him. In one day Cæsar led the whole army through the boundaries of the Helvetians to lake Lemanus; on the same day he routed very great forces of the enemy. At that time the rains had swollen all the rivers, and were keeping (*continere*) the Germans in their own boundaries. The King loved his faithful slave, and gave him a golden necklace. Have you seen the centurion's beautiful daughter? I saw her in the King's grove. Art *thou* a famous general.

EXERCISE 37.—*Hic, Iste, Ille.*

§84. 1. HIC, HÆC, HOC, *this*, points out a thing near the speaker in place or time, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the *first person*. As, *hic liber*, this book, (near me;) *hoc die*, on this day.

2. ISTE, ISTA, ISTUD, *this*, *that*, points out a thing near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the *second person*. As, *iste liber*, that book, (of yours.) It is often used to express contempt as, *iste homo*, that fellow.

3. ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, *that*, points out a thing remote from the speaker, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. As, *ille liber*, that book (yonder.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Hic servus dominum amat. Hæc epistola sororem meam delectabit. Hoc bellum civile gravissimum et atrocissimum est. Hic puer bonus est, ille improbus (supply *est.*) Hic miles, omnium est fortissimus. Iste tuus equus pulchrum animal est. Ista tua oratio rempublicam servavit. Iste-ne nos puniet? Ille bos magna cornua habet. Illos milites in castra ducemus. Equites omnes ad illud oppidum festinant. Hic pastor bonus gregem servabit.

Translate into English.

This good master gives food to all his slaves. That dove of yours will fly through the thick woods. Those dogs of yours will frighten all the boys in the village. That fierce lion has torn in pieces many sheep and cows. This excellent orator will delight the common people with his speech. That maid-servant of yours will prepare medicine for the

queen and her (the queen's daughters.) Will you give that beautiful horse to my father? Has the king punished all the thieves and robbers in this city? These horsemen will urge on their horses with spurs.

INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

§85. The pronoun IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM, *himself, herself, itself,* is called *intensive,* because it makes the word to which it is added more emphatic. As,

(*a.*) Regem *ipsum* vidi; — *I have seen the king* himself.
(*b.*) Ego me *ipse* laudo; — I myself (*and not another,*) *praise myself.*
(*c.*) Ego me *ipsum* laudo; — *I praise* myself, (*and not another.*)

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	*ip* se,	*ip* sa,	*ip* sum,	*ip* si,	*ip* sæ,	*ip* sa,
G.	ip *si* us,	ip *si* us,	ip *si* us,	ip *so* rum,	ip *sa* rum,	ip *so* rum,
D.	*ip* si,	*ip* si,	*ip* si,	*ip* sis,	*ip* sis,	*ip* sis,
Ac.	*ip* sum,	*ip* sam,	*ip* sum,	*ip* sos,	*ip* sas,	*ip* sa,
V	*ip* se,	*ip* sa,	*ip* sum,	*ip* si,	*ip* sæ,	*ip* sa,
Ab.	*ip* so,	*ip* sa,	*ip* so.	*ip* sis,	*ip* sis,	*ip* sis.

EXERCISE 38.

§ 86. 1. *Rule of Syntax.* **The infinitive mood is often used as a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative, and may be the subject of a verb; as,** *Gratum est tecum ambulare,* **It is pleasant** *to walk* **with you.**

2. *Rule of Syntax.* **The infinitive is used as a complement (filling up,) with certain verbs and adjectives expressing an incomplete idea.** *Complementary Infinitive.*

Parat bellum *gerere.* *He is preparing* to wage *war.*

Vocabulary.

Prædic-are, *to tell, to boast.*
Instru-ere, (instrux-, instruct-) *to draw up.*
Constitu-ere, [constitu-, constitut-] *to determine.*
De se ipso, *about one's self.*
Inter, [prep. with acc.,] *between, among.*
Inter se, *among themselves, with one another.*
Sua, [pl. neut.,) *his* [own] *things, his* [own] *property.*
Ascend-ere, [ascend-, ascens-] *to ascend.*
Vinc-ire, (vinx-, vinct-] *to bind.*
Vinculum, i, *chain.*
Vinc-ere, [vic-, vict-] *to conquer.*
Ferreus, a, um, *of iron, iron.*
Iracundia, æ, *hasty temper.*
Orbis [§33] terrarum, *the world, (the circle of the countries.)*
Alexander, -dri, *Alexander.*
Macedonia, æ, *Macedonia.*
Semper, (adv.) *always.*
Facinus, facinor-is, *deed, crime.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Ego ipse totam noctem vigilavi. Rex ipse exercitum triplici acie instruxerat. Nonne regina ipsa in hac domo dormivit? Decima ipsa legio magnitudinem periculi timebat. Tu-nc te ipse laudabis? Me ipsum non laudabo. Poeta se ipse laudabat. Turpe est de se ipso prædicare. Pater ipse et filius suus de agri finibus contendunt. Alexander magnus, rex Macedoniæ, orbem terrarum vincere paraverat. Alexander se ipsum non rexit. Imperator magnus suam iracundiam non regit. Difficillimum (§66, §67, 3,) est montem altum ascendere. Facinus est civem Romanum vincire. Sapiens semper se ipse regit. Helvetii sua omnia portabant.

Translate into Latin.

Our king has determined to conquer the whole world. Your king is a boy. The common people have bound our king with chains. These soldiers are always boasting about themselves. It is not very difficult to ascend a hill. Nothing is more difficult than to rule a hasty temper. Have you read the works of Cicero, the distinguished orator? Will a father and a son contend with one another about an eagle's wing? They will not contend. Am I myself praising myself? Has not this fellow (§83, 2,) always

praised himself? It is a great crime to kill (one's) father. The wicked judge is preparing to bind Roman citizens. The common people will bind the judge himself. The greatness of this work will hinder Cæsar himself. The general has determined to put three legions into winter quarters.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§87 1. The pronoun *qui, quæ, quod,* (*who, which,*) is called *relative*, because it refers to some word or phrase going before, called the *antecedent.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod,	qui	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cu jus,	cu jus,	cu jus,	quo rum	qua rum,	quo rum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	qui bus,	qui bus,	qui bus,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
A.	quo,	qua,	quo	qui bus,	qui bus,	qui bus.

REM. *Qui* is sometimes used in the ablative in all genders.

2. From *qui* are derived *quicumque* or *quicunque* and *quisquis, whoever, whosoever. Quicumque* is declined like *qui; quisquis* is thus declined:

N.	*quis* quis,	*quis* quis,	*quid* quid,	N. *qui* qui,
Ac.	*quem* quem,	——	*quid* quid,	D. qui *bus* qui bus.
Ab.	*quo* quo,	*qua* qua,	*quo* quo.	

EXERCISE 39.

1. Sentences are either principal or dependent. A principal sentence makes complete sense when standing alone; a dependent sentence does not make complete sense alone, but must be connected with another sentence.

2. A sentence introduced by a relative pronoun is called a *dependent relative* sentence.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends upon the construction of the relative sentence. As,

Ego *qui* scribo,	*I* who *write.*
Vos *qui* scribitis,	*You* who *write.*
Puella *quam* vidi,	*The girl* whom *I saw.*

(Here *quam* is sing., fem., 3rd person, because *puella* is the same; but accusative, because it is the object of the transitive verb *vidi.*)

4. *Rule of Position.* The preposition *cum* is annexed to the ablative plural of the relative *qui*, and sometimes also to the ablative singular; as, *quibuscum.*

5. *Rule of Position.* The relative generally stands at the beginning of the relative sentence, after the antecedent, and as near the latter as possible; but for the sake of emphasis the relative sentence is often placed first.

6. In general expressions the forms of *is* are often used merely as the antecedent of a relative clause; as, *Is stultus est qui de se ipso prædicat.* He is foolish who boasts of himself. *Is* is emphatic when it stands at the beginning of the principal sentence.

7. When the antecedent is *indefinite*, it is often omitted altogether; as, Qui *tertiam partem incolunt Gaili appellantur.* (*Those*) who inhabit the third part are called Gauls. (Compare the English, "*Who* steal my purse, steals trash," i. e. *any one who*, &c.)

Vocabulary.

Incol-ere, [incolu-, incult-] *to inhabit.*
Divid-ere, [divīs-, divīs-] *to separate, to divide.*
Continenter, [adv.] *continually.*
Trans, [prep. with acc.,] *across.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Omnis Galliæ sunt partes tres, quarum unam incolunt

Belgæ. Trans Rhenum incolunt Germani, quibuscum Belgæ continentur bellum gerunt. Flumen Rhenus, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit, latissimus est atque altissimus. Jura, qui una ex parte, Helvetios continet, mons est altissimus. Cæsar legiones duas, quæ in Gallia hiemabant, ex hibernis eduxit. Puellæ pulchræ, quas in horto vidisti, filiæ sunt Ciceronis. Recentes imbres, qui flumina omnia auxerunt, opus nostrum tardabunt. Puer cui magister librum dedit, optimus est puerorum. Agricola cujus canis ancillam terruit, in urbem venit. Helvetii eos qui leges reipublicæ violant igni cremant. Qui sua omnia secum portat non sapiens est. Qui sese non regit, est-ne is vir magnus?

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar will hasten into the province with three legions which he has levied in Gaul. The centurion has divided his field into three parts, one of which he will give to his son. Have you showed to your father the letter which the queen wrote with her own hand? The general had placed in winter-quarters the legions which he had levied in the province. The great river which we saw is the Rhine. Will not the general slay the robber who lives in the forest? Is not he (*is*) a fool who holds (*tenere*) a fierce bull by the horns? The fields through which we were walking are very fertile. (He) who boasts about himself is a fool. (He) who conquers himself is a brave man.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 88. 1. Interrogative pronouns are used in asking questions. They are

Quis Quisnam	*Who? What?*		Qui Quinam	*Which? What?*	

Rem. 1. *Qui* and *quinam* are declined like the relative *qui*. They are almost always adjectives.

Rem. 2. *Quis* and *quisnam* are usually substantives, but sometimes adjectives. *Quid* is always a substantive. *Quisnam* is stronger than *quis*;— *Who then? Who, pray?*

2. *Quis* is thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quis,	quæ,	quod *or* quid,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	*cu*jus,	*cu*jus,	*cu*jus,	*quo*rum,	*qua*rum,	*quo*rum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*qui*bus,	*qui*bus,	*qui*bus,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quid,	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V	———	———	———	———	———	———
Ab.	quo,	qua,	quo.	*qui*bus,	*qui*bus,	*qui*bus.

3. The genitive *cujus, whose?* is sometimes used as an adjective, agreeing with the noun which it limits in gender, number and case; as, Cujum *pecus est hoc?* *Whose* flock is this? It is thus declined.

N.	*cu*jus,	*cu*ja,	*cu*jum,
Ac.	*cu*jum,	*cu*jam,	———
Ab.	———	*cu*ja.	———

N. *cu*jæ,
Ac. *cu*jas.

EXERCISE 46.

Translate into English and analyze.

Quis tecum in horto ambulavat? Quæ regio est Gallia (§ 70, 2,) feracior? Qui consul est Cicerone prudentior? Quem hominem vidisti quam Balbum (§ 70, 1,) turpiorem? Qua in terra est poeta Virgilio præstantior? Cuja ancilla est hæc? Reginæ. Qui puer calcem Davi lapide vulneravit? Quid argenti (§ 73) apud te habes? Quinam rex tibi aurum dabit, Dave? Quisnam te vocavit, Tulli? (§ 24, Rem. 2.). Qui pastor prudens oves hieme tondebit? Cujus eanis bovem meum momordit? Qua in civitate imperator legiones in hibernis collocabit?

Translate into Latin.

Who, pray, will show (to) us the way through the King's forest? What enemy will sustain the attack of our warlike soldiers? What is baser than a lie? Who gave (to) you that (§ 83, 2) beautiful horse of yours? What citizens were with (*apud*) Cicero? Who, pray, has called together all these merchants? Which of you slept in the little bed-chamber? What general will leave his army in the enemy's country (*finis*) *?* Who art *thou ?* Art thou the consul's son-in-law? Is the king preparing, according to custom, to wage war with the nearest states?

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 89. Indefinite pronouns do not refer to any particular thing. They are

Aliquis, *some one, some.*
Quidam, *a certain one,* pl. *some.*
Quivis, Quilibet, } *any* (where all are *included,*) *any one you please.*
Quisquam, *any one,* where all are *excluded;* almost always a substantive, and used in negative sentences.
Quispiam, *any one, some one;* used in affirmative sentences.
Quis, qui, *any one, some one,* especially after *si, ne;* and the interrogative prefixes *num-* and *ec-*, forming *numquis* and *ecquis.*
Quisque, *each one, every one.*
Unusquisque, *each one,* (stronger than *quisque.*)

Rem. 1. All these pronouns have *quod* or *quid* in the neuter; the *quod* forms are adjectives; the *quid* forms nouns.

Rem. 2. The indefinite *quis* or *qui* has *qua* in the nominative singular feminine, and nom., and acc. pl. neut. So also *aliquis.*

Rem. 3. *Quidam, quilibet* and *quivis* are declined like

the relative *qui;* and *quisque, quispiam* and *quisquam* like the interrogative *quis*. But *quisquam* wants the feminine, except *quam-quam,* (acc. sing. fem.)

Note. In pronouns *m* is changed into *n* before *d*. As, *quendam,* for *quemdam ; quorundum* for *quorumdam.*

Rem. 4. *Unusquisque* is used only in the singular, and both *unus* and *quisque* are declined. *Unusquisque, unaquæque, unumquodque* or *quidque ;* gen. *uniusc*ujusque*, &c.

EXERCISE 41.

§ 90. 1. The *partitive genitive* (§ 58, 3) is used with many pronouns; as, *Quivis* militum, any one you please *of the soldiers ; aliquid* novi, some *news,* (*novi* is gen. sing. neut. of *novus, a, um,* used as a noun.)

2. After *quidam, ex* with the ablative is generally used instead of the gen.; as, *Quidam ex militibus,* a certain one of the soldiers.

Vocabulary.

Mitt-ere, (mis-, miss-.) *to send.*
Pervenire, (perven-, pervent-.) *to come through, to arrive.*
In urbem pervenire, *to reach the city.*
Defend-ere, (defend-, defens-.) *to defend.*
Neque, (conjunction,) *neither, nor.*
Disc-ed-ere, (discess-, isces-.) *to depart.*
Occid-ere, (occid-, occis-.) *to kill, cut down.*
Occasus, ūs, *setting.*
Sol, sol-is, *sun ;* solis occasu, (§ 66, 1.) *at sunset.*
Catilīna, æ, *Catiline.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Cicero quendam Gallum ad Cæsarem misit. Aliquis solis occasu in domum tuam venit. Quidam ex militibus se suaque (§ 60, Rem.) ab hostibus defendebant. Mater benigna unic*u*ique liberorum suorum dat cibum. Nostri copias hostium fugavere, neque quisquam omnium in oppidum pervenit. Lucius in urbe aliquid novi audiet. Rex

filiabus suis aliquam partem regni dabit. Milites Catilinæ exercitum reipublicæ non timuerunt, neque quisquam ex castris discessit. Nonne quisque sese defendit? Quodvis animal cor habet.

Translate into Latin.

The faithful slaves will watch all night, nor will any one leave (*depart from*) his place. Some one has wounded one of our horsemen with a javelin? Cæsar sent a certain one of the Gallic (*Gallus,*) horsemen to Cicero's camp. The cruel chiefs will kill all the prisoners at sunset. The prudent general will move his camp at sunset. The master gave (to) each of the boys a beautiful book.

CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 91. 1. The correlative pronouns are such as answer to each other; as, *tantus*, so great, *quantus;* as, *talis*, such, *qualis;* as, *tot*, as many, *quot*, as.

2. The Correlative Pronouns are

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Indefinite.
talis, *such.*	qualis, *as, of what kind.*	qualiscunque, *of whatever kind.*
tantus, *so great, so much,*	quantus, *as great;*	quantuscunque, *however great.* aliquantus, *somewhat great*
*tot, *so many.* *totidem, *just so many.*	*quot, *as many.*	*aliquot, *some.* *quotquot, *however many.*

Rem. 1. Qualis? *of what kind?* quantus? *how great?* quot? *how many?* are also used interrogatively.

Rem. 2. Those marked thus (*) are indeclinable; the rest are declined like adjectives.

§ 92. EXERCISE 42.

Vocabulary.

Voluptas, voluptat-is, *pleasure.*
Præmium, i, *reward.*
Timor, -or-is, *fear, panic.*
Aliquantum, agri, *a considerable piece of ground.*
Sententia, æ, *opinion.*
Opera, æ, *labor, pains.*
{Tanta opera, *so great labor.*
{Tantum operæ, *so much (of) labor.* *Tantus*, meaning *so great*, agrees with the noun; meaning *so much*, it is neuter and followed by the partitive genitive. *Quantus* is used in the same way.
{Qualis est dominus, talis est servus; *As is the master, so is the slave.* Or, *est* being omitted.
{Qualis dominus, talis servus. *The slave is such as the master is.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Quantum voluptatis virtus præbet! Tantus timor centuriones occupavit. Quot homines, tot sententiæ. Quantus est agricolæ taurus? Quanta sunt hujus bovis cornua! Quot legiones in castris sunt? Quot homines, totidem animi. Qualis est imperator, tales sunt milites. Quanta præmia virtus habet? Quantum operæ poetæ carminibus suis dant! Rex huic servo aliquantum auri dedit.

Translate into Latin.

The burdens are as great as the slaves can carry. The Thracians will give us as many hostages as we have demanded. The consul gave the soldiers such food as they demanded. Lucius will give his daughter as much land as Caius has given to each of his twelve sons. Each of the boys will remain just as many hours in the city as the master remained. Such bread as Marius gives the soldiers will kill a dog.

VERBS.

§93. 1. A verb is a word which declares or affirms something.

2. That of which the declaration is made is called the *ubject.*

3. Verbs have

(a) *Moods,* or different forms which express different inds of affirmation; as, *amo,* I love; *amarem,* I might ove.

(b) *Tenses,* or different forms to show the *time* when the hing declared takes place; as, *amo,* I love, I *am* loving; *mabam,* I *was* loving.

(c) *Voices,* or different forms which show whether the ubject *acts,* (as, John *strikes;*) or is *acted upon,* (as, John *s struck.*)

(d) *Persons* and *Numbers,* or different forms which correspond with the person and number of the subject.

4. These various forms are distinguished from one another by certain endings; and the adding of these endings to the stem is called CONJUGATION.

5. Verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive.*

6. A transitive verb is one which requires an object to complete the sense. As, *Poeta reginam laudat,* The poet praises the queen.

7. An intransitive verb is one which does not require an object to complete the sense. As, *Aquila volat,* The eagle flies.

MOODS.

§94. 1. There are four moods, the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative,* and *infinitive.*

2. The indicative mood declares a *fact,* or asks a question. As, *amat,* he loves; *amat-ne?* Does he love?

3. By the subjunctive mood a thing is asserted, not as a *fact,* but as *simply conceived in the mind.* As, *amarem,* I would love.

4. The imperative mood is used in *commanding*, *exhorting*, or *entreating*. As, *Huc veni*, come hither.

5. The infinitive mood expresses the action of the verb simply, without reference to any subject. As, *amare*, to love.

TENSES.

§95. There are three divisions of time, the *present*, *past* and *future*. In each division there are two tenses; one expressing *incomplete* action; the other, *completed* action. There are therefore six tenses; three for incomplete action, viz: the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*; and three for completed action, viz: the *present-perfect*, *past-perfect*, and *future-perfect*.

Name.	*Incomplete Action.*	*Name.*	*Completed Action.*	*Name.*
PRESENT TIME.	amo, *I am loving.*	PRES.	amavi, *I have loved.*	PRES.-P.
PAST TIME.	amabam, *I was loving.*	IMP.	amaveram, *I had loved.*	PAST-P.
FUTURE TIME.	amabo, *I shall love.*	FUT.	amavero, *I shall have loved.*	FUT.-P.

I. The present tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time; as, *amo*, I love, I am loving.

Rem. 1. This tense also expresses an existing custom or general truth; as, *Romani signum tuba dant*, the Romans give the signal with a trumpet.

Rem. 2. The present tense is often used for a past to give greater animation to the narrative. This is called the *historical present*.

Rem. 3. This tense may also express what has existed and still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero*, for so many years I have waged war, and am still waging it; or, for so many years I have been waging war.

II The imperfect tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time; as, *amabam*, I was loving.

Rem. 4. This tense expresses,

(a) A customary past action; as, *amabam*, I used to love;

(b) What had existed and was still existing in past time; as, *tot annos bella gerebam*, for so many years I had been carrying on war;

(c) The *beginning*, or *attempting* of a thing in past time;

(d) In letters, this tense is sometimes used (in reference to their ing read,) for a present.

III. The future tense expresses *incomplete* action in fu- ire time. As, *amabo*, I shall love.

IV The present-perfect tense expresses completed action present time; as, *amavi*, I have loved.

The same form of the verb is used to express an action *definitely* as past, without reference to its continuance or mpletion. This is called the *aorist-perfect*, or *indefinite- erfect*. As, *cœnavi*, I supped, (at some indefinite past me.)

V The past-perfect tense expresses *completed* action in *ast* time; as, *amaveram*, I had loved.

VI. The future-perfect tense expresses completed action *future* time; as, *amavero*, I shall have loved.

VOICES.

§96. 1. There are two voices, the *active* and *passive*.

2. The active voice represents the subject as acting; as, *mo*, I love.

3. The passive voice represents the subject as *acted upon; mor*, I am loved.

Rem. 1. The same idea may be expressed both in the active and assive form; as, *puer librum legit*, the boy reads the book; or *liber puero legitur*, the book is read by the boy. The object in the ac- ve becomes the subject in the passive, and the subject in the active expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*.

Rem. 2. As intransitive verbs have no object in the active, they ave no personal passive form. See § 114, 4.

Rem. 3. The passive voice frequently represents the gent as acting upon himself; as, *feror*, I carry myself, I go. This use of the passive is common with the poets.

PERSONS AND NUMBERS.

§ 97 Verbs have three persons, the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd; and two numbers, the singular and plural. These either correspond to, or indicate, the person and number of the subject.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, SUPINES.

§ 98. 1. To the verb belong the *participle*, or *adjective verb;* and the *gerund* and *supine*, or *noun verb.*

2. Transitive verbs have two participles in the active, viz.: the *present* and *future;* as, *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love; —— and two in the passive, viz.; the *perfect* and *future;* as, *amatus*, loved, having been loved *amandus*, to be loved.

3. The *gerund* is a verbal noun of the second declension, in the genitive, dative, and accusative, (the nominative being supplied by the infinitive); as, *modus operandi*, the manner of working.

4. The *supine* is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, in the accusative and ablative; as, *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to be loved, or to love.

CONJUGATION.

§ 99. 1. There are four conjugations, distinguished from each other by the ending of the infinitive present active.

The infinitive present active of the Ist conj. ends in *a*-re.
" " " " " " 2nd " " " *e*-re.
" " " " " " 3rd " " " e-re.
" " " " " " 4th " " " *i*-re.

Exception. Dare, to give, has, *are* (*a* short.)

2. Every verb-form consists of two parts, the *stem* and *ending*.

3. The *present-stem*, or *general-stem*, is found in every part of the verb, and may always be obtained by striking off the ending of the infinitive-present active or passive.

4. Besides this general stem, there is also a *perfect-stem*, on which the perfect tenses in the active voice are formed; and a *supine-stem*, on which the supines, the future active participle, and perfect passive participle, are formed.

5. The perfect-stem is formed for the most part

In the first conj. by adding -*av* (long) to the present-stem.
" " second " " " -*u* " " "
" " third " " " -*s* " " "
" " fourth " " " -*iv* (long) " " "

For other modes of formation see Appendix.

6. The supine-stem is generally formed

In the first conj. by adding -*at* (long) to the present-stem.
" " second " " " -*it* (short) " " "
" " third " " " -*t* " " "
" " fourth " " " -*it* (long) " " "

For other modes of formation see Appendix VII.

ESSE, *to be.*

§ 100. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Fut. Part.*
Sum,	es-se,	fu-i,	fu-tu-rus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Person	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	sum, *I am,*	*su* mus, *we are,*
2.	es, *thou art,*	*es* tis, *ye are,*
3.	est, *he is;*	sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect.

1. *e* ram, *I was*,	*e ra* mus, *we were*,
2. e ras, *thou wast*,	e *ra* tis, *ye were*,
3. *e* rat, *he was*;	*e* rant, *they were*.

Future. *shall*, or *will*.

1. *e* ro, *I shall be*,	*er* i mus, *we shall be*,
2. *e* ris, *thou wilt be*,	*er* i tis, *ye will be*,
3. *e* rit, *he will be*;	*e* runt, *they will be*.

Present-Perfect. *have been*, or *was*.

1. *fu* i, *I have been*,	*fu* i mus, *we have been*,
2. fu *is* ti, *thou hast been*,	fu *is* tis, *ye have been*,
3. *fu* it, *he has been*;	fu *e* runt *or* re, *they have been*.

Past-Perfect.

1. *fu* e ram, *I had been*,	fu e *ra* mus, *we had qeen*,
2. *fu* e ras, *thou hadst been*,	fu e *ra* tis, *ye had been*,
3. *fu* e rat, *he had been*;	*fu* e rant, *they had been*.

Future-Perfect. *shall*, or *will have*.

1. *fu* e ro, *I shall have been*.	fu *er* i mus, *we shall have been*,
2. *fu* e ris, *thou wilt have been*,	fu *er* i tis, *ye will have been*,
3. *fu* e rit, *he will have been*;	*fu* e rint, *they will have been*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may*.

1. sim, *I may be*,	*si* mus, *we may be*,
2. sis, *thou mayst be*,	*si* tis, *ye may be*,
3. sit, *he may be*;	sint, *they may be*.

Imperfect. *might, would*, or *should*.

1. *es* sem, *I would be*,	es *se* mus, *we would be*,
2. *es* ses, *thou wouldst be*,	es *se* tis, *ye would be*,
3. *es* set, *he would be*;	*es* sent, *they would be*.

Perfect.

1. *fu* e rim, *I may have been*.	fu *er* i mus, *we may have been*,
2. *fu* e ris, *thou mayst have been*,	fu *er* i tis, *ye may have been*,
3. *fu* e rit, *he may have been*;	*fu* e rint, *they may have*.

Past-perfect. *might, would,* or *should have.*

1. fu *is* sem, *I would have been,* fu is *se* mus, *we would have been,*
2. fu *is* ses, *thou wouldst have been,* fu is *se* tis, *ye would have been.*
3. fu *is* set, *he wonld have been;* fu *is* sent, *they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. 1. es, *be thou,* *es* te, *be ge,*
Fut. 2. *es* to, *thou shalt be,* es *to* te, *ye shall be,*
3. *es* to, *let him be;* *sun* to, *let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *es* se, *to be.*
Perfect. fu *is* se, *to have been.*
Future. fu *tu* rus, (a, um) es se, *or* fo re, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

fu tu rus, a, um, *about to be.*

§101. CONJUGATION OF VERBS.—ENDINGS.

The following table exhibits the endings of the active and passive voices in all the conjugations :

Rem. 1. On the present-stem are formed all the moods of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, (except the infinitive future, active and passive,) the gerund, present active participle, and future passive participle.

Rem. 2. On the perfect-stem are formed all the perfect-tenses in the active voice.

Rem. 3. On the supine stem are formed the supines; the future active, and perfect passive participles; the infinitive future, active and passive; and all the perfect tenses in the passive voice. These latter are compounded of the perfect passive participle and the verb *esse.*

TABLE OF ENDINGS—PRESENT-STEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Conjugation.	SINGULAR. Persons. 1.	2.	3.	PLURAL. Persons. 1.	2.	3.	SINGULAR. Persons. I.	2.	3	PLURAL. Persons 1.	2.	3.
1.	o,	as,	at;	amus,	atis,	ant	1. or,	aris or are;	atur;	amur,	amini,	antur.
2.	eo,	es,	et;	emus,	etis,	ent.	2. eor,	eris or ere,	etur;	emur,	emini,	entur.
3.	o,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	unt.	3. or,	eris or ere,	itur;	imur,	imini,	untur.
4.	io,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	iunt.	4. ior,	iris or ire,	itur;	imur,	imini,	iuntur.

IMPERFECT.

1.	abam,	abas,	abat;	abamus,	abatis,	abant.	1. abar,	abaris or abare,	abatur;	abamur,	abamini,	abantur.
2.	ebam,	ebas,	ebat;	ebamus,	ebatis,	ebant.	2. ebar,	ebaris or ebare,	ebatur;	ebamur,	ebamini,	ebantur.
3.	ebam,	ebas,	ebat;	ebamus,	ebatis,	ebant.	3. ebar,	ebaris or ebare,	ebatur;	ebamur,	ebamini,	ebantur.
4.	iebam,	iebas,	iebat;	iebamus,	iebatis,	iebant.	4. iebar,	iebaris or iebare,	iebatur;	iebamur,	iebamini,	iebantur.

FUTURE.

1.	abo,	abis,	abit;	abimus,	abitis,	abunt.	1. abor,	aberis or abere,	abitur;	abimur,	abimini,	abuntur.
2.	ebo,	ebis,	ebit;	ebimus,	ebitis,	ebunt.	2. ebor,	eberis or ebere,	ebitur;	ebimur,	ebimini,	ebuntur.
3.	am,	es,	et;	emus,	etis,	ent.	3. ar,	eris or ere,	etur;	emur,	emini,	entur.
4.	iam,	ies,	iet;	iemus,	ietis,	ient	4. iar,	ieris or iere,	ietur;	iemur,	iemini,	ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

1.	em,	es,	et;	emus,	etis,	ent.	1. er,	eris or ere,	etur;	emur,	emini.	entur.
2.	eam,	eas,	eat;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.	2. ear,	earis or eare,	eatur;	eamur,	eamini,	eantur.
3.	am,	as,	at;	amus,	atis,	ant.	3. ar,	aris or are,	atur;	amur,	amini,	antur.
4.	iam	ias,	iat:	iamus.	iatis.	iant	4. iar,	iaris or iare,	iatur	iamur,	iamini,	iantur

IMPERFECT.

1.	*a*rem,	*a*res,	*a*ret;	a*re*mus.	a*re*tis,	*a*rent.	1.	*a*rer,	a*re*ris,	*or*	a*re*re,	a*re*tur;	a*re*mur,	a*re*mini,	a*re*ntur.
2.	*e*rem,	*e*res,	*e*ret;	e*re*mus,	e*re*tis,	*e*rent.	2.	*e*rer,	e*re*ris,	*or*	e*re*re,	e*re*tur;	e*re*mur,	o*re*mini,	e*re*ntur.
3.	e*re*m,	o*re*s,	e*re*t;	o*re*mus,	e*re*tis,	e*re*nt.	3.	e*re*r,	e*re*ris,	*or*	e*re*re,	o*re*tur;	e*re*mur,	o*re*mini,	e*re*ntur.
4.	*i*rem,	*i*res,	*i*ret;	i*re*mus,	i*re*tis,	*i*rent.	4.	*i*rer,	i*re*ris,	*or*	i*re*re,	i*re*tur;	i*re*mur,	i*re*mini,	i*re*ntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	1.	a;	*a*te.	*Future.*	*a*to,	*a*to;	a*to*te,	a*n*to.	*Present.*	1.	*a*re,	a*m*ini.	*Future.*	*a*tor,	*a*tor,	(a*b*amini,)	a*n*tor.
	2.	o;	*e*te.		*e*to,	*e*to;	e*to*te,	e*n*to.		2.	*e*re,	e*m*ini.		*e*tor,	*e*tor,	(e*b*imini,)	e*n*tor.
	3.	e;	i*t*e.		i*t*o,	i*t*o;	i*to*te,	u*n*to.		3.	e*r*e,	i*m*ini.		i*t*or,	i*t*or,	(e*m*iui,)	u*n*tor.
	4.	i;	*i*te.		*i*to,	*i*to;	i*to*te,	iu*n*to.		4.	*i*re,	i*m*ini.		*i*tor,	*i*tor,	(ie*m*iui,)	iu*n*tor.

INFIN. *Pres.*	1.	*a*re,	PART. *Pres.*	1.	a*n*s,	GER.	1.	a*n*di,	INFIN. *Pres.*	1.	*a*ri,	PART. *Fut.*	a*n*dus,
	2.	*e*re,		2.	e*n*s,		2.	e*n*di.		2.	*e*ri,		e*n*dus,
	3.	e*r*e,		3.	e*n*s,		3.	e*n*di,		3.	i,		e*n*dus,
	4.	*i*re.		4.	ie*n*s.		4.	ie*n*di.		4.	*i*ri.		ie*n*dus.

Terminations added to the Perfect and Supine Stems.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the perfect and supine stems, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

ACTIVE VOICE.—PERFECT STEM. PASSIVE VOICE.—SUPINE STEM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			*Plural.*				*Singular.*					
Perf.	i,	isti,	it;	imus,	istis,	*e*runt *or* *e*re,	*Perf.*	us sum	*or*	fui,	us es	*or*	fuisti, etc.
Past Per.	eram,	eras,	erat;	e*ra*mus,	e*ra*tis,	erant,	*Past Per.*	us eram	*or*	fueram,	us eras	*or*	fueras, etc.
Fut. perf.	ero,	eris,	erit;	erimus,	eritis,	erint,	*Fut. perf.*	us ero	*or*	fuero,	us eris	*or*	fueris, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perf.	erim,	eris,	erit;	erimus,	eritis,	eriut.	*Perf.*	us sim	*or*	fuerim,	us sis	*or*	fueris, etc.
Past Per.	issem,	isses,	isset;	isse*m*us,	isse*t*is	issent.	*Past Per.*	us essem	*or*	fuissem,	us esses	*or*	fuisses, etc.

INFIN. *Perf.* -isse. INFIN. *Perf.* -us esse *or* fuisse.

SUPINE-STEM. INF. *Fut.* -*u*rus esse. PART. *Fut.* -*u*rus. SUP. -um, -u. PART. *Perf.* -u. INF. *Fut.* -um *i*ri.

§ 102. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Prcs.	*Inf. Prcs.*	*Ind. Perf.*	*Supine.*
A mo,	a *ma* re,	a *ma* vi,	a *ma* tum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *love, do love, am loving.*

Sing.	*a* mo,	*I love,*
	a mas,	*thou lovest,*
	a mat,	*he loves;*
	a *ma* mus,	*we love,*
	a *ma* tis,	*ye love,*
	a mant,	*they love.*

Imperfect. *was loving, loved, did love.*

Sing.	a *ma* bam,	*I was loving,*
	a *ma* bas,	*thou wast loving,*
	a *ma* bat,	*he was loving;*
Plur.	am a *ba* mus,	*we were loving,*
	am a *ba* tis,	*ye were loving,*
	a *ma* bant,	*they were loving.*

Future. *shall,* or *will.*

Sing.	a *ma* bo,	*I shall love,*
	a *ma* bis,	*thou wilt love,*
	a *ma* bit,	*he will love;*
Plur.	a *mab* i mus,	*we shall love,*
	a *mab* i tis,	*ye will love,*
	a *ma* bunt,	*they will love.*

Present-Perfect. *loved,* or *have loved.*

Sing.	a *ma* vi,	*I have loved,*
	am a *vis* ti,	*thou hast loved,*
	a *ma* vit,	*he has loved;*
Plur.	a *mav* i mus,	*we have loved,*
	am a *vis* tis,	*ye have loved,*
	am a *ve* runt or re,	*they have loved.*

Past-Perfect. *had.*

Sing.	a *mav* e ram,	*I had loved.*
	a *mav* e ras,	*thou hadst loved,*
	a *mav* e rat,	*he had loved ;*
Plur.	a mav e *ra* mus,	*we had loved,*
	a mav e *ra* tis,	*ye had loved,*
	a *mav* e rant,	*they had loved.*

Future-Perfect. *shall,* or *will have.*

Sing.	a *mav* e ro,	*I shall have loved,*
	a *mav* e ris,	*thou wilt have loved,*
	a *mav* e rit,	*he will have loved ;*
Plur.	am a *ver* i mus,	*we shall have loved,*
	am a *ver* i tis,	*ye will have loved,*
	a *mav* e rint,	*they will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may.*

Sing.	*a* mem,	*I may love,*
	a mes,	*thou mayst love,*
	a met,	*he may love ;*
Plur.	a *me* mus,	*we may love,*
	a *me* tis,	*ye may love,*
	a ment,	*they may love.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Sing.	a *ma* rem,	*I would love,*
	a *ma* res,	*thou wouldst love,*
	a *ma* ret,	*he would love ;*
Plur.	am a *re* mus,	*we would love,*
	am a *re* tis,	*ye would love,*
	a *ma* rent,	*they would love.*

Present-Perfect. *may,* or *can have.*

Sing.	a *mav* e rim,	*I may have loved,*
	a *mav* e ris,	*thou mayst have loved,*
	a *mav* e rit,	*he may have loved ;*
Plur.	am a *ver* i mus,	*we may have loved,*
	am a *ver* i tis,	*ye may have loved,*
	a *mav* e rint,	*they may have loved.*

Past-Perfect. *might, could, would,* or *should have*

Sing.	am a *vis* sem,	*I would have loved,*
	am a *vis* ses,	*thou wouldst have loved,*
	am a *vis* set,	*he would have loved;*
Plur.	am a vis *se* mus,	*we would have loved,*
	am a vis *se* tis,	*ye would have loved,*
	am a *vis* sent,	*they would have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	*Sing.*	a ma,	*love thou;*
	Plur.	a *ma* te,	*love ye,*
Fut.	*Sing.*	a *ma* to,	*thou shalt love,*
		a *ma* to,	*he shall love;*
	Plur.	am a *to* te,	*ye shall love,*
		a *man* to,	*they shall love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	a *ma* re,	*to love.*
Perfect.	am a *vis* se,	*to have loved.*
Future.	am a *tu* rus, (a, um) es se,	*to be about to love.*
Fut. perf.	am a *tu* rus fu *is* se,	*to have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	a mans,	*loving.*
Future.	am a *tu* rus, a um.	*about to love.*

GERUND.

G.	a *man* di,	*of loving.*
D.	a *man do,*	*for loving,*
Ac.	a *man* dum,	*loving,*
Ab.	a *man do,*	*by loving.*

SUPINE.

a *ma* tum,	*to love.*
a *ma* tu,	*to love, to be loved.*

§ 103. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Indic. Pres.	*Infin. Perf.*	*Perf. Part.*
A mor,	a *ma* ri,	a *ma* tus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *am.*

Sing.	*a* mor,	*I am loved,*
	a *ma* ris *or* re,	*thou art loved,*
	a *ma* tur,	*he is loved;*
Plur.	a *ma* mur,	*we are loved,*
	a *mam* i ni,	*ye are loved,*
	a *man* tur,	*they are loved.*

Imperfect. *was.*

Sing.	a *ma* bar,	*I was loved,*
	am a *ba* ris *or* re,	*thou wast loved,*
	am a *ba* tur,	*he was loved;*
Plur.	am a *ba* mur,	*we were loved,*
	am a *bam* i ni,	*ye were loved,*
	am a *ban* tur,	*they were loved.*

Future. *shall,* or *will be.*

Sing.	a *ma* bor,	*I shall be loved,*
	a *mab* e eris *or* re,	*thou wilt be loved,*
	a *mab* i tur,	*he will be loved;*
Plur.	a *mab* i mur,	*we shall be loved,*
	am a *bim* i ni,	*ye will be loved,*
	am a *bun* tur.	*they will be loved.*

Present-Perfect. *have been,* or *was.*

Sing.	a *am* tus sum *or fu* i,	*I have been loved,*
	a *ma* tus es *or* fu *is* ti,	*thou hast been loved,*
	a *ma* tus est *or fu* it,	*he has been loved;*
Plur.	a *ma* ti *su* mus *or fu* i mus,	*we have been loved,*
	a *ma* ti *es* tis *or* fu *is* tis,	*ye have been loved,*
	a *ma* ti sunt, *fu e* runt *or* re,	*they have been loved.*

Past-Perfect. *had been.*

Sing.	a *ma* tus *e* ram *or fu* e ram,	*I had been loved,*
	a *ma* tus *e* ras *or fu* e ras,	*thou hadst been loved,*
	a *ma* tus *e* rat *or fu* e rat,	*he had been loved;*
Plur.	a *ma* ti e *ra* mus *or* fu e *ra* mus,	*we had been loved,*
	a *ma* ti e *ra* tis *or* fu e *ra* tis,	*ye had been loved,*
	a *ma* ti *e* rant *or fu* e rant,	*they had been loved.*

Future-Perfect. *shall have been.*

Sing.	a *ma* tus *e* ro *or fu* e ro,	*I shall have been loved,*
	a *ma* tus *e* ris *or fu* e ris,	*thou wilt have been loved,*
	a *ma* tus *e* rit *or fu* e rit,	*he will have been loved;*
Plur.	a *ma* ti *er* i mus *or* fu *er* i mus,	*we shall have been loved,*
	a *ma* ti *er* i tis *or* fu *er* i tis,	*ye will have been loved,*
	a *ma* ti *e* runt *or fu* e rint,	*they will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may be.*

Sing.	*a* mer,	*I may be loved,*
	a *me* ris *or* re,	*thou mayst be loved,*
	a *me* tur,	*he may be loved;*
Plur.	a *me* mur,	*we may be loved,*
	a *mem* i ni,	*ye may be loved,*
	a *men* tur,	*they may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

Sing.	a *ma* rer,	*I would be loved,*
	am a *re* ris *or* re,	*thou wouldst be loved,*
	am a *re* tur,	*he would be loved;*
Plur.	am a *re* mur,	*we would be loved,*
	am a *rem* i ni,	*ye would be loved,*
	am a *ren* tur,	*they would be loved.*

Present-Perfect. *may have been.*

Sing.	a *ma* tus sim *or fu* e rim,	*I may have been loved,*
	a *ma* tus sis *or fu* e ris,	*thou mayst have been loved,*
	a *ma* tus sit *or fu* e rit,	*he may have been loved;*
Plur.	a *ma* ti *si* mus *or* fu *er* i mus,	*we may have been loved,*
	a *ma* ti *si* tis *or* fu *er* i tis,	*ye may have been loved,*
	a *ma* ti sint *or fu* e rint,	*they may have been loved.*

Past-Perfect. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	a *ma* tus *es* sem *or* fu *is* sem,	*I would have been loved,*
	a *ma* tus *es* ses *or* fu *is* ses,	*thou wouldst have been loved.*
	a *ma* tus *es* set *or* fu *is* set,	*he would have been loved:*
Plur.	a *ma* ti es *se* mus *or* fu is *se* mus,	*we would have been loved,*
	a *ma* ti es *se* tis *or* fu is *se* tis,	*ye would have been loved,*
	a *ma* ti *es* sent *or* fu *is* sent,	*they would have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	*Sing.*	a *ma* re,	*be thou loved;*
	Plur.	a *mam* i ni,	*be ye loved.*
Fut.	*Sing.*	a *ma* tor,	*thou shalt be loved,*
		a *ma* tor,	*he shall be loved;*
	Plur.	(am a *bim* i ni,	*ye shall be loved*),
		a *man* tor,	*they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	a *ma* ri,	*to be loved.*
Perfect.	a *ma* tus *es* se *or fu* is se,	*to have been loved.*
Future.	a *ma* tum *i* ri,	*to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	a *ma* tus,	*loved,* or *having been loved.*
Future.	a *man* dus,	*to be loved.*

§ 104. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Pres.	*mon* ne o.	*Ind. Pres.*	*mo* ne or.
Inf. Pres.	mo *ne re.*	*Inf. Pres.*	mo *ne* ri.
Ind. Perf.	*mon* u i.	*Perf. Part.*	*mon* i tus.
Supine.	*mon* i tum.		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

	I advise.	*I am advised.*
Sing.	*mo* ne o,	*mo* ne or,
	mo nes,	mo *ne* ris *or* re.
	mo net;	mo *ne* tur;
Plur.	mo *ne* mus,	mo *ne* mur,
	mo *ne* tis,	mo *nem* i ni,
	mo nent.	mo *nen* tur.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Imperfect.	
I was advising.	*I was advised.*
S. mo *ne* bam, mo *ne* bas, mo *ne* bat;	*S.* mo *ne* bar, mon e *ba* ris *or* re, mon e *ba* tur;
P. mon e *ba* mus, mon e *ba* tis, mo *ne* bant.	*P.* mon e *ba* mur, mon e *bam* i ni, mon e *ban* tur.
Future.	
I shall or *will advise.*	*I shall* or *will be advised.*
S. mo *ne* bo, mo *ne* bis, mo *ne* bit;	*S.* mo *ne* bor, mo *neb* e ris *or* re, mo *neb* i tur;
P mo *neb* i mus, mo *neb* i tis, mo *ne* bunt.	*P* mo *neb* i mur, mon e *bim* i ni, mon e *bun* tur.
Present-Perfect.	
I advised or *have advised.*	*I was* or *have been advised.*
S. mon u i, mon u *is* ti, *mon* u it;	*S. mon* i tus sum *or fu* i, *mon* i tus es *or* fu *is* ti, *mon* i tus est *or fu* it;
P. mo *nu* i mus, mon u *is* tis, mon u *e* runt *or* re,	*P. mon* i ti *su* mus *or fu* i mus, *mon* i ti *es* tis *or* fu *is* tis, *mon* i ti sunt *fu e* runt *or* re.
Past-Perfect.	
I had advised.	*I had been advised.*
S. mo *nu* e ram, mo *nu* e ras, mo *nu* e rat;	*S. mon* i tus *e* ram *or fu* e ram, *mon* i tus *e* ras *or fu* e ras, *mon* i tus *e* rat *or fu* e rat;
P. mon u e *ra* mus, mon u e *ra* tis, mo *nu* e rant.	*P. mon* i ti e *ra* mus *or* fu e *ra* mus *mon* i ti e *ra* tis *or* fu e *ra* tis, *mon* i ti *e* rant *or fu* e rant.
Future-Perfect.	
I shall have advised.	*I shall have been advised.*
S. mo *nu* e ro, mo *nu* e ris, mo *nu* e rit;	*S. mon* i tus *e* ro *or fu* e ro, *mon* i tus *e* ris *or fu* e ris, *mon* i tus *e* rit *or fu* e rit;
P. mon u *er* i mus, mon u *er* i tis, mo *nu* e rint.	*P. mon* i ti *er* i mus *or* fu *er* i mus, *mon* i ti *er* i tis *or* fu *er* i tis, *mon* i ti *e* runt *or fu* e rint.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

STBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may advise.	*I may be advised.*
S. *mo* ne am,	*S.* *mo*·ne ar,
mo ne as,	mo ne *a* ris *or* re,
mo ne at;	mo ne *a* tur;
P. mo ne *a* mus,	*P.* mo ne *a* mur,
mo ne *a* tis,	mo ne *am* i ni,
mo ne ant.	mo ne *an* tur.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would or *should advise.*	*I might, could, would* or *should be advised.*
S. mo *ne* rem,	*S.* mo *ne* rer,
mo *ne* res,	mon e *re* ris *or* re,
mo *ne* ret;	mon e *re* tur;
P. mon e *re* mus,	*P.* mon e *re* mur,
mion e *re* tis,	mon e *rem* i ni,
mo *ne* rent.	mon e *ren* tur.

Present-Perfect.

I may have advised.	*I may have been advised.*
S. mo *nu* e rim,	*S.* *mon* i tus sim *or* *fu* e rim;
mo *nu* e ris,	*mon* i tus sis *or* *fu* e ris,
mo *nu* e rit;	*mon* i tus sit *or* *fu* e rit;
P. mon u *er* i mus,	*P.* *mon* i ti *si* mus *or* fu *er* i mus,
mon u *er* i tis,	*mon* i ti *si* tis *or* fu *er* i tis,
mo *nu* e rint.	*mon* i ti sint *or* *fu* e rint.

Past-Perfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have advised.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been advised.*
S. mon u *is* sem,	*S.* *mon* i tus *es* sem *or* fu *is* sem,
mon u *is* ses,	*mon* i tus *es* ses *or* fu *is* ses,
mon u *is* set;	*mon* i tus *es* set *or* fu *is* set;
P. mon u is *se* mus,	*P.* *mon* i ti es *se* mus *or* fu is *se* mus
mon u is *se* tis,	*mon* i ti es *se* tis *or* fu is *se* tis,
mon u *is* sent.	*mon* i ti *es* sent *or* fu *is* sent.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. *S.* mo ne, *advise thou;*
P. mo *ne* te, *advise ye.*
Fut. *S.* mo *ne* to, *thou shalt advise,*
mo *ne* to, *he shall advise:*
P. mon e *to* te, *ye shall advise,*
mo *nen* to, *they shall advise.*

Pres. *S.* mo *ne* re. *be thou advised.*
P mo *nem* i ni, *be ye advised.*
Fut. *S.* mo *ne* tor, *thou shalt be advised,*
mo *ne* tor, *he shall be advised:*
P (mon e *bim* i ni, *ye shall be advised,*)
mo *nen* tor, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. mo *ne* re, *to advise.*
Perf. mon u *is* se, *to have advised.*
Fut. mon i *tu* rus *es* se, *to be about to advise.*
Fut. Perf. mon i *tu* rus fu *is* se, *to have been about to advise.*

Pres. mo *ne* ri, *to be advised.*
Perf. *mon* i tus *es* se *or* fu *is* se, *to have been advised.*
Fut. mon i tum *i* ri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mo nens, *advising.* *Perf.* *mon* i tus, *advised.*
Fut. mon i *tu* rus, *about to advise.* *Fut.* mo *nen* dus, *to be advised.*

GERUND.

G. mo *nen* di, *of advising.*
D. mo *nen* do, etc.,
Ac. mo *nen* dum.
Ab. mo *nen* do.

SUPINE.

mon i tum, *to advise.* mon i tu, *to be advised, to advise.*

§ 105. THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Pres. *re* go.
Inf. Pres. *reg* ĕ re.
Ind. Perf. *rex* i.
Supine. *rec* tum.

Ind. Pres. *re* gor
Inf. Pres. *re* gi.
Perf. Part. *rec* tus.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I rule.	*I am ruled.*
Sing. *re* go,	*Sing.* *re* gor,
re gis,	*reg* e ris *or* re,
re git;	*reg* i tur;
Plur. *reg* i mus,	*Plur.* *reg* i mur,
reg i tis,	re *gim* i ni,
re gunt.	re *gun* tur.

Imperfect.

I was ruling.	*I was ruled.*
S. re *ge* bam,	S. re *ge* bar,
re *ge* bas,	reg e *ba* ris *or* re,
re *ge* bat;	reg e *ba* tur;
P. reg e *ba* mus,	P. reg e *ba* mur,
reg e *ba* tis,	reg e *bam* i ni,
re ge bant.	reg e *ban* tur.

Future.

I shall or *will rule.*	*I shall* or *will be ruled.*
S. *re* gam,	S. *re* gar,
re ges,	re *ge* ris *or* re,
re get;	re *ge* tur;
P. re *ge* mus,	P. re *ge* mur,
re *ge* tis,	re *gem* i ni,
re gent.	re *gen* tur.

Present-Perfect.

I ruled or *have ruled.*	*I was* or *have been ruled.*
S. *rex* i,	S. *rec* tus sum *or fu* i,
rex *is* ti,	*rec* tus es *or* fu *is* ti,
rex it;	*rec* tus est *or fu* it;
P. *rex* i mus,	P *rec* ti *su* mus *or fu* i mus,
rex *is* tis,	*rec* ti *es* tis *or* fu *is* tis,
rex *e* runt *or* re.	*rec* ti sunt, fu *e* runt *or* re.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Past-Perfect.	
I had ruled.	*I had been ruled.*
S. *rex* e ram, *rex* e ras, *rex* e rat ;	S. *rec* tus *e* ram *or fu* e ram, *rec* tus *e* ras *or fu* e ras, *rec* tus *e* rat *or fu* e rat ;
P. rex e *ra* mus, rex e *ra* tis, *rex* e rant.	P. *rec* ti e *ra* mus *or* fu e *ra* mus, *rec* ti e *ra* tis *or* fu e *ra* tis, *rec* ti e rant *or fu* e rant.
Future-Perfect.	
I shall have ruled.	*I shall have been ruled.*
S. *rex* e ro, *rex* e ris, *rex* e rit ;	S. *rec* tus *e* ro *or fu* e ro, *rec* tus *e* ris *or fu* e ris, *rec* tus *e* rit *or fu* e rit ;
P. rex *er* i mus, rex *er* i tis, *rex* e rint,	P *rec* ti *er* i mus *or* fu *er* i mus, *rec* ti *er* i tis *or* fu *er* i tis, *rec* ti *e* runt *or fu* e rint.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Present.	
I may rule.	*I may be ruled.*
S. *re* gam, *re* gas, *re* gat ;	S. *re* gar, re *ga* ris *or* re, re *ga* tur ;
P. re *ga* mus, re *ga* tis, *re* gant.	P. re *ga* mur, re *gam* i ni, re *gan* tur.
Imperfect.	
I might, could, would, or *should rule.*	*I might, could, would,* or *shonld be ruled.*
S. *reg* e rem, *reg* e res, *reg* e ret ;	S. *reg* e rer, reg e *re* ris *or* re, reg e *re* tur ;
P. reg e *re* mus, reg e *re* tis, *reg* e rent.	P. reg e *re* mur, reg e *rem* i ni, reg e *ren* tur.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Present-Perfect.	
y have ruled.	*I may have been ruled.*
rex e rim,	S. *rec* tus sim *or* fu e rim,
rex e ris,	*rec* tus sis *or* fu e ris,
rex e rit;	*rec* tus sit *or* fu e rit;
rex *er* i mus,	P. *rec* ti si mus *or* fu er i mus,
rex *er* i tis,	*rec* ti si tis *or* fu er i tis,
rex e rint.	*rec* ti sint *or* fu e rint.
Past-Perfect.	
ht, could, would, or *uld have ruled.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been ruled.*
rex *is* sem,	S. *rec* tus *es* sem *or* fu *is* sem,
rex *is* ses,	*rec* tus *es* ses *or* fu *is* ses,
rex *is* set;	*rec* tus *es* set *or* fu *is* set;
rex is *se* mus,	P. *rec* ti es *se* mus *or* fu is *se* mus.
rex is *se* tis,	*rec* ti es *se* tis *or* fu is se tis,
rex *is* sent.	*rec* ti *es* sent *or* fu *is* sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

rc ge, *rule thou,*	Pres. S. *reg* e re, *be thou ruled,*
reg i te, *rule ye.*	P re *gim* i ni, *be ye ruled.*
reg i to, *thou shalt rule,*	Fut. S. *reg* i tor, *thou shalt be ruled*
reg i to, *he shall rule;*	*reg* i tor, *he shall be ruled;*
reg i *to* te, *ye shall rule,*	P (re *gem* i ni, *ye shall,* etc.)
re *gun* to, *they shall rule.*	re *gun* tor, *they shall,* etc.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

eg e re, *to rule.*	Pres. *re* gi, *to be ruled.*
ex *is* se, *to have ruled.*	Perf. rec tus es se *or* fu is se, *to*
ec *tu* rus es se, *to be about*	*have been ruled.*
to rule.	Fut. rec tum i ri, *to be about to*
'erf. rec *tu* rus fu *is* se, *to*	*be ruled.*
have been about to rule.	

PARTICIPLES.

·e gens, *ruling.*	Perf. *rec* tus, *ruled.*
rec *tu* rus, *about to rule.*	Fut. re *gen* dus, *to be ruled.*

GERUND.

G. re *gen* di, *of ruling*
D. re *gen* do, etc.
Ac. re *gen* dum,
Ab. re *gen* do.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
SUPINE.	
rec tum, *to rule.*	rec tu, *to be ruled, to rule.*

§ 106. FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Pres. *au* di o,	Ind. Pres. *au* di or.
Inf. Pres. au *di* re,	Inf. Pres. au *di* ri.
Ind. Perf. au *di* vi,	Perf. Part. au *di* tus.
Supine. au *di* tum.	

INDICATIVE MOOD,

Present.

I hear.	*I am heard.*
S. *au* di o	S. *au* di or,
au dis,	au *di* ris *or* re,
au dit;	au *di* tur;
P. au *di* mus,	P. au *di* mur,
au *di* tis,	au *dim* i ni,
au di unt.	au di *un* tur.

Imperfect.

I was hearing.	*I was heard.*
S. au di *e* bam,	S. au di *e* bar,
au di *e* bas,	au di e *ba* ris *or* re,
au di *e* bat;	au di e *ba* tur;
P. au di e *ba* mus,	P. au di e *ba* mur,
au di e *ba* tis,	au di e *bam* i ni,
au di e bant.	au di e *ban* tur.

Future.

I shall or *will hear.*	*I shall* or *will be heard.*
S. *au* di am,	S. *au* di ar,
au di es,	au di *e* ris *or* re,
au di et;	au di *e* tur;
P. au di *e* mus,	P. au di *e* mur,
au di *e* tis,	au di *em* i ni,
au di ent.	au di *en* tur.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

Present-Perfect.

I heard or *have heard.*

S. au *di* vi,
au di *vis* ti,
au *di* vit;
P. au *div* i mus,
au di *vis* tis,
au di *ve* runt *or* re.

I have been or *was heard.*

S. au *di* tus sum *or fu* i,
au *di* tus es *or* fu *is* ti,
au *di* tus est *or fu* it;
P au *di* ti *su* mus *or fu* i mus,
au *di* ti *es* tis *or* fu *is* tis,
au *di* ti sunt, fu *e* runt *or* re.

Past-Perfect.

I had heard.

S. au *div* e ram,
au *div* e ras,
au *div* e rat;
P. au div e *ra* mus,
au div e *ra* tis,
au *div* e rant.

I had been heard.

S. au *di* tus *e* ram *or fu* e ram,
au *di* tus *e* ras *or fu* e ras,
au *di* tus *e* rat *or fu* e rat;
P. au *di* ti e *ra* mus *or* fu e *ra* mus,
au *di* ti e *ra* tis *or* fu e *ra* tis,
au *di* ti *e* rant *or fu* e rant.

Future-Perfect.

I shall have heard.

S. au *div* e ro,
au *div* e ris,
au *div* e rit;
P au di *ver* i mus,
au di *ver* i tis,
au *div* e rint.

I shall have been heard.

S. au *di* tus *e* ro *or fu* e ro,
au *di* tus *e* ris *or fu* e ris,
au *di* tus *e* rit *or fu* e rit;
P. au *di* ti *er* i mus *or* fu *er* i mus,
au *di* ti *er* i tis *or* fu *er* i tis,
au *di* ti *e* runt *or fu* e rint,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can hear.*

S. *au* di am,
au di as,
au di at;
P. au di *a* mus,
au di *a* tis,
au di ant.

I may or *can be heard.*

S. *an* di ar,
au di *a* ris *or* re,
au di *a* tur;
P. au di *a* mur,
au di *am* i ni,
au di *an* tur.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or should hear.	*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*
S. au *di* rem.	S. au *di* rer,
au *di* res,	au di *re* ris *or* re.
au *di* ret:	au di *re* tur;
P. au di *re* mus,	P. au di *re* mur,
au di *re* tis.	au di *rem* i ni,
au *di* rent.	au di *ren* tur.

Present-Perfect.

I may have heard.	*I may have been heard.*
S. au *di* e rim.	S. au *di* tus sim *or fu* e rim.
au *div* e ris,	au *di* tus sis *or fu* e ris.
au *div* e rit;	au *di* tus sit *or fu* e rit;
P. au di *ver* i mus.	P. au *di* ti *si* mus *or* fu *er* i mus,
au di *ver* i tis.	au *di* ti *si* tis *or* fu *er* i tis,
au *div* e rint.	au *di* ti sint *or* fu *e* rint.

Past-Perfect.

I might, could, would, or should have heard.	*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*
S. au di *vis* sem,	S. au *di* tus *es* sem *or* fu *is* sem,
au di *vis* ses,	au *di* tus *es* ses *or* fu *is* ses,
au di *vis* set;	au *di* tus *es* set *or* fu *is* set;
P. au di vis *se* mus,	P. au *di* ti es *se* mus *or* fu *is se* mus.
au di vis *se* tis,	au *di* ti es *se* tis *or* fu is *se* tis,
au di *vis* sent.	au *di* ti *es* sent *or* fu *is* sent,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. *au* di, *hear thou;*	Pres. S, au *di* re, *be thou heard;*
P au *di* te, *hear ye.*	P. au *dim* i ni, *be ye heard.*
Fut. S. au *di* to, *thou shalt hear,*	Fut. S. au *di* tor, *thou shalt be heard.*
au *di* to, *he shall hear;*	au *di* tor, *he shall be heard;*
P. au di *to* te, *ye shall hear,*	P. (au di *em* i ni, *ye shall be heard,*)
au di *un* to, *they shall hear.*	au di *un* tor, *they shall be heard.*

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
INFINITIVE MOOD.	
Pres. au *di* re, *to hear.*	Pres. au *di* ri, *to be heard.*
Perf. au di *vis* se, *to have heard.*	Perf. au *di* tus *es* se *or* fu *is* se, *to have been heard.*
Fut. au di *tu* rus es se, *to be about to hear.*	Fut. au *di* tum *i* ri, *to be about to be heard.*
Fut-P. au di *tu* rus fu *is* se, *to have been about lo hear.*	
PARTICIPLES.	
Pres. *au* di ens, *hearing.*	Perf. au *di* tus, *heard.*
Fut. au di *tu* rus, *about to hear.*	Fut. au di *en* dus, *to be heard.*

GERUND.

G. au di *en* di, *of hearing.*
D. au di *en* do, etc.
Ac. au di *en* dum,
Ab. au di *en* do.

SUPINE.

au *di* tum, *to hear.* au di tu, *to be heard, to hear.*

§ 107. VERB IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

Some verbs of the third conjugation insert *i* before the ending in some of the tenses, as shown in the following paradigm of cap-*e*-re, *to take*.

ACTIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	*cap-*	i-o.	is.	it.	imus.	itis.	i-unt.
Imperf.	cap i *eb-*	am.	as.	at.	*a*mus.	atis.	ant.
Fut.	*cap* i-	am.	es.	et.	*e*mus.	etis.	ent.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	*cap* i-	am.	as.	at.	*e*mus.	atis.	ant.
PASSIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	*cap-*	i-or.	eris.	itur.	imur.	*i*mini.	i *e*ntur.
Imperf.	cap i *eb-*	ar.	*a*ris.	*a*tur.	*a*mur.	*e*mini.	*a*ntur.
Fut.	*cap* i-	ar.	eris.	etur.	emur.	emini.	entur.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	*cap* i.	ar.	*a*ris.	atur.	*a*mur.	*a*mini.	*a*ntur.
IMPERATIVE.							
3d Plur. Active, cap i *unto*.					3d Plur. Pass., cap i *untor*.		
PARTICIPLES.							
Pres. Active, *cap* i *ens*.					Fut. Pass., cap i *endus*.		
GERUND, cap i *end* i, o, &c.							

EXERCISE 33.

(Some verbs which insert *i*.)

Cap-ere, (cap-capt-) *to take*. (with its compounds).
Re-cip-ere, (re-cap-recept-) *to take back*.
Recip ere se, *to take oneself back, to retreat*.
Ac-cip-ere, (ac-cap-ac-cept-) *to receive, take to oneself*.
Cup-ere, (cu-piv-cup-it-) *to desire*.
Fac-ere, (fac-fact-) *to do, to make*.
Con-fic-ere, (con-fac-confect-) *to finish*.
Rap-ere, (rap-u-rapt-) *to seize, carry off*.
Di-rip-ere, (di-rip-u-,di-rept-) *to plunder*.

Rem. 1. The imperative present active 2d singular of *facio* is *fac*, and the passive is supplied by the irregular verb *fio*, (§ 111, 7). The compounds which change *a* into *i* have the regular passive; as, *conficior, confici, confectus:*

but those which retain the *a* have the irregular passive, as, *patefacio*, pass, *patefio*, *patefieri*, *patefactus*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Germani animalia (§ 39) quæ bello ceperant diis mactabant. Nostri in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos (§ 82, 1,) in fugam dederunt. Helvetii per Sequanorum fines iter faciebant. Hostes, qui per provinciam iter tentaverant, in fines suos se receperunt. Cæsar ab Helvetiis obsides et arma acceperat. Imperator aurum quod a rege acceperat, militibus dedit. Milites prœlium facere cupiverunt. Cæsar decem diebus pontem confecit. Romani virgines Sabinorum rapuerunt. Hostes atroces totam urbem diripient.

Translate into Latin.

The enemy will retreat from the mountain to the river. The king will lay-waste the country (*agros*) which he has conquered, with fire and sword. Our horsemen had made an attack upon the enemy's footmen. The forces of the enemy, that were making a journey through our province, plundered many villages. The lieutenant, with five legions which he had received from Cæsar, hastened into the boundaries of the Æduans. The consul will not finish the bridge in six days. The general desires to make an end of the war.

For peculiarities of tense formation and conjugation, and composition of verbs, see Appendix.

§ 108. EXERCISE 44. THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

I. The same idea may be expressed both in the active and passive form; as, *Helvetii legatos mittunt*, the Hel-

vetians send ambassadors; or, *Legati ab Helvetiis mittuntur*, Ambassadors are sent by the Helvetians.

2. The *object* in the active becomes the *subject* in the passive; and the *subject* in the active is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*. (ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT.

Rem. 1. If the ablative expresses, not the agent, or *doer* of the action, but only the *cause, means, instrument*, the preposition will not be used. As, *stimulus bove in concitat*, the goad urges on the ox; passive, *bos stimulo concitatur*, the ox is urged on with the goad.

Rem. 2. As intransitive verbs have no object in the active, they are not used personally in the passive.

3. *Rule of Syntax.* Verbs which in the active take another case in addition to the object-accusative, in the passive retain that other case; as, magister *puero* librum dat; *passive*, liber *puero* a magistro datur.

Translate into English and analyze.

Regina ab ancillis amatur. Magister bonus ab omnibus pueris amabitur. Tuæ salutis causa (§ 29, 1) mon-eris. Pater a filio suo amatus est. Templum de marmore (§ 40) ab imperatore ædificatum est. Leo qui in silva a servis visus est, multos homines laniaverat. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, Helvetii una ex parte flumine Rheno, altissimo atque latissimo, continentur. Legiones quæ in provincia conscriptæ sunt, a Cæsare ex hibernis educentur. Quidam ex militibus magnitudine periculi perterriti sunt. Castra tribus diebus (§ 66, 2) a consule movebitur. Improbi omnes a deo punientur. Hæc a nobis audita sunt.

Translate into Latin.

(Change any of the foregoing exercises from active to passive construction.)

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 109. 1. Deponent verbs are such as have a passive form with an active meaning.

They are called *deponent*, (laying aside,) because they *lay aside* their active form and passive meaning.

2. They are inflected throughout like passive verbs, and have also the gerund, participles, and supine of the active voice. The perfect and future passive participles, the infinitive-future passive, and the latter supine, have also a passive meaning.

PARADIGM.

Mir-or, mir-ari, mir-at-us, *to admire.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
PRES.	mir ror, *I admire.*	-er.	-are.	-ari.
IMPERF.	mir abar, *I was admiring.*	-arer.		
FUT.	mir abor, *I shall admire.*		ator.	mir at { -urus esse, -um iri.
PRES. PERF.	mir *at* us sum *or* fui, *I have admired.*	-us sim *or* fuerim.		-us esse *or* fuisse.
PAST PERF.	mer *at* tus eram *or* fueram, *I had admired.*	-us essem *or* fuissem.		
FUT. PERF.	mer *at* us ero *or* fuero, *I shall have admired.*			miraturus fuisse.

PARTICIPLES, { mir-ans, *admiring.* / mir-*at*-us, *having admired.* / miraturus, *about to admire.* / mir andus, *to be admired.* }

GERUND, mir-andi, *admiring.*

SUPINES, { mir-*at*-um, *to admire.* / mir-*at*-u, *to be admired.* }

§ 110. EXERCISE 45.

Mor-*ari*, *to delay*.
Con-*ari*, *to attempt*.
Popul-*ari*, *to pillage, plunder*.
Hort-*ari*, *to exhort*.
Imit-*ari*, *to imitate*.
Tu-*eri*, (tu-it *or* tut-) *to protect*.
Cōnfĭt-*eri*, (confess-) *to confess*.
Sequ-i, (secut-) *to follow*.
Ulcisc-i, (ult-) *to avenge*.
Pat-i, (pat-i-or, pass-) *to endure, to suffer, permit*.
Frumentarius, a, um, *of corn*.
Res frumentaria, *provisions*.
Congredi, (congred-i-or, congress-) *to meet in a hostile sense, to contend*.
Ment-*iri*, *to lie*.
Met-iri, (mens-) *to measure*
Publicus, -a, -um, *public*.
Privatus, -a, -um, *private*.
Mors, mort-is, *death*.
Supplicium, i, *punishment*.
Peccatum, i, *fault, sin*.
Amor, amor-is, *love*.
Scelus, sceler-is, *crime*.
Causa, (abl.) *for the sake of*.
Pauci, æ, a, *few*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cæsar in hoc oppido paucos dies (§ 66, 2,) rei frumentariæ causa morabatur. Flumina, quæ recentibus imbribus aucta sunt (see *augere*), multos dies consulem morabuntur. Helvetii in Æduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Hostes per provinciam nostram iter facere conati erant. Imperator fortis milites hortatus est. Liberi non semper virtutem parentium imitantur. Qui suos liberos non tuetur (§ 87, 7) homo est turpissimus. Turpe est mentiri. Nonne scelera tua confessus es? Equites nostri hostes ad flumen secuti sunt. Hic latro gravissimum supplicium patietur. Cum Cicerone sæpe in urbe congressus sum. Hac in re Cæsar publicas ac privatas injurias ultus est.

Translate into Latin.

A wise man always confesses his faults. Davus confessed his love for (*use gen.*) the maid-servant. The brave son will avenge his father's death. Our skirmishers delayed the journey of the enemy many hours. The prudent consul will not suffer the enemy to lead their forces through the most fertile part of Gaul. To lie is the basest of all things. The thief had confessed all his crimes. The general on the sixth day measured (out) corn to the soldiers.

It is easier to imitate vice than virtue. The Æduans, having contended with Ariovistus, king of the Germans, were conquered. Our men will attempt to follow the enemy through the forest.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 111. 1. Irregular verbs do not use, in some of their parts formed from the present-stem, the endings of either of the four conjugations.

2. They are, esse, *to be;* velle, *to be willing;* ferre, *to bear;* edere *or* esse, *to eat;* fieri, *to be made, to become;* ire, *to go;* quire, *to be able;* and their compounds.

3. Vol-o, vel-le, vol-u-i, *to wish, to be willing.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	vol*o*, vis, vult; vol-umus, vultis, vol-unt.	vel-im, vel-is, vel-it: vel-*i*mus, vel-*i*tis, vel-int.
IMPERF.	vol-ebam, vol-ebas, &c.	vel-lem, vel-les, vel-let: vel-*le*mus, vel-*le*tis, vel-lent.
FUT.	vol-am, vol-es, &c.	
PRES. PERF.	vol-u-i, isti, it, &c.	vol-u-erim, eris, erit, &c.
PAST PERF.	vol-u-eram, eras, &c.	vol-u-issem, isses, &c.
FUT. PERF.	vol-u-ero, eris, &c.	
INFINITIVE.	PRES. vel-le, PERF. vol-u-isse.	PARTICIPLE PRES. vol-ens.

4. *Nolo* is compounded of *ne* or *non*, and *volo*.

Nol-o, nol-le, nol-u-i, *to be unwilling.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	Nol-o, non-vis, non-vult; nol-umus, non-vultis, nol-unt.	nol-im, nol-is, nol-it, nol-*i*mus, nol-*i*tis, nol-int.
IMPERF.	nol-ebam, ebas, &c.	nol-lem, nol-les, nol-let, nol-*le*mus, nol-*le*tis, nol-lent.
FUT.	nol-am, es, et, &c.	
PRES. PERF	nol-u-i, isti, it, &c.	nol-u-erim, eris, &c.
PT. PERF.	nol-u-eram, eras, &c.	nolu-issem, isses, &c.
FUT. PERF.	nol-u-ero, eris, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

	Sing.	*Plur.*		
PRES.	2. nol-i,	2. nol-*i*te,	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
FUT.	2. nol-*i*to, 3. nol-*i*to,	2. nol-*i*tote, 3. nol-unto,	PRES. nol-le, PERF. nol-u-isse.	PRES. nol-ens.

5. *Malo* is compounded of *magis*, more, and *volo*.

malo, mal-le, mal-u-i, *to prefer, to be more willing.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	mal o, ma vis, ma vult.	mal im, mal is, mal it.
	mal umus, ma vultis, mal unt.	mal imus, mal itis, mal int.
IMPERF.	mal ebam, -ebas, &c.	mal lem, mal les, mal let.
		mal lemus, mal letis, mal lent.
FUT.	mal am, -es, -et, &c.	
PRES. PERF.	mal u i, -isti, -it, &c.	mal u erim, -eris, -erit, &c.
PAST PERF.	mal u eram, -eras, &c.	mal u issem, -isses, &c.
FUT. PERF.	mal u ero, -eris, &c.	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. malle. PERF. mal-u-isse.

6. *Fer-o* is originally a verb of the third conjugation, which became irregular by syncopation; as, *fers* for *fer-is*; *fer-re* for *fer-e-re*, &c. The perfect and supine-stems are taken from the obsolete *tul-o*, (whence *tollo*,) and *tla-o*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Fer-o, fer-re, tul-i, lat-um, *to carry.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Pres.	fer o, fers, fert.	fer am, -es, &c.	
	fer imus, -tis, -unt.		2. fer.
Imperf.	fer ebam, -ebas, &c.	fer rem, -res, -ret.	2. fer te.
		fer remus, -retis, -rent	
Fut.	fer am, -es, &c.		2. fer to, 3. to, 2. -tote, 3. -unto.
Pres. Perf.	tul i, -isti, &c.	tul erim, -eris, &c.	
Past Perf.	tul eram, -eras, &c.	tul issem, -isses, &c.	
Fut. Perf.	tul ero, -eris, &c.		

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	GER. fer endi.
Pres.	fer re,	fer ens,	
Fut.	lat urus esse.	lat urus.	SUPINE. { lat um, lat u.
Perf.	tul isse.		

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fer-or, fer-*ri*, lat-us, *to be carried.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Pres.	fer or, ris *or* re, tur, fer imur, &c.	fer ar, -*aris*, &c.	2. fer re. 2. fer imini.
Imperf.	fer ebar, -*ebaris*, &c.	fer rer, -*reris or* rere, retur. fer remur, -*remini*, -rentur.	
Fut.	fer ar, -*eris*, &c.		2. fer tor, 3. fer tor. 2. (fer *emini*) 3. fer untor.
Pres. Perf.	lat us sum, &c.	lat us sim, &c.	
Past Perf.	lat us eram, &c.	lat us essem, &c.	
Fut. Perf.	lat us ero, &c.		

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
Pres.	fer ri.	
Fut.	lat um iri.	fer endus.
Perf.	lat us esse *or* fuisse.	latus.

7 Fi-o is used as the passive of *facio*. It is originally an intransitive verb of the 4th conjugation, using only those parts formed from the present-stem. It differs from other verbs of the 4th conjugation only in not absorbing *e* in the infinitive pres. and subj. imperf.

Fi-o, fi-eri, fact-us, *to be done, to be made, to become.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Pres.	fio, fis, fit. fimus, fitis, fiunt.	fi am, as, &c.	fi. fite.
Imperf.	fi ebam, -ebas, &c.	fi erem, -eres, &c.	
Fut.	fi am, -es, &c.		
Pres. Perf.	fact us sum, &c.	fact us sim, &c.	
Past Perf.	fact us eram, &c.	fact us essem, &c	
Fut. Perf.	fact us ero, &c.		

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
Pres.	fi eri.	
Fut.	fact um iri.	fac i endus.
Perf.	fact us esse *or* fuisse.	fact us.

8. Ed-ere, *to eat*, is a regular verb of the third conjugation; but in addition to the regular tense forms, it has some forms similar to the corresponding tense forms of *esse*, to be, viz.:

	INDICATIVE-PRES.	SUBJUNCTIVE-IMPERF.
S.	ed o, ed is, ed it, *or* es, *or* est.	ed erem, ed eres, ed eret, *or* essem, *or* esses, *or* esset.
P.	ed imus, ed itis, ed unt, *or* estis.	ed eramus, ed eratis, ed erent, *or* essemus, *or* essetis, *or* essent.

	IMPERATIVE.			INFINITIVE-PRES.
Pres. S.	ed e, *or* es.	*P.* ed ite, *or* este.		ed ere, *or* esse.
			PASSIVE.	
Fut. S.	ed ito, *or* esto.	*P.* ed-*itote*, *or* esitote, edunto.	*Indic. Pres.*	ed itur, *or* estur.
			Subj. Imp.	ed eretur, *or* essetur

9. *Ire*, to go, in most of its parts has the endings of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, ire, ivi, itum, *to go.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Pres.	eo, is, it, imus, itis, eunt.	eam, eas, eat, eamus, &c.	i. ite.
Imperf.	ibam, ibas, ibat, ibamus, &c.	irem, ires, iret, iremus, &c.	
Fut.	ibo, ibis, ibit, ibimus, &c.		ito, ito, itote, eunto
Pres. Perf.	ivi, -isti, -it, ivimus, &c.	iverim, -eris, -erit, iverimus, &c.	
Past Perf.	iveram, -eras, -erat, iveramus, &c.	ivissem, -isses, -isset, ivissemus, &c.	
Fut. Perf.	ivero, -eris, &c.		

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	GERUND.
Pres.	ire.	iens (*gen.* euntis.)	eundi.
Fut.	iturus esse.	iturus.	eundo, &c.
Perf.	ivisse.	Supin. itum, itu.	

10. *Quire*, to be able, and *nequire*, to be unable, are inflected like *ire*, but they have no imperative or gerund, and their participles are rarely used. They have some passive forms.

11. For the conjugation of *esse*, see § 100.

Like *esse* are conjugated its compounds, except *prosum* and *possum*.

12. *Prosum*, inserts a *d*, to relieve the pronunciation, wherever the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

Ind. Pres. *pro*-sum, *prod*-es, *prod*-est, &c.
" *Imp.* *prod*-eram, *prod*-eras, *prod*-erat, &c.

13. *Possum* is compounded of *pot*, (stem of potis) *able*, and *sum*, *t* before *s* passing into *s*. The *potis* is sometimes written separately, and is then usually indeclinable.

Possum, posse, potu i, *I can I am able.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres.	*pos* sum, *pot* es, *pot* est, *pos* sumus, pot *estis*, *pos* sunt.	*pos* sim, *pos* sis, *pos* sit, *pos simus*, pos *sitis*, *pos* sint.
Imperf.	*pot* eram, *pot* eras, *pot* erat, pot *eramus*, &c.	*pos* sem, *pos* ses, *pos* set, pos *semus*, pos *setis*, *pos* sent.
Fut.	*pot* ero, *pot* eris, *pot* erit, pot *erimus*, *-eritis*, -erunt.	
Perf.	*potu* i, -isti, -it, *potu* imus, &c.	potu erim, -eris, -erit, &c.
Past Perf.	potu eram, eras, erat, potu *eramus*, &c.	potu *issem*, -isses, isset, &c.
Fut. Perf.	potu ero, -eris, -erit, potu *erimus*, &c.	INFINITIVE. Pres. posse. Perf. potu isse.

The participial form *potens*, is used only as an adjective.

§ 112. EXERCISE 46.

Pueri per silvam densam *ibant*. Imperatores clari captivos veneno necare nolunt. Ædui erudelitatem Ariovisti, Germanorum regis, ferre non potuerunt. Consul urbem defendere non poterit. Cæsar hieme opus confieere conabitur. Princeps per amicos potens fiebat. Cæsar, eum iis legionibus quas ex hibernis eduxerat, in Galliam ire contendit (*hastened.*) In hac civitate sunt tria millia (§ 64, 6) hominum (§ 58, 3) qui arma ferre possunt. Imperator a militibus rex (§ 67, 3) factus est. Nemo uno die sapiens fieri potest. Non quivis orator præstantissimus fieri potest.

Poeta nascitur, non fit. Superbia nobilitatis a plebe ferri non potest.

Translate into Latin.

Who can bear the cruelty of such a king? Can any one (*numquis*) bear the insolence (*insolentia*) of this slave? Who is willing to be slain by a robber? We are unwilling to hold the farmer's bull by the horns. The citizens are unwilling to give their gold to that fellow (§ 83, 2.). Who is unwilling to become rich and powerful? Some of the citizens will be unwilling to bear arms. The prudent leader will not go into the enemy's country (*fines*). Cicero was made consul by the best of the citizens. This boy will become a distinguished poet in a few years. Who can suffer so great a punishment?

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 113. 1. Defective verbs are such as want some of their parts.

2. There are many verbs which are not used in all the tenses. The following list contains such as are most defective:

Odi, *I hate.*	Fari, *to speak.*	Cedo, *tell*, or *give me.*
Cœpi, *I have begun.*	Quæso, *I beseech.*	Confit, *it is done.*
Memini, *I remember.*	Ave, Salve, *hail.*	Defit, *it is wanting.*
Aio, Inquam, *I say.*	Apage, *begone.*	Infit, *he begins.*
		Ovat, *he rejoices.*

Rem. 1. *Odi, cœpi,* and *memini* are used for the most part, in the perfect tenses, and hence are sometimes called *preteritive* verbs.

(The pupil will make paradigms by adding the endings of the perfect tenses to the stems *od-*, *cœp-*, and *memin-*.)

Rem. 2. *Odi* has also the participles *os-us*, and *os-urus*, (both active in sense,) and the deponent form *os-us sum*.

Rem. 3. *Cœpi* has also *cœptus* and *cœpturus*.

Rem. 4. *Memini* has the imperative forms *memento*, *mementote*.

Rem. 5. The tenses of *odi* and *memini*, though perfect in form, express incomplete action; thus, *oderam*, I hated; *odero*, I shall hate; *memini*, I have kept in mind, *therefore* I remember; *memineram*, I remembered. The perfects *novi* and *consuevi* have a similar meaning; thus, *nosco*, I find out, *novi*, I have found out, *I know*; *consuesco*, I accustom myself; *consuevi*, I am accustomed.

3. *Ind. Pres.* ai-o*, ais, ait, ——, ——, ai-unt.*

Ind. Imperf. ai-ebam, ai-ebas, &c.
Subj. Pres. —— ai-as, ai-at, ——; ——, ai-ant.
Imper. Pres. ai. *Part.* ai-ens.

4. *Ind. Pres.* inquam, inquis, inquit, inquimus, &c.
Ind. Imperf. ——, —, inquiebat *or* inquibat, —, —, inqui-ebant.
Ind. Futnre. inqui-es, inqui-et. ——, ——, ——.
Ind. Pres. Perf. —, inqu-is-ti, inquit, —, —, —.
Sub. Pres. —, inqui-as, inqui-at, —, inqui-atis, inqui-ant.
Imper. —, inque, inquito.

Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Participles.
5. *Pres.* —, —, fatur.	——	fare,	fantis, &c. *without nom.*
Fut. fabor, —, fabitur.	——	Infin.	fatus, fandus;
Pres-Perf. fatus sum, &c.	fatus sim, &c.	fari.	Gerund, fandi, &c.
Past-Perf. fatus eram, &c.	fatus essem, &c.		Supine, fatu.

Some other forms are used in the compounds, though all of them are defective.

6. *Ind. Pres.* Quæso, —, quæs-it, quæs-umus, —, —.
Inf. Pres. Quæs-ere.
7. *Imper.* av-e, av-eto, av-ete. *Inf.* av-ere.
8. *Imper.* salv-e, salv-ete, salv-eto.
Inf. salv-ere. *Ind. Fut.* salv-ebis.
9. *Imper.* apage; an old form, used as an interjection.
10. *Imper. 2d. sing.* cedo; *pl.* cette, *contracted for* cedite.
11. *Ind. Pres.* confit. *Fut.* confiet.
Subj. Pres. confi-at. *Imperf.* confi-eret. *Inf. Pres.* con-fieri.
12. *Ind. Pres.* defit, de-fiunt. *Fut.* de-fiet.
Subj. Pres. de-fiat. *Inf. Pres.* de-fi-eri.
13. *Ind. Pres.* in-fit, in-fiunt.
14. *Ind. Pres.* ov-at. *Subj. Pres.* ov-et. *Imperf.* ov-aret.

*i between two vowels is pronounced like *y*; *a-ye*, *a-yunt*, *a-yebam*.

15. To these may be added,

forem, fores, foret, —, —, forent, same as *essem.*

Inf. fore, same as *futurus esse.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 114. 1. Verbs used only in the third person, and not admitting of a *personal* subject, are called *Impersonal.*

2. An infinitive, or a sentence used as a noun, is usually the subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice. In English the pronoun *it* usually stands before the verb, as, *Caium scribere delectat, it* delights Caius to write.

3. The various tenses of impersonal verbs are formed by adding the endings of the third person singular to the proper tense stem.

ENDINGS.

	1st Conj.		2d Conj.		3d Conj.		4th Conj.	
	Inf. Pres. are.		*Inf. Pres.* ere.		*Inf. Pres.* ere.		*Inf. Pres.* ire.	
	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.
Pres.	-at.	-et.	et.	-eat.	-it.	-at.	-it.	-iat.
Imp.	-abat.	-aret.	-ebat.	-eret.	-ebat.	-eret.	-iebat.	-iret.
Fut.	abit.		-ebit.		-et.		-iet.	

Ind. Pres. Perf. -it; *Past Perf.* -erat: *Fut. Perf.* -erit
Subj. " " -erit; " " -isset. *Inf. Perf.* -isse.

(The pupil will add these endings to the stems:

1st. conj. juv-. [*perf* juv-] *of* juv-at, *it pleases, delights.*
2nd. " dec-, [*perf.* dec-u-] *of* dec-et, *it becomes.*
3rd. " conting-, [*perf.* contig-] *of* conting-it, *it happens.*
4th. " even-, [*perf.* even-] *of* evenit, *it turns out, happens.*)

4. Many verbs, not strictly impersonal, are used impersonally; as, *delectat,* it delights.

5. Most *intransitive*, and many *transitive* verbs are used impersonally in the passive voice, the agent being either omitted, or put in the ablative with the preposition a *or* ab; as, *Helvetii fortiter pugnaverunt*; pass., *ab Helvetiis fortiter pugnatum est*, the Helvetians fought bravely, *or* it was fought bravely by the Helvetians.

§ 115. EXERCISE 47.

Pugn-are, *to fight.*
Consul-ere, (consulu-, consult-,) *to consult.*
Ven-ire, (ven-, vent-,) *to come.*
Ire, (§ 111, 9,) *to go.*
Vesper, -er-i, *evening.*
Calamitas, -at-is, *disaster.*
Acriter, (adv.) *actively, fiercely.*
Ab utrisque, *by both parties.*
Utrimque, (adv.) *on both sides.*
Diu, (adv.) *a long time.*
In-ferre, (intul, illat-,) *to bring upon, inflict.* See § 111, 6.

Rem. Impersonal verbs which are *transitive* in meaning, have a direct object in the accusative.

Translate into English and analyze.

Liberos decet parentes suos amare. Regem non decet leges civitatis violare. Bella magna gerere Romanos delectabat. Diu et acriter ab utrisque pugnatum* est. Ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum* erat. Eodem die quo (§ 167) in fines Sequanorum ventum est,* principes Galliæ ad eum convenerunt. A consulibus de republica consultum est.* Cantum avium audire poetam juvat. Te non decet nobis bellum inferre. Delectat-ne te maximas (§ 72, 5,) calamitates reipublicæ intulisse?

Translate into Latin.

It becomes masters to give food to their servants. It becomes no one (*nemo*) to do an injury. It delights this wicked chief to burn prisoners with fire. It was fought fiercely by both parties from the fourth hour till (*to*) sunset. The noble chief will consult (*express it impersonally*)

*114, 5.

concerning the safety of the commonwealth. It does not become a judge to receive a bribe (*pecuniam*). This wicked centurion has brought a great disaster upon the army.

PARTICLES.

§ 116. Those parts of speech which are not inflected, are called *particles*. They are *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

ADVERBS.

§ 117. 1. An adverb is a word used to limit the meaning of a verb, adjective, or another adverb. Some adverbs also limit nouns.

2. In respect to form adverbs are *primitive* or *derivative*.

3. In respect to meaning adverbs may be divided into several classes; as,

TEMPORAL, denoting time; as, *hodie*, to-day; *cras*, to-morrow.
LOCAL, denoting place; as, *ibi*, there; *inde*, thence.
MODAL, denoting manner; as, *bene*, well; *male*, badly.
NEGATIVE; as, *non*, not; *ne-quidem*, not even.

4. Some adverbs are also correlative, and such are derived from pronouns.

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROG.	DEFINITE.
ibi, *there*.	ubi, *where*.	ubi, *where?*	alicubi, *somewhere*.
ibidem, *just there*.	ubicunque, *wherever*.		ubique, *everywhere*.
inde, *thence*.	unde, *whence*.		ubivis, *wherever you please*
indĕdem.	undecumque.	unde?	alicunde, undique, undevis.
eo, *to this place*.	quo, *whither*.	quo?	aliquo, quovis.
eodem.	quoquo.		quolibet.
	quocumque.		
tum, *then*.	cum *or* quum, *when*.	———	———
———	quando, *when*.	quando?	aliquando.
	quandoque.		quandolibet
	quandocumque.		

5. Derivative adverbs are formed for the most part from adjectives and participles by adding *-e* to the stem if the primitive be of the second declension; and *-iter*, (sometimes *-ter*) if the primitive be of the third declension; as, *liber*, free;—adv. *liber-e*, freely; *brevis*, short; *breviter*, shortly.

6. Some adverbs are derived from nouns by adding *-tus* or *-tim* to the stem with a connecting vowel; as, *cœl-i-tus* (*cœl-um*) from heaven; *greg-a-tim*, (*grex*) in flocks.

7 Cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are used as adverbs; as, *noctu*, by night; *multum*, much; *multo*, by much; *eo*, (old accusative, for *eon*,) to that place.

EXERCISE 48.

§ 118. 1. *Rule of Syntax.* Intransitive verbs, though they do not admit of a direct object, may have a remote object in the dative.

2. *Rule of Syntax.* The dative expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage anything is, or is done. (Dative of ADVANTAGE or DISADVANTAGE.)

3. *Rule of Position.* The adverb usually precedes the word it limits; but *fere* usually stands between the adjective and noun; as, *omnes fere homines*, almost all men.

NOTE. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin.

Vocabulary.

Fort-iter, (fort-is,) *bravely.*
Celer-iter, (celer,) *swiftly.*
Beat-e, (beatus,) *happily.*
Ben-e, [bon-us,] *well.*
Fere, *almost.*
Greg-*a*tim, [grex,] *in flocks.*
Paul-*a*tim, [paul-us,] *by degrees.*
Facil-e, [facil-is,] *easily.*
Sæpe, *frequently.*
Ne—quidem, [the word which it limits always placed between,] *not even.*
Audac-ter, [audax,] *boldly.*
Gener-*a*tim, [genus,] *by tribes.*
Repens-e, [repens,] *suddenly.*

Accēd-ere, [access- accēss-] *to come up.*
Viv-ere, [vix- vict-] *to live.*
Constitu-ere, [constitu- constitut-] *to establish, to post.*
Curr-ere, [cucurr- curs-] *to run.*
Per-frīg-ere, [frēg- fract-] *to break through.*
Phalanx, phalang-is, *phalanx.*
Par-ēre, [paru- parit-] intr., *to obey.*
Indulg-ere, [indulg- indult-] intr. *to indulge.*
Noc-ere, [nocu- nocit-] intr., *to hurt.*
Præcipu-e, [præcipu-us,] *especially.*
Cred-ere, [credid- credit,] intr., *to believe.*
Prō-curr-ere, [-cucurr- & -curr-, curs-] *to run forward.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Nostri totum diem fortiter pugnaverant. Hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt. Qui bene vivit (§87.7,) beate vivit. Omnia fere animalia gregatim currunt. Imperator paulatim exercitum in unum locum conducebat. Nostri facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Filium licet patri suo parere. Galli cum Germanis sæpe contendebant. Ne Cæsar quidem hanc civitatem vincere potest. Milites ad muros oppidi audacter accesserunt. Tum Germani copias suas generatim constituerunt. Cæsar huic legioni precipue indulserat. Quis nostrum (§58.3,) isti (§82.2,) credit? Num (§80.3,) bonum delectat aliis nocere?

Translate into Latin.

To live well is to live happily. Wicked men always injure (*nocere*) themselves. Our men ran forward suddenly and swiftly, and easily routed the enemy's footmen. The cavalry of the Thracians came up boldly to the very (*ipse*) gates of the city. I will not believe even the consul himself. The prudent general was unwilling to lead his army through the by-paths of the forest. This boy can easily swim across a very deep river. The enemy will not attempt to break through our line-of-battle.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 119. Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. The comparative is like the neuter comparative of the adjective; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *us* into *e*; as, *facile, facilius. facillime; celeriter, celerius, celerrime.*

Rem. 1. The superlative of the adverb sometimes ends in *o* or *um*; as, *meritissimo, primum.*

Rem. 2. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, that of the adverb is so likewise; as, *bene, melius, optime; male, pejus, pessime; parum, minus, minime; multum, plus, plurimum; prius, primo* or *primum; ocius, ocissime; deterius, deterrime; potius, potissime* or *potissimum; merito, meritissimo; satis, satius. Magis, maxime,* has no positive; and *nuper, nuperrime,* has no comparative.

Rem. 3. Notice also the following: *prope, propius, proxime; diu, diutius, diutissime; sæpe, sæpius, sæpissime; secus, secius.*

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 120. Prepositions express the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word.

1. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative:

ad, *to, towards, at.*
adversus, } *against,*
adversum, } *towards.*
apud, *at, with.*
circa, } *around.*
circum. }
citer. *about, near.*
cis, } *on this side.*
citra, }
contra, *against.*
erga, *towards.*
extra, *without, beyond.*
infra, *under, beneath.*
inter, *between, among.*
intra, *within.*
juxta, *next to.*
ob, *for, on account of.*
penes, *in the power of.*
per, *through.*
pone, *behind.*
post, *after, since.*
præter, *past, besides.*
prope, *near.*
propter, *on account of,*
secundum, *after, next to, according to.*
supra, *above.*
trans, *over, beyond.*
ultra, *beyond.*

2. Twelve prepositions are followed by the ablative.

a, ab, abs, } *from, after, by.*
absque, *but for.*
clam, *without the knowledge of.*
coram, *in presence of.*
cum, *with.*
de, *down from, after, concerning.*
e, ex, } *out of.*
palam, *in presence of.*
præ, *before, in comparison.*
pro, *with.*
pro, *before, for, instead of.*
sine, *without.*
tenus, *up to.*

3. Four prepositions are followed by the accusative, when *motion to a place* is implied; the ablative, when *rest in a place* is implied:

in, *in, on; into, upon.*
sub, *under, near.*
super, *over, above.*
subter, *under, beneath.*

Rem. 1. *Clam* is sometimes followed by the accusative.

Rem. 2. *Tenus* is placed after its case; and *cum* is annexed to the ablative of the substantive personal and relative pronouns.

Rem. 3. *A* and *e* are used only before consonants; *ab* and *ex*, before vowels and consonants.

The pupil will learn the various other meanings of the prepositions from observation.

§ 121. EXERCISE 49.

*Bene, [adv.], *well.*
*Male, [adv.], *badly, unforeseen, ...*
*Parum, [adv.], *little.*
*Magis, [adv.], *more.*
*Longe, [adv.], *far.*
Prope, [adv.], *near.*
Placere, [placu-, placit-,] *to please.*
Displicere, [plicu-, plicit-,] *to displease.*
Dubitatio, -on-is, *doubt.*
Ullus, a, um, [§ 56,] *any.*
Neque, (conj.) *and—not, neither.*
Fugere, (-io, fug-, fugit-,) *to flee.*
Commeare, *to go back and forth.*
Desistere, (destit-, destit-,) *to cease.*
Abesse, (§ 111, 11,) *to be away, to be distant.*
Cultus, -us, *civilization.*
Humanitas, -tat-is, -is, *refinement.*
Conjicere, [-io, conjec-, conject-,] *to hurt.*
Telum, i, *a dart.*
Consilium, i, *wisdom, prudence.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Omnium qui in Gallia habitant, fortissimi sunt Belgæ. A cultu atque humanitate provinciæ longissime absunt. Ad eos mercatores minime sæpe commeant. Non minus fortes fuerunt Galli quam Romani. Horas (§ 153) sex acriter utrimque pugnatum erat (§ 114, 5), neque hostes

* See § 119.

nostrorum impetum diutius sustinere potuerunt. Equites Ariovisti propius accesserunt, ac lapides tela-que in nostros conjecerunt. Ariovistus magis consilio quam virtute Eduos vicit.

Translate into Latin.

Without any doubt virtue is a more excellent thing (*præstantius*) than gold. This song displeases me (dative, §118, 1) more than that (one) pleases me. The Belgians were farther away than the Æduans from the civilization and refinement of the Roman province. Through the whole night the enemy did not cease to flee. The boys came up nearer, and boldly hurled stones and darts upon the fierce wild boar. Which of us can fight without arms? Orgetorix was far the noblest and richest (man) among (*apud*) the Helvetians.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ 122. Most prepositions are used as prefixes, in composition with other words. The following are called *inseparable* prepositions, because they are never found alone:

ambi, *or* amb, (ambo) *around, about.*	re, *or* red, *again, back.*
di, *or* dis, *asunder.*	se, *apart, aside.*
con,* *together.*	ve, *not.*

EXERCISE 50.

Haud, [adv.], *not.* Generally used with adverbs.
Inter se, *among themselves, with one another, from one another.*
Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic.*
Philosophus, i, *philosopher.*
Reliquus, a, um, *remaining.*
Belgæ reliqui, *the rest of the Belgians.*
Aer, aer-is, *the air.*
Cœlum, i, [*pl.* i *or* a.] *heaven.*
Jub-ere, [juss-, jus-,] *to order.*
Con-ven-ire, [-ven-, -vent-,] *to come together.*
Con-duc-ere, [con-dux-, -duct-,] *to lead together.*
Dif-ferre, [dis-tul-, di-lat-,] *to defer.*
Dis-sent-ire, [dissens-, dissens-,] *to disagree, differ in opinion.*
Con-jung-ere, [conjunx-, conjunct-,] *to join.*
Con-jur-are, *to swear together, conspire.*
Se-ced-ere, [secess-, secess-,] *to secede.*
Se-cern-ere, [secrev-, secret-,] *to separate.*

*Always written *cum*, when standing alone.

Translate into English and analyze.

Magister hunc puerum haud minus quam filium suum amat. Cæsar omnes Galliæ principes ad se convenire (§ 85, 2) jussit. Germani non multum (§ 66, 2) a Gallica consuetudine differunt. Exercitus unum in locum a legato paulatim conducebatur. Omnes Belgæ in armis sunt, Germani-que, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxerunt. Remi contra populum Romanum cum Belgis reliquis non conjuraverant. Nec eclum a terris secernit. Philosophi de natura deorum inter se semper dissenserunt.

Translate into Latin.

The general ordered the first line (*acies*) to retreat to (*in*) the mountain. The common people frequently seceded from the nobility. The shepherds had separated the sheep from the kids. The Remians differed in opinion from the rest of the Belgians. These wicked citizens are conspiring against the republic. The Germans will not easily break through our line. The enemy's forces are not far from the town.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 123. Conjunctions connect words and sentences. They are commonly divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE, which connect things that are to be considered together—(*and*); they are, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *etiam*, *quoque*, *item*, and *itidem*.

Rem. 1. *Et* connects things which are independent of each other, and of equal importance; as, *M. Pisone et M. Mesala consulibus*. *Et—et* is to be translated *both—and*; as, et *rex* et *regina*, *both* the king *and* the queen. It sometimes means *also*.

Rem. 2. *Que* (enclitic) introduces a mere appendage, the two con-

stituting but one idea, and is rather adjunctive than copulative; as, *gladiis pilisque—offensive armor.*

Rem. 3. *Atque*, (used before vowels or consonants,) contracted into *ac* (used before consonants only,) is compounded of *ad* and *que*, and means *and in addition:* it usually introduces something of greater importance; as, *in hostes impetum fecit atque eos fugavit,*—— and routed them too. *Cognostine hos versus? Ac memoriter.* "—— and that too by heart." This peculiar force is often lost in *ac*, and it is used alternately with *et;* it is preferred in subdivisions, the main propositions being connected by *et. Difficile est tantam causam et diligentia consequi, et memoria complecti, et oratione expromere et voce ac viribus sustinere.*

Rem. 4. *Neque* or *nec*, and not, compounded of *ne* and *que*, when repeated, is translated neither—nor. *Et non* is used instead when only one word, and not a whole sentence, is to be negatived; as *patior et* non moleste *fero. Et non* is frequently used also when *et* preeedes. *Nec non, neque non*, the two negatives destroying each other, is equivalent to *et;* but is used, in classical prose, only to eonnect sentences, and the two words are separated.

Rem. 5. *Etiam* (*et-jam*), also, even, has a wider meaning than *quoque*, and adds a new circumstance, while *quoque* is used when a thing of a similar kind is added.

Rem. 6. The copulative conjunctions are frexuently omitted in animated discourse. *Copias suas in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit.* This omission is called *asyndeton* (not-tied-together.)

2. DISJUNCTIVE, which connect things that are to be considered separately, (*either, or*) *;* they are *aut, vel, ve, sive, seu*, and the interrogative particle *an.*

Rem. 7 *Aut*, either, or, expresses an essential difference in things, and ordinarily implies that one thing excludes another; as, aut *vivit* aut *mortuus est*, he is *either* living *or* dead. *Aut* and *ve* serve to continue a negation, where in Euglish we use *nor;* as, *Verres non Honori* aut *Virtuti vota debebat.*

Rem. 8. *Vel*, on the other hand, (akin to *velle*,) indicates a difference of expression merely, and is used where either of two or more

things may be taken indifferently. *Conjunctis tectorum oppidum* vel *urbs appellatur*,—a town *or* city (whichever you please.) Vel *imperatore*, vel *milite me utimini*. When one of the alternatives is omitted, *vel* often has the sense of *even*. *Volo ut opperiare sex dies modo. Vel sex menses opperibor*, "I wish you to wait six days only."—"I will wait *even* six months," i. e. six days or six months, if you choose. *Ve* is merely *vel* apocopated.

Rem. 9. *Sive, seu, or if, whether, or*, is strictly either conditional or interrogative, and when used as a simple disjunctive always implies a doubt, at least in the earlier writers. Thus, Cæsar, B. G. Sive *casu*, sive *deorum immortalium providentia*. Sive *timore perterriti*, sive *ejus salutis inducti*: ("perhaps by one, perhaps by the other,—I do not know by which.")

3. ADVERSATIVE, which express opposition of thought, (*but*); they are *sed*, *autem*, *verum*, *vero*, *at* and its compounds, *tamen* and its compounds, and *ceterum*.

Rem. 10. *Sed* denotes strong and direct opposition. *Vera dico, sed nequidquam, quoniam non vis credere. Non tertia, sed homo.*

Rem. 11. *Autem* adds something that is different, without setting aside what precedes: (*on the contrary, however, on the other hand, but.*) *Gyges a nulle videbatur: ipse autem omnia videbat.* Frequently it simply marks a transition, or adds a more important circumstance, (*moreover, furthermore*).

Rem. 12. *Verum*, (*as to the truth, in fact, but,*) is nearly the same in meaning as *sed*. It is strengthened by *enim*, *vero*, *enimvero*; (*but indeed, but in fact, but assuredly.*)

Rem. 13. *Vero*, (*in truth, assuredly, but, however,*) does not express as strong opposition as *verum*, just as *autem* is weaker than *sed*. *Ubi per exploratores Cæsar certior factus est tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse.*—"That the fourth part, *however*, &c."

Rem. 14. *At* does not, like *sed*, alter or set aside what precedes, but expresses a contrast, often a strong one. *Brevis a natura nobis vita data est, at memoria bene redditæ vitæ sempiterna.* It frequently follows *si* in the sense of *at least*: *Si non sapientissimus at amicis-*

simus. It frequently introduces an objection, and *enim* is then often added to assign a reason for the objection: "at *sumus*," *inquiunt*, "civitatis principes."

Rem. 15. *Atqui* admits what precedes, but opposes something else to it. *Magnum narras, vix credibile:* atqui *sic habet;*—"*yet* such is the fact." It is used in hypothetical syllogysms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided. *Quodsi virtutes sunt pares inter se, pari etiam vitia esse necesse est:* atqui *pares esse virtutes facile potest perspici.*

Rem. 16. *Ceterum*, literally, "as to the rest," is frequently used in the sense of *sed.*

4. CAUSAL, which express a cause or reason (*for, because*); they are, *nam, namque, enim, etenim, quia, quod, quaniam, quippe, quam, quando, quando-quidem, siquidem.*

Rem. 17. *Nam, namque, enim,* and *etenim,* "for." are rather *corroborative* or *confirmatory* than causal conjunctions; i. e. they adduce a *proof* rather than state a *cause.*

Nam shows the grounds of a preceding assertion: so also *enim*, except that the assertion must frequently be supplied by the mind. *Enim* is originally only a corroborative adverb, *truly, certainly, to-be-sure, indeed.* In *namque* and *etenim, que* and *et* repeat the preceding assertion, while *nam* and *enim* introduce the proof.

Rem. 18. *Quod* (acc. sing. neut. of *qui*) means originally *with respect to what, in what respect, in that;* and hence its causal meaning, *in as much as, because.* Quod *omnis Gallia ad septentrionem vergit, maturæ sunt hiemes.* It is very often preceded by *propterea, hoc, ob hanc causam,* and similar causal expressions.

Rem. 19. *Quod* is very often used merely to connect a sentence with that which precedes, and may be translated "*and*" or "*but*," especially with *si, nisi,* &c. In such cases it is a relative pronoun, accusative of *limitation,* (§ 155.) Quod *si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet.* Quod *si furore et amentia impulsus bellum intulisset.*

Rem. 20. *Quia* (acc. pl. neut. of *qui*) has the same origin as *quod*, but is purely causal (*because,*) and never has the sense of *that*, or *in that*, like *quod.* When contrasted with *quod,* it expresses a real mo-

tive or reason, while *quod* expresses merely an alleged or pretended reason; (*non* quod ——, *sed* quia.)

Rem. 21. *Quoniam*, (*quum—jam*,) introduces a well-known reason, *since then, since as everybody knows.*

Rem. 22. *Quippe* is originally a corroborative adverb, (*indeed;* and hence derives its causal meaning. It is frequently united with relative words to express a subjective reason.

Rem. 23. In *quum*, *quando*, *quandoquidem*, the causal idea is derived from that of time; (compare the English *since*.) *Siquidem* is conditional originally, (though the antepenult has become short.)

Antiquissimum e doctis genus est poetarum, siquidem (if indeed, as every one admits,—since,) *Homerus fuit et Hesiodus ante Romam conditam.*

5. CONCLUSIVE, which express a conclusion or inference, (*therefore*); they are, *ergo*, *eo*, *ideo*, *idcirco*, *igitur*, *itaque*, *proinde*, *propterea*, and the relative words *quapropter*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, *quocirca*, *unde.*

Rem. 24. *Ergo* and *igitur* express a *logical* consequence, (*therefore,*) while *itaque* expresses a *natural* consequence, (*and so.*) *Ergo* and *eo* are causal ablatives, and all the other conclusives may be considered adverbial expressions of cause or result, limiting the predicate.

6. FINAL, which express purpose or result,—end, (*that, in order that*); they are, *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus*, *neve*, *neu.*

7. CONDITIONAL, which express a condition (*if, unless*); they are, *si*, *sin*, *nisi*, or *ni*, *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo.*

8. CONCESSIVE, which express something granted (*although*); they are, *etsi*, *quanquam*, *tametsi*, *tamenetsi*, *etiamsi*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibet*; *ut* and *quum*, in the sense of *although.*

TEMPORAL, expressing time, (*when, as soon as, after, before*); they are, *quum, ut, ubi, postquam, postcaquam, antequam, priusquam, quando, simulac, simul, dum, donec, quoad.*

0. COMPARATIVE, expressing comparison (*than, as*); they are, *quam, sicut, velut, prout, tanquam, quasi, utsi, acsi,* with *ac* and *atque*, in the sense of *as* or *than.*

Rem 25. The following conjunctions stand always at the beginning of a sentence, viz.: *et, etenim, ac, at, atque, atqui, neque, nec, ut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, verum,* and the relatives *quare, quocirca, quamobrem.*

Rem. 26. *Enim, autem,* and *vero* are placed after the first word, or the second, if the first two belong together; rarely after three or more words.

Rem. 27. The other conjunctions usually stand at the beginning, unless some word or expression is especially emphatic, and is therefore placed first in the sentence.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ 124. Interjections are used to express strong or sudden motion; as, *Væ nobis!* Woe to us!

SYNTAX.

§ 125. 1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words; as, *snow melts.*

3. Every sentence consists of

(a.) A *predicate*; i. e. that which is *declared*;

(b.) A *subject*; i. e. that of which the declaration is made.

4. The predicate is a verb alone, (as *melts*, in the above

example,) or the verb *esse, to be,* with a noun, adjective, or participle; as, *nix gelida est,* snow is cold.

5. The subject is a noun, or some word or phrase used as a noun, and may be known by asking the question *who?* or *what?* with the predicate; as, *John runs.* (*Who* runs? *John.*) *To play is pleasant.* (*What* is pleasant? *To play.*)

6. The subject and predicate may stand alone, or each may have words or sentences limiting its meaning. Thus, *Prima luce, quum mons a Tito Labieno teneretur, idem Considius qui cum exploratoribus præmissus erat, equo admisso, ad Cæsarem accurrit. At daylight, when the mountain was held by Titus Labienus, the same Considius who had been sent forward with the scouts, runs to Cæsar with his horse at full speed.*

Here the leading thought is *Considius accurrit, Considius runs.* The subject is limited by the adjective *idem,* and the adjective sentence, *qui—præmissus erat.* The predicate is limited by *prima luce,* designating the point of time when Considius ran; by *quum mons teneretur,* farther specifying the time or circumstances of the running; by *equo admisso,* participial sentence, expressing the manner of the running,—an adverbial limitation; and by *ad Cæsarem,* the point to which the running was directed.

7 A sentence consisting of a single subject, and a single predicate, is commonly called a *simple* sentence; and one which consists of *two or more* simple sentences combined, is commonly called a *compound* sentence.

AGREEMENT.

§ 126. RULE I. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

Rem. 1. (1.) If the subject consists of more than one, the verb is

lural; as, *Furor iraque mentem praecipitant*, Fury and rage hurry n my mind. Hence,

(a.) A collective noun *may* have a plural verb.

(b.) A noun connected to an ablative with *cum* often has a plural erb; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus postremam aciem* invadunt, Bocchus nd the footmen attack the rear.

(c. A plural verb is sometimes used with *uterque* and *quisque*.

(2.) But the verb often agrees with the nearest nominative, especially when the nouns denote things without life; as, *Mens, enim ratio, et consilium in senibus est*, For mind, and skill, and wisdom re in old men.

(3.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb takes ıe first person rather than the second, and the second rather than ıe third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and ullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

APPOSITION.

§ 127. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same erson or thing, is said to be in *apposition* with it.

RULE II. Nouns in apposition agree in case; as, *ugurtha rex*, Jugurtha the king.

Rem. 1. A noun in apposition often expresses character, purpose. me, cause, &c.; as, *Cicero* prætor *legem Manilian suasit*, consul *njurationem, Catalinæ oppressit; Cicero*, when prætor (or, as præ-r), *advocated the Manilian law*, when consul, &c.

Rem. 2. The personal pronoun is often omitted before a noun in)position with it; as, *Consul dixi*, I, the consul, have said.

Rem. 3. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is put in e plural; as, *Jugurtha et Bocchus, reges*, Jugurtha and Bocchus, ngs.

Rem. 4. The ablative is used in apposition with the name of a wn in the genitive; (see Rule XXXI. Exc.) as, *Corinthi, Achaiæ* be, at Corinth, city of Achaia.

Rem. 5. A noun may be in apposition with a sentence; as, *Cogi-oratorem institui*,—rem arduam; *Let him reflect that an orator is ining*,—a difficult thing.

Rem. 6. Expressions denoting the *parts* are often placed in apposition with a noun denoting the *whole*,—*Partitive apposition*,—as, *Onerariæ*, pars *maxima ad Ægimurum*,—*aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delatæ sunt*; the transports were carried, the greatest part to Ægimurum,—others, opposite the city itself. *Quisque* in partitive apposition with a noun is in the nominative; as, *Multis sibi* quisque *imperium petentibus*, While many were seeking power, each *for himself*.

Rem. 7. A proper name with *nomen* or *cognomen* may be, (a.) in the same case: as, *Nomen* Arcturus *mihi est*, *I have the name* Arcturus;—(b.) in the genitive; as, *Nomen* Areturi, &c.;—(c.) by attraction, in the dative, if the verb is followed by a dative: as, *Nomen* Arcturo *mihi est*, I have the name Arcturus.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. An adjective may limit the subject; as, *puella pulchra saltat*, the beautiful girl dances;—or it may form part of the predicate; as, *puella pulchra est*, the girl is beautiful. In either case

RULE III. Adjective words agree with the nouns to which they refer, in gender, number, and case.

Rem. 1. An adjective belonging to two or three nouns is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective is of that gender; as, *Lupus et agnus siti compulsi*. A wolf and a lamb compelled by thirst. When the nouns are of different genders. If

(a.) they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as, *Pater mihi et mater* mortui *sunt*, My father and mother are dead.

(b.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; *Ira et avaritia imperio* potentiora *erant*, Rage and avarice were stronger than government.

(c.) If names of living things and things without life are combined, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of the living being. *Numidæ atque signa militaria* obscurati *sunt*, The Numidians and their military standards were concealed. (Here the idea of *persons* is uppermost.) Inimica *sunt libera civitas et rex*, A free state and a king are *hostile things*.

Rem. 2. The adjective, however, often agrees with the nearest noun.

Rem. 3. An adjective word, especially in the predicate, often agrees with the *sense* of the noun rather than its form. (*constructio ad synesin.*) As, *Pars in flumen acti sunt.* Part were driven into the river.

Rem. 4. An adjective word in the predicate, instead of agreeing with the subject, often agrees

(a.) With a noun in apposition with the subject, (especially the words *urbs, oppidum*): as, *Corinthus, lumen Graeciae, extinctum est.* Corinth, the light of Greece, was destroyed. [put out.]

(b.) With a predicate noun; as, *Gens universa Veneti appellati.* The whole race were called *Veneti.*

Rem. 5. An adjective without a noun is often used as a noun or adverb.

Rem. 6. In general expressions an adjective in the predicate is often neuter: as, *Lupus triste est stabulis. The wolf is a sad thing to the folds.*

Rem. 7. A possessive pronoun, being equivalent to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, may have an adjective word in the genitive agreeing with it: as, *mea ipsius causa, for my own sake*;—or a noun in the genitive in apposition with it: as, *tuus, viri fortis, gladius.*

Rem. 8. The adjectives *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, intimus, infimus, imus, summus, supremus, reliquus,* and *cetera,* express the first part, middle part, &c.: as, *summus mons,* the top of the mountain.

Rem. 9. An adjective often agrees with the subject, but limits the predicate: as, Pronus *cecidit, he fell* headlong.

RELATIVES.

§ 129. RULE IV. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person: but its case depends upon the construction of the relative sentence. As,

Ego qui *scribo.*	*I* who *write.*
Vos qui *scribitis.*	*You* who *write.*
Puella quam *vidi.*	*The girl* whom *I saw.*

Rem. 1. The antecedent is so called because it usually goes before the relative sentence. But it also stands,

(a) In the relative sentence especially when this latter is emphatic: *In* quem *primum egressi sunt* locum, *Troja vocatur.* The place upon which *they first disembarked is called Troy.*

(b) Both in the principal and relative sentence; as *Erant omnino* itinera *duo, quibus* itineribus *domo exire possent.*

Rem. 2. The antecedent, especially when indefinite, is often omitted; as, *Qui bene vivit beate vivit.*

Rem. 3. ATTRACTION. The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent; as, *raptim* quibus *quisque poterat elatis.* The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; as, urbem *quam statuo vestra est.*

Rem. 4. The relative often agrees with a noun in apposition with the antecedent; as, *flumen* Rhenus, qui *agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit.*

Rem. 5. A relative or demonstrative usually agrees with a predicate noun after the verb *esse* or a verb of *naming, esteeming,* &c., instead of agreeing with the antecedent; as, *Thebæ,* quod *Bœotiæ* caput *est. Animal* quem *vocamus* hominem.

But if the predicate noun is a foreign word, the relative agrees with the antecedent: as, *genus hominum* quod Helotes *vocatur*

Rem. 6. A numeral, comparative, or superlative, which in English limits the antecedent, is usually placed in the relative sentence; as, *nocte quam in terris* ultimam *egit,* on the last *night which he spent on earth.* Other adjectives have sometimes a similar position.

Rem. 7. The relative often agrees with the *sense* of the antecedent, instead of its form, [*Constructio ad synesin*]; as, *Cæsar* equitatum *præmittit* qui *videant.*

Rem. 8. An explanatory noun is often introduced into the relative sentence; as, *ante comitia,* quod tempus *haud longe aberat.*

Rem. 9. *Qui* at the beginning of a sentence is often translated like a demonstrative; as, Quibus *rebus cognitis,* these *things being found out.* Here also observe the idiomatic expression, *quæ est temperantia,* or *qua es temperantia* [ablative of quality], instead of *pro tua temper*

antia; as, *tu*, quæ est temperantia, *you, such is your temperance, are already well.*

Rem. 10. The adverbial is often used for the adjectival relative; as, *locus* unde *venit, the place* from which *he came.*

THE CASES. NOMINATIVE.

§ 130. 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, and is called the *subject nominative.*

2. A noun in the predicate denoting the same thing as the subject, after a verb expressing an incomplete idea, is in the nominative, and is called the *predicate nominative;* as, *Caius et Lucius* fratres *fuerunt.*

3. A predicate nominative is used with verbs denoting, *to be, to become, to appear, to be named, to be called, to be esteemed,* &c.

Rem. 1. The verb sometimes agrees with the predicate nominative; as, *Amantium iræ amoris* integratio est, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love.

Rem. 2. If the subject is in the accusative, the predicate noun must be in the accusative also; as, *dicit* Cæsarem *esse* regem, *he says that* Cæsar *is* a king.

Rem. 3. When the subject of the infinitive is omitted, a predicate noun or adjective is often put in the dative, if a dative precedes; as *nemini* medio *esse licet*, no man may be *neutral.*

THE GENITIVE.

§ 131. The genitive case expresses the precise limit within which the meaning of a word is to be taken.

Thus, in the expression *amŏr gloriæ*, the genitive, *gloriæ*, expresses the limit within which the meaning of *amor* is restricted.

RULE V The genitive is used to limit the meaning of nouns, and also of some adjectives, verbs, and adverbs.

Rem. 1 The genitive is said to be *subjective* when it expresses that which does something, or to which something pertains or belongs; as, *Ciceronis orationes*, Cicero's orations. It is *objective* when it expresses the object to which an action or feeling is directed; as, *amor gloriæ*, the love of glory.

Rem. 2. A noun may be limited both by a subjective and objective genitive; as, *Cæsaris amor gloriæ*, Cæsar's love of glory.

Rem. 3. Instead of an objective genitive a preposition with its case is often used to avoid ambiguity; as, amor *in rempublicam*, or *erga rempublicam*, love towards the state.

Rem. 4. The genitive of a substantive pronoun is usually objective; as, *cura mei*, care for me;—while possessive adjectives and pronouns usually express subjective relations; as, *cura mea*, my care; *causa regia*, the king's cause. But the latter are sometimes objective; as, *mea injuria*, injury done to me; *metus hostilis*, fear of the enemy.

§ 132. RULE VI. *Genitive of Quality.* The genitive, limited by an adjective agreeing with it, is used to express the quality of a thing; as,

Vir magnæ virtutis, A man of great valor.

The ablative is used in the same way.

Rem. 1. This genitive may limit a noun, or form part of the predicate, like an adjective; as, *Maximi animi fuit*, He was very brave.

§ 133. RULE VII. *Genitive of Property.* The genitive, the limited noun being omitted, is used with the verb *esse* to denote that to which something belongs, or to which something is peculiar; as,

Hæc domus Marci *est*, *This house is* Mark's [*house.*]

Pauperis *est numerare pecus*, { *It is characteristic* of a poor man *to count his flock.*

Rem. 1. Instead of the genitives *mei, tui, sui*, &c., the neuter possessives *meum, tuum, suum*, &c., are used; as, tuum *est videre quid agatur, it is* your business *to see what is going on.* A possessive ad-

jective may be used in the same way; as, humanum *est errare*, it is human *to err*, i. e. *characteristic of man*.

§ 134. RULE VIII. *Partitive Genitive.* With words expressing a part, the genitive is used to denote the whole; as,

Unus militum, *One of the soldiers.*

This genitive is used with nouns expressing a part; with adjectives, especially comparatives, superlatives and numerals; with many pronouns, and with adverbs of time, place, and quantity.

Rem. 1. The partitive word, if an adjective, usually agrees in gender with the genitive; but adjectives of quantity are used as nouns in the neuter; as, *quid novi?* what news? *Tantum auri*, so much gold.

Rem. 2. Instead of a genitive, the prepositions *ex*, *de*, and sometimes *in*, *inter*, are used; as, *quidam ex militibus*, inter *omnes fortissimus*.

§ 135. RULE IX. *Objective Genitive with Adjectives and Verbs.* The genitive is used to express the object to which an action or feeling is directed with

(a.) Adjectives expressing *desire*, *experience*, *knowledge*, *capacity*, *participation*, *fulness*, *memory*, *care*, *certainty*, *fear*, *guilt*, and their contraries; as,

Avidus laudis, *Desirous of praise.*

Here also belong participial adjectives in *ns*; *amans pecuniæ*.

(b.) Verbs of remembering, reminding and forgetting; *recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, *obliviscor*, *moneo*, and its compounds; as,

Memini *beneficii* tui [=memor sum, &c.] *I remember your* kindness.
Te *officii* moneo [=me monem facio,] *I remind you* of your duty.
The thing remembered or forgotten is also put in the accusative.

(c.) Verbs expressing pity, &c.—*misereor*, *miseresco*, and the impersonals *miseret*, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *piget*, *tædet*. As,

Miseresco *infelicium*, *I pity the* unfortunate.
Pœnitet me *peccati*, *I repent of my* sin.

Rem. 1. With these impersonals the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

Rem. 2. The cause or object of the feeling may be expressed by an infinitive or a sentence; as, *pœnitet me peccavisse* or *quod peccavi*, I repent of having sinned.

(d.) Verbs of plenty or want (sometimes); as,

Eget [=egens est] *argenti*, *He is in need of* silver.

(e.) The impersonals *refert* and *interest*; as,

Reipublicæ interest, *It is of importance to* the state.

Rem. 3. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the forms *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, [abl. sing. fem.] are used with *refert* and *interest*; as,

Non *tua* interest, *It is not* your *business*.

Rem. 4. The thing with reference to which anything is important may be expressed by the acc. with *ad*; the degree of importance, by the genitives *magni*, *parvi*, &c., [see Rule XI.] or by an adverb; while the subject may be an infinitive, a neuter pronoun, or a noun-clause. As,

Hoc ad laudem civitatis magni interest, *This is of great importance to the glory of the state.*

Rem. 5. *Similis* and its compounds, especially with the names of living beings, take a genitive. [see § 142, *Rem.* 3] As.

Similis patris, Like his father.

§ 136. RULE X. *Genitive of Crime.* With verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, &c., the genitive expresses the crime or offence charged. As,

Servum *furti* accusat, He accuses the slave of theft.

Rem. 1 With some of these verbs the ablative with or without *de*, is used to express the crime; as, *aliquem* de vi *accusare*, to accuse one of *violence*.

Rem. 2. With *damno* and *condemno* the penalty is expressed by the genitive, but oftener by the ablative, especially when it consists of money or land: as, *damnatur* capitis, *or* capite, he is condemned to death. Tertia parte *agri damnatur*. He is fined a third of his land.

§ 137 RULE XI. *Genitive of Price.* The genitive is used to express the price or value of a thing indefinitely: as.

Magni *æstimabat pecuniam*. He esteemed money highly.

In this manner are used the genitive of adjectives, and the genitives *assis*, *flocci*, &c.; also *pensi* and *hujus*.

Rem. 1. To this rule may be referred the expression *æqui* or *boni facio* or *consulo*, I take in good part. I am satisfied with.

Rem. 2. With *æstimo*, and verbs of buying and selling, the ablatives *magno*, *per magno*, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*, and *nihilo*, are often used.

For the genitive of place, see § 166. Exc.

For the genitive with *opus* and *usus*, see § 160. *Rem.* 1

§ 138. EXERCISE 51.

Vocabulary.

Solus, a. um. (§56), *only, alone.*
Peccatum, i. *sin, fault.*
Philosophus, i. *philosopher.*
Ultimus, a. um, (§74, 1), *last.*
Imperium, i. *power, command.*
Casus, us. *chance.*
Arx, arc-is. *citadel.*
Dulcis, e. *sweet.*
Decorus, a. um. *honorable.*
Patria, æ. *country.*
Turbidus, a. um. *muddy, troubled.*
Amicitia, æ. *friendship.*
Oxus, i. *Oxus.* (river.)
Cingetorix, Cingetorig-is. *Cingetorix.*
Prudentia, æ. *prudence.*
Hannibal, -bal-is. *Hannibal.*
Odium, i. *hatred.*
Auctoritas, -tat-is. *authority.*
Adolescens, -cent-is. *young man.*
Corrig-ere. (rex-, rect-) *to correct.*
A-mitt-ere. (mis-, miss-) *to lose.*
Agere. (ag-, act-) *to lead, to drive; of time, to spend.*
Mori-ri, mortuus, (§109), *to die.* (*Ing. Pres.* mori, *part. fut. act.* moriturus.)
Sin-ere. (siv-, sit-) *to place.*
Viv-ere. (vix-, vict-) *to live.*
Appell-are. *to call.*
Perduc-ere. (-dux-, duct-) *to extend.*
Influ-ere. (-flux-, -flux-) *to flow into.*
Carcer, carcer-is. *prison.*
Tullianum, i. *Tullian.* (*a dungeon built by King Servius Tullius.*)
Re-ver-ere. rever-itus, *to respect.*
Spectat-us, a. um. (spect-are), *approved.*
Fortitudo, -in-is. *courage.*
Fides, ei. *faith, promise.*
Castigare. *to chastise.*

EXAMPLES.

Stulti est,	It is *characteristic* of a fool.
Adolescentis est,	It is *the duty* of a young man.
Meum est,	It is my *duty*.
Tua ipsius [R. III, rem. 7] causa,	For *your own* sake.
Cujusvis hominis est,	It is every man's *duty*.

Nocte quam ultimam (§129), egit, On the *last* night which he spent.

Translate into English and analyze.

Solius (R. III, *rem.* 7), meum peccatum corrigi non potest. Philosophus, noctem quam ultimam (§129, *rem.* 6), in terris egit, amicos omnes convocavit. Helvetii oppidum quod optimum habebant amiserant. Catonis pater et mater mortui §128, *rem.* 1, (1),) sunt. Regna, imperia, honores, divitiæ, in Dei manibus sita sunt. Filius Alexandri cum matre in arcem missi (§126, *rem.* 1, (1) b,) erant. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori. Amicitia bonum (§128, *rem.* 6,) est. Ad flumen Oxum perventum est (§114, 5,) qui (§129, *rem.* 4) turbidus semper est. Ad locum in carcere quod (§129, *rem.* 5) Tullianum vocatur perventum est. Animal qui (§129, *rem.* 5) homo vocatur, sine legibus beatus esse non potest. Cingetorix, qui a senatu rex atque amicus appellatus erat, summæ auctoritatis (§ 132. *rem.* 1,) apud Gallos fuit. Hannibalis odium erga Romanos (§131, *rem.* 3) atrocissimum fuit. Cæsar a lacu Lemanno ad flumen Rhenum, fossam quindecim pedum (§132, R. VI) perduxit. Adolescentis est parentes suos amare ac revereri. Cujusvis hominis est virum spectatæ fortitudinis revereri Stulti est de se ipso predicare. Non meum est nuncios ad consulem mittere. Domini est pigros servos castigare.

Translate into Latin.

Your father corrects your faults for *your own* sake. On

the last day which the consul spent in the winter-quarters, he called together the centurions of the seventh legion. It is the general's duty to conquer the enemies of the republic. On the next (*postero*) day they reached (it was come to) the river Rhone, which flows into our sea. Rome, which is the capital (*head*) of Italy, was taken by the Gauls. Is not a friend a good *thing?* Fabius was a man of the greatest prudence. A general of the greatest valor does not always lead his army to victory. It is the *duty* of children to respect their parents, and of parents, to love their own children and correct their (*eorum*) faults.

EXERCISE 52.

Vocabulary.

Avarus, a, um, *covetous.*
Avidus, a, um, *eager, desirous.*
Ferax, (ferac-is,) *productive.*
Amans, (amant-is,) *fond.*
Expers, (expert-is,) *destitute.*
Imperitus, a, um, *ignorant.*
Memor, (memor-is,) *mindful.*
Immemor, (or-is,) *unmindful.*
Insuetus, a, um, *unaccustomed.*
Impotens, (-ent-is,) *unable to control.*
Propositum, i, *purpose.*
Conscius, a, um, *conscious.*
Veritas, [-tat-is,] *truth.*
Tantus-dem, a-dem, un-dem, *just so much.*
Proditio, [-on-is,] *treachery.*
Egestas, [-tat-is,] *poverty.*
Cupiditas, [-tatis,] *desire, lust.*
Officium, i, *duty.*
Floccus, i, *lock of wool,* [*something of small value.*]
Miser-et, [miseru-] *it pities.*
Pœnit-et, [pœnitu-] *it repents.*
Pud-et, [pudu-] *it shames.*
Pig-et, [pigu-it, *or* pig-itum est,] *it troubles, disgusts.*
Tæd-et, [tæduit, tæsum est, and pertæsum est,] *it wearies.*
Vend-ere, [vendid- vendit.] *to sell.*
Em-ere, [em- empt-] *to buy.*
Mon-ere, [monu- monit-] *to warn.*
Ad-mon-ere, *to remind.*
Memini [§113, *Rem.* 1, 4, 5,] *I remember.*
Refert, [re-tulit.] *it concerns, it is the business of.*
Inter-est, [-fuit.] *it is of importance.*
Accus-are, *to accuse.*
Ab-solv-ere, [-solv- -solut-] *to acquit.*
Condemn-are, *to condemn.*
Æstim-are, *to esteem, value.*
Fac-ere, [fec- fact-] *to make, to value.*
Oblivisc-i, [oblitus,] *to forget.*
Opprim-ere, [-press- -press-] *to suppress.*

EXAMPLES.

[a.] Patiens *laborem,* *Enduring labor.*—Participle.
[b.] Patiens *laboris,* *Capable of enduring labor.*—Participial.

[a.] *The participle expresses a single action at the time spoken of.*
[b.] *The participial expresses capability at any time.*

Miseret me tui,	*I pity you.* [*It pities me of you.*]
Me regis miseruit,	*I pitied the king.*
Pœnitet puerum stultitiæ,	*The boy repents of his folly.*
Pudet me sceleris,	*I am ashamed of my wickedness.*
Piget te vitæ,	*You are disgusted with life.*
Capitis *or* rei capitalis accusare,	*To accuse of a capital crime.*
Capitis, *or* capite, condemnare.	*To condemn to death.*
Flocci non facit,	*He cares not a straw—a rush*, &c.
Mea refert,	*It is my business.*
Quanti hæc facis?	*How much do you value this?*

Translate into English and analyze.

In hoc oratore plus eloquentiæ (§ 134, *Rem.* 1) est quam fortitudinis. Regis frater avidus est gloriæ,* patiens laboris,* sed impotens iræ,* veritatis* expers, rerum* imperitus, atque multorum scelerum* conscius. Quanti¶ quisque se ipse (§ 84, [b.]) facit, tanti¶ fit ab amicis. Mercatores non tanti-dem¶ vendunt, quanti¶ emerunt. Fures veritatem non flocci¶ faciunt. Boni omnes virtutem magni¶ æstimant. Quanti¶ istos equos emisti? Hunc latronem sceleris† sui neque pudet, neque pœnitet. Me civitatis morum† tædet pigetque. Civis qui rei capitalis (§ 136) accusatus est, tertia parte (§ 136, *Rem.* 2) agri condemnatus est. Pueros stultitiæ pœnitebit. Catilina alium (*one man*) egestatis††, alium (*another*) cupiditatis†† admonebat. Tua ipsius causa te officii moneo. Ciceronis (§ 135, Rule IX. [c.]) magni (§ 135, *Rem.* 3) interest conjurationem Catilinæ opprimere. Non mea sed regis refert fures latronesque punire.

Translate into Latin.

The general is desirous of money, but more desirous of praise. The farmer's fields are very productive of corn

* § 135, Rule IX. [a.] ¶ § 137, Rule XI. † § 135, Rule IX. [c.] †† § 135, Rule IX. [b.]

The consul is fond of war and tenacious (*tenax*) of his purpose, but ignorant of business (*rerum*) and destitute of truth. Lucius remembers a kindness *and* (*neque*) does *not* forget an injury. The soldiers who were accused of treachery have been condemned to death. Those who (§ 129, *Rem.* 2) are unaccustomed to navigation* fear the sea. The king cares not a straw for the laws of the state. It is of great importance to us to lead the army into the enemy's country (*fines.*) For how much did you sell your horse? For the same (*tantidem*) for which (*for how much*) I bought (him.) Do you remember the speech of the excellent orator? The scouts had not warned the general of the danger. The tribune has been acquitted of treachery. Do you pity me?

THE DATIVE.

§ 140. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to which,* anything is, or is done.

§ 141. RULE XII. *Dative of Remote Object.* The remote object of a verb is in the dative; as,

Servus domino *medicinam parat. The slave prepares medicine* for his master.

☞ The *remote object* of a verb is the thing towards which its action *tends,* without necessarily *reaching* it.

NOTE.—This dative is used with most verbs, especially with verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, pro, sub, super.*

Rem. 1. Transitive verbs have also a direct object in the accusative.

* Rule XI. [a.]

§ 142. RULE XIII. *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.* The dative expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage anything is, or is done. As,

Servus domino *fidus, A servant faithful* to his master.

NOTE.—This dative is used with adjectives expressing *goodness, usefulness, fitness*, &c.; also with verbs meaning to *favor, please, trust, obey, threaten, be angry*, and their contraries. These verbs are equivalent to *esse* with an adjective; as, *Irasci inimicis,=iratus esse inimicis, to be angry with one's enemies.*

Rem. 1. The verbs *juvo, delecto, laedo, offendo*, are transitive, and have a direct object in the accusative. *Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative.

Rem. 2. Many adjectives take an accusative with a preposition, instead of a dative; as, *servus* in dominum *fidelis; locus* ad insidias *aptus.*

Rem. 3. The dative expresses the person or thing *to*, or *with reference to which*, anything is *clear, equal, like, unlike, near. Dative of Reference.*

Rem. 4. *Propior* and *proximus*, like *prope*, are sometimes followed by the accusative.

§ 143. RULE XIV. *Dative of Possession.* The dative is used with *esse* to express the person who has, or possesses something, the thing possessed being the subject. As,

Est mihi *liber*, [*a book is* to me.] I have a book.

Rem. 1. The *possessor* is expressed by the *dative* when the idea of *possession* is chiefly referred to; as, *Caesari domus est*, Cæsar has a house;—by the *genitive*, when the *possessor*, or *thing possessed*, is referred to, rather than the fact of *possession*; as, Haec domus *Caesaris* est, illa *Ciceronis*, This house is *Cæsar's*, that one is *Cicero's.*

§ 144. RULE XV *Dative of Purpose or End.* The dative is used with *esse*, and verbs of *giving*, *coming*, *sending*, *imputing*, and some others, to express the purpose of the action; as,

Hæc mihi curæ *sunt*, { *These things* are for a care *to me*, or *I have these things* for a care.

☞ These verbs may have a personal object in the dative, and, if transitive, a direct object in the accusative. As, Collegæ *venit auxilio*, *He came for an aid* to his colleague, (i. e. to his colleague's assistance.) Mihi *librum dono dedit*, *He gave* me *the book for a gift*.

Rem. 1. The verbs most commonly using a double dative are, *esse*, *fieri*, *dare*, *ducire*, *habere*, *mittere*, *relinquere*, *tribuere*, *venire*, *vertere*.

Rem. 2. The purpose may be expressed by a predicate nominative, or an apposition, [see 127, *Rem.* 1]; as, *Mihi* comes *Lucius est*, *I have Lucius for* a companion. *Coronam Jovi* donum *mittunt*, *They send a crown to Jupiter*, as a present.

§ 145. RULE XVI. *Dative to the Agent.* With the gerundine in *dus* the dative expresses the *agent* or *doer*; as,

Adhibenda est nobis *diligentia*, *Diligence must be used* by us.

Rem. 1. The poets sometimes use this dative with any of the passive forms; as, *neque cernitur ulli*, *nor is he seen* by any one.

Rem. 2. Instead of the dative, the ablative with *a* or *ab* is sometimes, though rarely, used with the gerundine.

§ 146. *Dativus Ethicus.* The dative of the personal pronouns is used sometimes to express strong feeling, and can scarcely be rendered into English; as, *An ille* mihi *liber cui mulier imperat?* Is he free whom a woman rules?

Rem. 1. Here may be noticed the use of the participles *volens*, *nolens*, &c., with a dative, in imitation of the Greek: as, *Neque* plebi *nolenti* volenti [*esse*] *patabatur*, Neither was the war thought to be agreeable to the common people: [literally, to the common people wishing it.]

§ 147 The dative is sometimes used almost like a genitive, but always with the idea of advantage, disadvantage, or reference. As, Cui *corpus porrigitur*, (compare the English) His body is stretched out *for him*.

§ 148. EXERCISE 53.

Vocabulary.

(1.) Similis, e, *like*.
Proximus, a, um, *nearest, next*.
Aptus, a, um, *fit, suitable*.
Æquus, a, um, *just*
Blandus, a, um, *flattering*
Utilis, e, *useful*.
Carus, a, um, *dear*.
Ingratus, a, um, *disagreeable*.
Facilis, e, *easy*.
Per-facilis, e, *very easy*.
Noxius, a, um, *hurtful*.
Ignotus, a, um, *unknown*.
Impedimentum, i, *hindrance*.
Dedecus -or-is, *disgrace*.
Usus, us, *use, advantage*.
Impietas, tat-is, *undutifulness*.
Numantinus, i, *Numantian*.
Vehementer, [adv.] *extremely*.
Commodum, i, *convenience*.
Fav-ere, [fav-, faut-,] *to favor*.
Stare, [stet-, stat-,] *to stand*.
Parcere, [pepere- and pars-, peciti- and para-,] *to spare*.
Inquam, [§ 113. 4] *I say*. [Used only after one or more words of a quotation.
Prod-esse, [profu-] *to do good*.
Præficere, [-fec-, -fect-,] *to put over*.
Circum-dare, [ded-, dat-,] *to give around*] *to surround*.
Circum-fundere, [fud-, fus-,] *to pour around, to surround*.
Male-dicere, [dix-, dict-,] *to be abusive*
Præter-ire [-iv-or-i-, -it-,] *to pass by*.
Innocentia, æ, *innocence, integrity*

EXAMPLES.

[2.] Audiens dicto, *Obedient, [attentive to the word.]*
Mihi magno est *dolori*, *It is [for] a great grief to me.*
Hibernis Labienum præfecit, *He put Labienus over the winter-quarters*
Regibus manus sunt longæ, *Kings have long arms (hands.)*
Dii omnibus colendi sunt, *The gods ought to be worshipped by all.*
Urbem muro *abl.* circumdare, } *To surround the city with a wall.*
Urbi murum circumdare, }
Terras mari [*abl.*] circumfundere, } *To surround the land with sea*
Terris (*dat.*) mare circumfundere, }
Aptus insidiis, or ad insidias, *Suitable for ambush.*
Similis *patris*, *Like his father*, (in character.)
Similis *patri*, *Like his father*. (outwardly.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Helvetii proximi Germanis (§ 141, *Rem.* 3) ineolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Loca proxima (§142, *Rem.* 4) Carthaginem Numidia appellatur (§ 130, *Rem.* 1.) In loco insidiis (R. XIII.) apto, duas legiones collocavit. Nonne lupus est cani similis? Ferrum hominibus (R. XIII.) utilius est quam aurum. Jugurtha nostris vehementer carus, Numantinis maximo terrori (R. XI.) fuit. Cuivis facile est amicis suis (R. XIII.)* favere. Ventus noxium (§ 128, *Rem.* 6) est arboribus. Legatus cohortes duas castris (R. XII.) præsidis (R. XV) reliquit, milites imperatori (R. XIII.) audientes dicto non erunt. Milites non mulieribus, non infantibus (R. XIII.) pepercerunt. Nemini licet sui commodi causa alteri (R. XIII.) nocere. Cæsar legionibus, quas in provincia conscripserat, Labienum præfecit. Deus toti orbi terrarum mare circumfudit. Cæsar oppidum vallo fossaque circumdedit. Gravia onera equitibus (R. XIV *or* R. XIII.) magno sunt impedimento. Innocentiæ (R. XIV) sæpe plus periculi est quam honoris. Hæc mihi (R. XIV) prætereunda non sunt. Hædus in domus tecto stans, lupo prætereunti maledixit. Cui lupus, "Non tu," inquit, "sed locus mihi (§ 142) maledicit."

Translate into Latin.

The number of the enemy was unknown to the general. The undutifulness of children is a great grief to (their) parents. The thick woods were a very great advantage (XVI.) to our skirmishers. It is sweet and honorable to do good to the commonwealth. Children are not always like their parents. It was very easy for our men to cross

* The letters refer to the rule of Syntax; the Arabic figures, to the *remarks.*

the river. The consul's speech was very disagreeable to the Gauls. The snares of the enemy have been (for) a very great hindrance to our cavalry. God ought to be worshipped by all men. The causes of this rebellion ought not to be passed over by me. It is the greatest disgrace (XV.) to a soldier to leave his place in battle. The Roman people gave to the king for a gift the fields which he had conquered. Nature had surrounded the town with a broad and deep river. It is lawful for no man to lead an army against his country Be kind and just to all, but flattering to none.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 149. The accusative case marks the *direct object* of an action, i. e. the thing actually reached by the action; also the limit of space or time which an action or motion reaches.

§ 150. RULE XVII. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Rem. 1. An intransitive verb, though it does not require an object to complete its meaning, may be limited by accusative of *similar*, or *kindred* signification. (*Cognate Accusative.*) As, *currere cursum*, to run a race; *vivere vitam*, to live a life.

Rem. 2. When the cognate noun is obsolete, a noun, or noun-sentence, equivalent to it in meaning, may be used. (*Equivalent Accusative.*) As, *proficissi magnum iter*, to go a great journey.

Rem. 3. The cognate or equivalent noun is often omitted, and in its stead a neuter adjective is used, limiting the cognate notion understood. (*Elliptical Accusative.*) As,

multum ambulat, he walks much; *he does much walking*. This accusative is used as an adverb.

Rem. 4. A *cognate, equivalent,* or *elliptical* accusative may be used with a passive verb; as, *doceor doctrinam*, I am taught teaching, science; *doceor grammaticam*, I am taught grammar; *nimium doctus*, taught too much, too learned.

Rem. 5. Many verbs which are transitive in English, in Latin represent an action only as done *with reference to* the object, and hence have a dative: (see §142, *Rem.* 3.)

§ 151. RULE XVIII. (*a.*) Verbs meaning to *ask* and *teach*, with *celare*, to conceal, take two accusatives—one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*; as,

Rogo te nummos,	*I ask you for money.*
Docuit me musicam,	*He taught me music.*

(The thing *asked* or *taught* is an *equivalent* accusative.)

(*b.*) *Second Accusative.* Verbs meaning to *name* or *call, choose, appoint, make, esteem* or *reckon*, take besides the direct object, a second accusative; as,

Urbem vocavit Romam,	*He called the city* Rome.
Me consulem *fecistis*,	*You have made me* consul.

Rem. 1. With verbs of asking, the *person* is often put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, *de*, *ex*, instead of the accusative, as, *Hæc* a te *posco*, I demand these things of you. *Exigo, peto, postulo quæro, scitor, sciscitor*, never have an accusative of the person; as, *Pacem* a Cæsare *petunt*.

§ 152. RULE XIX. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative. See §120, 1.

☞ As a general rule, prepositions expressing *motion to* a place, take the accusative.

Rem. 1. Many intransitive verbs, when compounded with a preposition, become transitive; as, *transire* flumen; *succedere* tecta.

Rem. 2. A preposition in composition often has an object in the

accusative; as, *Equitatum* pontem *transducit*, *He leads the cavalry* over the bridge. *Equitatus* pontem *transducitur*, *The cavalry are led-over* the bridge.

Rem. 3. The preposition is often repeated; as, *Equitatum* trans *pontem transducit.*

§ 153. RULE XX. *Accusative of time and space.* Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative, sometimes by the ablative; as,

Tres horas *mansit*,	*He remained* three hours.
Fossa duos pedes *lata*,	*A ditch* two feet *wide*.

NOTE. The limit of time within which anything occurs is expressed by the ablative; *uno anno*, within one year.

§ 154. RULE XXI. *Accusative of place Whither.* The names of towns and small islands are put in the accusative to express the point which a motion reaches: As,

Romam *venit*, *He came* to Rome.

Rem. 1. *Domus* and *rus* are construed in the same way. As, domum *rediit*, *He returned* home.

Rem. 2. A preposition is generally used when the name of a town is limited by an adjective or an apposition—*urbs*, *oppidum*, &c. As, *Demaratus se contulit Tarquinios* ad urbem *Etruriæ*,—*to Tarquinii*, a town *of Etruria*. Ad doctas Athenas *proficisci.*

Rem. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted in prose, often in poetry, before the name of any place to which motion is directed. *Deveniunt* speluncam.

§ 155. As the accusative expresses the limit actually *reached* by an action or motion, so also it expresses the limit to which the truth of a proposition extends. Thus, *membra* nudus est, He is naked—not *entirely*, but only *as to his limbs*. Hence,

RULE XXII. The accusative is sometimes used to express a special limitation. (*Acc. of limitation.*). As,

Nudus membra, *Naked* as to his limbs.

Rem. 1. This is a Greek construction, and is rarely used in prose.

Rem. 2. The poets often use an accusative with a passive verb in the sense of the Greek middle; as, *Priamus* inutile ferrum *cingitur*. *Priam girds himself with* (puts on,) the useless sword.

§ 156. RULE XXIII. The accusative expresses the object of a feeling, with or without an interjection, As,

Heu me miserum! *Ah wretched me!*

For the accusative with { *propror* and *proximus*, see §142, *Rem.* 4. / *miseret*, *&c.*, see §135, *Rem.* 1. / the infinitive, see §188.

§ 157. EXERCISE 54.

Vocabulary.

Antiochus, i, *Antiochus*.
Antiochia æ, *Antioch*.
Ancus Martius, i, *Ancus Martius, fourth king of Rome*.
Mercurius, i, *Mercury*.
Inventor, -or-is, *inventor*.
Antigonus, i, *Antigonus*.
Quotidie, *daily*.
Jucundus, a, um, *delightful*.
Servitus, -tut-is, *slavery*.
Regulus, i, *Regulus*.
Juventus, -tut-is, *youth*.
Musica, æ, *music*.
Grammatica, æ, *grammar*.
Fides, ium, (fem.) *strings, a lute*.
Socrates, is, *Socrates*.
Timidus, a, um, *cowardly*.
Certus, a, um, *certain*.
Studium, i, *zeal, desire*, pl. *study*.
Vastitas, tat-is, *devastation*.
Arbitr-ari, *to think, deem*.

Hab-ere, *to have, to consider*.
Cel-are, *to conceal*.
Flagit-are, *to ask for, to demand earnestly*.
Serv-ire, *to be a slave, to serve*.
Trans-duc-ere, [dux-, duct-) *to lead over*.
Trans-jic-ere, (jec-, ject-] *to throw over, to ship over*.
Red-ire, (§111, 9,) (redi-, redit-) *to return*,
Dis-ced-ere, (cess-, cess-) *to depart*.
Pon-ere, (posu-, posit-) *to place*.
Sequ-i, (secut-us,) *to follow*.
Per-sequ-i, *to follow perseveringly, to pursue*.
Doc-ere, (docu-, doct-) *to teach*.
E-doc-ere, *to teach thoroughly*.
Nasc-i, natus, *to be born*.
Illic-ere, (illex-, illect-) *to allure, to decoy*.
Redd-ere, (reddid-, reddit-) *to render*.
Sol-ere, solitus, *to be accustomed*.
Proficisci, profectus, *to set out, to go*.
Posc-ere, (poposc- —-,) *to ask for, demand*.

EXAMPLES.

Iter *omnes* celat, *He conceals his journey* from all.
Regem *pacem* poscunt, *They ask the king* for peace.
Unius diei iter, *One day's journey.*
Annos (§152) quindecim natus, *Fifteen years old.* (*Born fifteen years.*
A vita discedere, *To depart from life, to die.*
A millibus passuum duobus castra posuit, } *He pitched his camp two miles off.*
Millia passuum duo (*acc.*) or, millibus passuum duobus (*abl.*) } ab urbe, *two miles from the city.*
Me fidibus docuit. *He taught me to play on the lyre,* (with the strings. Abl. of instrument.)
Cæsarem certiorem (§151, b) faciunt, *They inform Cæsar,* (*make more certain.*)

Translate into English and analyze.

Urbem, ex Antiochi patris (§127, Rule,) nomine Antiochiam (R. XVIII, b) vocavit. Ancum Martium populus regem (R. XVIII, b) creavit. Veteres Romani Mercurium omnium inventorem (R. XVIII, b) artium habebant. Antigonus iter exercitus omnes celat. Quotidie Cæsar Æduos frumentum flagitabat. Num timidus vitam jucundam (§150, *Rem.* 1) vivere potest? Qui (§129, *Rem.* 2) auri servus est, turpissimam servitutem (§150, *Rem.* 1) servit. Ariovistus maximas Germanorum copias Rhenum (§152, *Rem.* 2) transjecerat, neque multorum dierum (§152, Rule) iter (R. XX) a Cæsaris castris abfuit. Quis regem fidibus docuit? Alexander mensem (R. XX) unum, annos (R. XX) tres et triginta (§63) natus, a vita discessit. Jam vicessimum (§63) annum (R. XX) Italiæ vastitatem patimur. Regulus Carthaginem (R. XXI) rediit. Consul in Africam profectus, Carthaginem venit. Consul ab oppido, millia (R. XX) passuum (§134) duo castra posuerat. Catilina juventutem quam illexerat mala facinora (XVIII, a) edocebat. Socrates totius mundi se in-

eolam (XVIII) et civem arbitrabatur. Exploratores de hostium adventu eonsulem certiorem faciunt. Juvenes (§33, *Rem.* 8, *Exc.*) Romani Athenas (XXI) studiorum causa proficisei solebant.

Translate into Latin.

Labienus followed Cæsar into Gaul; Marius returned home. Our cavalry pursued the enemy ten miles. Cæsar set out from the winter-quarters to Rome. The place and time often render cowards brave. Lust makes (*renders*) men blind. Which of the teachers (*masters*) taught the boys grammar and music? My brother taught me to play on the lute. The general led all his forees across the bridge in one night. My brother is twenty years old. Cæsar asked the senate for an army. The robbers demanded money from Caius. Are you going to Rome for-the-sake-of study? Cæsar was distant ten days' journey from the camp of Ariovistus. It-is-characteristic of a good general to throw his forees over a river quickly. A boy twelve years old used to inform the enemy of the approaeh of our forces. The Germans will piteh their camp ten miles off.

VOCATIVE.

§ 158. The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative.

ABLATIVE.

§ 159. RULE XXIV *Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, Instrument.* The ablative expresses the cause, manner, means, and instrument; as,

Cæcus avaritia,	*Blinded* by avarice.
Hoc modo *fecit*,	*He did it* in this manner.
Aquila alis *volat*,	*The eagle flies* with his wings.
Captivum gladio *occidit*,	*He kills the captive* with a sword.

Rem. 1. The *causal ablative* is used mostly with intransitive and passive verbs, and with adjectives.

Rem. 2. The cause, especially with transitive verbs, is often expressed by *ob* or *propter*, with the accusative.

Rem. 3. Akin to the causal ablative is the ablative of *source* with participles expressing origin; as, natus *dea*, born of a *goddess*.

Rem. 4. The *manner* is expressed by the ablative of words meaning manner,—*modus, mos, ratio, ritus*;—or by the ablative of other words with *cum*; as, cum voluptate *te audio*. When an adjective is added to the noun, *cum* is usually omitted: as, æquo animo *calamitates ferre*, *to bear calamities* with patience.

Rem. 5. When the *means* or *instrument* is a person, *per* with the accusative must be used; as, Per te *liberatus sum*, *I was freed* through you.

Rem. 6. To this rule may be referred the ablative with the deponents *utor*, I employ myself with, I use; *fruor*, I delight myself with, I enjoy; *fungor*, I busy myself with, I perform; *potior*, (*potis*,) I make myself powerful with, I take possession of; *vescor*, I feed myself with, I eat.

NOTE. *Potior* sometimes takes a genitive, (*I make myself master of*.

§ 160 RULE XXV. The ablative expresses the *material* or *supply*. As,

Germania fluminibus *abundat*, *Germany abounds* in rivers.

☞ This ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of *plenty* or *want*, *filling* or *emptying*, *depriving*, &c.; also with *opus est*, there is need.

Rem. 1. With *opus* and *usus* the genitive is sometimes used, and rarely the accusative. *Opus* is either subject of *est*, or an indeclinable adjective in the predicate. *Duce nobis opus est*, or *Dux nobis opus est*. The latter construction is used with neuter pronouns and adjectives; as, Quid *nobis opus est*?

Rem. 2. The genitive is also used with expressions of plenty or wants. See § 135, Rule IX. d.

§ 161. RULE XXVI. *Ablative of Limitation.*—Nouns, adjectives, and verbs are limited by the ablative showing *in what respect* their meaning is taken; as,

Oppidum nomine *Bibrax*,	*A town, Bibrax* by name.
Æger pedibus,	*Lame in his* feet.

§ 162. RULE XXVII. *Ablative of Price.* The price or value of a thing, if stated definitely, is expressed by the ablative; as,

Patriam auro *vendidit*, *He sold his country* for gold.

Rem. 1. The price or value, if indefinitely stated, is expressed by the genitive. See § 137.

Rem. 2. To this rule may be referred the ablative with *dignus*, *indignus*, &c.

§ 163. RULE XXVIII. *Ablative of Separation.*—That from which anything is *freed*, *removed* or *separated*, is expressed by the ablative; as,

Patriam hostibus *liberavit*, *He freed his country* from enemies.

Rem. 1. A preposition, (*ab*, *de*, *ex*,) is often used with this ablative.

Rem 2. The preposition is rarely used with names of towns denoting the *place from which* motion proceeds, or with the ablatives *domo*, *humo*, *rure* and *ruri*. Roma *discessit*. Domo *exire*, *to go out* from home.

Rem. 3. Verbs of *taking away* have sometimes, instead of an ablative, a dative of advantage or disadvantage; as, *Nec* mihi *te eripient*, *Nor shall they take you* from me.

§ 164. RULE XXIX. *Ablative of Quality.* The ablative limited by an adjective, is used to express the quality of a thing; as,

Serpens ingenti magnitudine, *A serpent* of huge size.

Rem. 1. This ablative may form part of the predicate, like an adjective; as, *Agesilaus* statura *fuit* humili, *Agesilaus was* of low stature.

Rem. 2. A genitive may supply the place of the adjective; as,

Est bos cervi *figura*, *There is an ox of the shape* of a stag; (*a* stag-shaped *ox.*)

§ 165. RULE XXX. *Ablative of Comparison.* The ablative is used with the comparative degree when *quam* is omitted, to express that with which something is compared; as,

Mons est arbore *altior*, *A mountain is higher* than a tree.

Rem. 1. The complement of a comparative may be connected by the conjunction *quam*, and put in the same case, or in the nominative, subject of *est*, *fuit*, &c., understood. As, *Fortiorem vidi neminem quam* Marium or *quam* Marius *(est.)*

Rem. 2. When the thing compared is the *subject*, the ablative is generally used: as, *saxum* auro *durius est*; also when the thing compared is the *object*, the ablative, especially of pronouns, is used; as, Hoc *nihil gratius facere potes.*

But with a comparative in any other case than the nominative or accusative, the ablative is very rarely used. *Quam* is used with all cases.

Rem. 3. The complement of a comparative is often omitted altogether, and the comparative is then translated by *too*, or *rather* with the positive. *Equites paulo* longius *processerant*, *The horsemen had advanced a little* too far.

Rem. 4. *Plus, minus*, and *amplius* are often prefixed to expressions of number, magnitude, &c., without effect upon the construction; as, *Non amplius* horas sex *mansit*, *He staid not more* than six hours. These words may be considered adverbs, or indeclinable nouns.

Longius, and the adjectives *major* and *minor* are sometimes used in the same way; thus, *puer annorum decem*, *a boy of ten years*; *puer* minor *annorum decem*, *a boy of* less *than ten years.*

§ 166. RULE XXXI. *Ablative of Place Where.* The ablative, usually with the preposition *in*, expresses the *place where*; as,

Castris, *or* in castris *mansit*,	*He remained* in the camp.
Alexander Babylone *mortuus est*,	*Alexander died* at Babylon.

☞ The preposition is rarely used with names of towns.

Exc. The name of a town denoting the place where, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is in the genitive; as,

Habitat Romæ,	*He lives* at Rome.
Mileti *mortuus est*,	*He died* at Miletus.

Rem. 1. The genitives *domi*, *humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, also express the place where; as, *domi militiæque*, at home and in service. The genitive of names of islands and countries is sometimes used in the same way.

§ 167. RULE XXXII. *Ablative of Time When.* The point of time at which anything occurs is expressed by the ablative; as,

Tertia hora,	*At the third hour.*

Rem. 1. The limit of time within which anything is done, is expressed by the ablative. See § 153, *note*.

Rem. 2. The time before or after an event is expressed, (a.) by *ante* or *post* with a numeral; (b.) by *antequam* or *postquam*; (c.) the time after an event, by the relative or *quum*.

(a.)		(b.)		
After ten years, *or* Ten years after.	*post decem annos*, *decem post annos*, *post decimum annum*, *decimum post annum*, *decem annis post*, *decem post annis*, *decimo anno post*, *decimo post anno*.	Ten years after he had come.	*post decem annos*, *d. post annos*, *post decimum an.*, *d. post annum*, *decem annis post*, *d. post annis*, *decimo an. post*, *d. post anno*.	*quum venerat*

When *ante* or *post* stands last an accusative specifying the event is often added,

decimo anno ante conjurationem.

(c.) *Octo diebus* quibus *occisus est*, *Eight days* after *he was killed.*
Quatriduo quo *occisus est*, *In four days* after *he was killed.*

§ 168. RULE XXXIII. *Ablative of Excess or Defect.* The ablative is used to show how much one thing exceeds or falls short of another; as,

Multis partibus *major*,	Many times *larger.*
Dimidio *minor*,	*Less* by half.

§ 169. RULE XXXIV *Ablative with prepositions.* Twelve prepositions are followed by the ablative. See § 120.

For the ablative of duration of time and extent of space, see §153.

For the ablative absolute, see §186.

§ 170. EXERCISE 55.

Vocabulary.

Fretus, a, um, *trusting.*
Concordia, æ, *agreement.*
Discordia, æ, *disagreement.*
Plerumque, (adv.) *for the most part.*
Mœror, or-is, *grief.*
Incredibilis, e, *incredible.*
Mors, is, us, *biting.*
Anxius, a, um, *anxious.*
Natus, us, *birth.*
Secundus, a, um, *favorable.*
Tumultus, us, *tumult.*
Cadaver, -er-is, (§38, *Ex.* 2.) *corpse.*
Sensus, us, *feeling, sense.*
Talentum, i, *talent.*
As, assis, [m.] *a farthing, a small coin.*
Religio, -on-is, *religion.*
Invadere, [-vas-, vas-] *to attack.*
Neptunus, i, *Neptune,* [God of the sea.]
Confid-ere, [confisus,] *to trust.*
Cresc-ere, [crev-, crēt-] *to grow.*
Dilabi, [dilapsus,] *to fall to pieces.*
Interire, [illi, 9 interi-, interit-,] *to perish.*
Locu-i, [locutus,] *to speak.*
Ut-i, [usu-,] *to use.*
Fru-i, [fructus,] *to enjoy.*
Vesci, [——,] *to feed upon, to eat.*
Confic-ere, [-ic, fec-, fect-,] *to finish.*
Tut-ari, *to protect.*
In-duc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] *to lead on.*
Impl-ere, [-pl-v-, plet-,] *to fill.*
Spoli-ere, *to rob, deprive.*
Nud-are, *to strip.*
Prohib-ere, *to keep off, to prevent.*
Expell-ere, (expul-, expuls-,) *to drive out.*
Inter-dic-ere, (dix-, dict-,) *to forbid.*
Mut-are, *to change, to exchange.*

EXAMPLES.

Præ mœrore,	*On account of grief.* A preventing cause.
Major natu,	*Greater by birth, older, elder.*
Re, (abl. of *res,*)	*In fact.*
Dux nobis (XIII) opus est,	*A leader is necessary for us.*
Duce nobis (XIV) opus est,	*We have need of a leader.*
Maturato (*part. perf. pass.*) opus est,	*There is need of haste.*
Cives agris (§160) spoliare,	*To deprive the citizens of their land.*
Equus mihi (§142, *Rem.* 3) talento stetit,	*The horse cost me a talent.* (*Stood to me at a talent.*
Denis in diem assibus (§162)	*For or at ten farthings a day.*
Asse (§162) carum,	*Dear at an as.*
Aqua (§163) aliquem interdicere,	*To cut one off from water.*
Alicui (§141 *or* §142) aquam interdicere,	*To forbid water to one.*
Alicui (§142) aqua et igni (§163) interdicere,	*To cut one off from fire and water, to banish.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Hostes numero (R. XXIV, *Rem.* 1) freti in nostros impetum fecere. Dux hostium natura (xxiv, *Rem.* 1) loci confidebat. Decimæ legioni Cæsar maxime confidebat. Concordia (xxiv) res parvæ crescunt; discordia maximæ dilabuntur. Multi oppidanorum fame et siti interierunt. Numidæ plerumque lacte et carne (§159, *Rem.* 6) vescuntur. Hannibal victoria (§159, *Rem.* 6) frui quam uti maluit. Catilina, cupiditate regni inductus, conjurationem fecit. Sapientis (§133) est æquo animo dolorem ferre. Cornibus (xxiv) tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones se tutantur. Pater tuus nomine (§161) magis quam imperio (§161) rex fuit. Fratrum maximus natu fuit Orgetorix. Milites urbem tumultu (xxv) implebunt. Neptunus ventis (xxv) secundis vela implevit. Auctoritate tua (xxv) nobis (xiv) opus est. Quantum argenti tibi (xiii) opus est? Quanti (xi) iste equus tibi stetit? Talento, (xxvii). Hæc victoria nobis multo sanguine stetit. Denis (§63) in diem assibus anima et corpus militis æstimantur. Quod (§129, *Rem.* 2) non opus est asse carum est. Divites cives Romani uxores liberosque militum agris (§163) expellebant. Regulus Carthagine (§163, profectus, Romam (xxi) pervenit. Sacerdotes Balbo (xiii) aqua (xxviii) et igni interdixerant. Consul Roma (xxviii) discessit.

Translate into Latin.

The Britons live mostly on milk and flesh. The general, trusting in the nature of the place, kept his forces in camp. Very many poor (men) have died of hunger and thirst. I cannot speak for (*on account of*) grief. The townsmen besought Cæsar with many tears. Orgetorix, the richest and most noble of the Helvetians, led on by the

desire of reigning (*regni*), made a conspiracy of the nobility. The soldiers finished the journey with incredible swiftness. Cicero wrote all his speeches with the greatest care and diligence. The Belgians attacked the camp with great shouting. It is the duty (vii.) of a young man to respect his elders. Bacchus was king in name, but not in fact. The sailors had loaded the ships with gold. Thou hast deprived the citizens of (their) land; thou hast stripped the temples of (their) silver and gold; thou hast filled the city with blood and corpses; for these things (*ob has res*) I cut thee off from water and fire. We have need of haste. How much gold have we need of? This base fellow will exchange faith and religion for money. Lycurgus forbade the use of gold to his people. The Æduans were not able to keep off the Helvetians from their country.

§ 171. EXERCISE 56.

Vocabulary.

Statura, æ, *stature, height.* (*Of a man.*)
Humilis, e, (§72, 2.) *low.*
Exiguus, a, um, *small, short.*
Potestas, (tat-is,) *power.*
Perpetuus, a, um, *continual.*
Tyrannus, i, *king, despot.*
Genus, (gener-is,) *race, family.*
Spelunca, æ, *cave.*
Pravus, a, um, *depraved.*
Figura, æ, *shape, figure.*
Inferior, (§72. 4.) *lower, of less value, inferior.*
Posterior, (§72. 4.) *later, of less account.*
Præcipuus, a, um, *especial.*
Varro, on-is, *Varro.*
Hibernia, æ, *Ireland.*
Antequam, [conj.] *before.*
Postquam, [conj.] *after.*
Dic-ere, [dix-, dict-,] *to say, to call.*
Duc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] *to lead, to deem.*
Cup-ere, -io, [cupiv-, cupit-,] *to desire.*
Doctus, a, um, *learned.*
Amplus, a, um, *large, much.*
Dimidium, i, *half.*
Infinitus, a, um, *boundless.*
Altitudo, -in-is, *depth, height.*
Exsist-ere, [-stit-, -stit-,] *to stand out.*
Paulus, a, um, *little.* [*Usually in neut.*]
Deflagr-are, *to burn down, to be consumed.*
Diana, æ, *Diana.*
Ephesius, a, um, *Ephesian.*
Punicus, a, um, *Carthaginian.*
Scipio, -on-is, *Scipio.*
Africanus, a, um, *African.* [*A surname of Scipio.*
Britannia, æ, *Britain.*

EXAMPLES.

Prœlium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium, } *A battle more fierce than in proportion to the numbers of combatants;* or *than would have been expected from &c.*

Quo (§168) longior dies, eo (§168) nox brevior, *The longer the day, the shorter the night.*

Translate into English.

Agesilaus statura (§164, *Rem.* 1) fuit humili, corpore exiguo. Qui (§129, *Rem.* 2) potestate (§164, *Rem.* 1) est perpetua, tyrannus (§130, 2) habetur et dicitur. Lucius Catilina, nobili genere (§159, *Rem.* 3) natus, fuit magna vi (§164, *Rem.* 1) et (*both*) animi et corporis, sed ingenio malo pravoque. Est bos cervi (§164, *Rem.* 2) figura, cujus a media (§128, *Rem.* 8) fronte unum cornu exsistit. Sapientis (§133) est humana omnia virtute (XXX) inferiora ducere. Bello Punico (XXXII) quo (XXX) nullum majus Romani gessere, Scipio Africanus præcipuam gloriam tulit. Hæc verba sunt Varronis, quam fuit Claudius doctioris (§127). Eo die non amplius (§165, *Rem.* 4) tria millia hominu mocisi sunt (§128, *Rem.* 3). Gallorum copiæ non longius millia (§153) passuum octo ab castris aberant. Tribus annis (§167, *Rem.* 2, (a),) post bellum civile populus Syphacem regem creavit. Homines quo (XXXIII) plura habent, eo (XXXIII) cupiunt ampliora. Varro Antiochiæ (XXXI, Exc.) vixit. Cicero studiorum causa multos annos Athenis habitavit. Qua nocte natus est Alexander, eadem templum Dianæ Ephesiæ deflagravit.

Translate into Latin.

It is the duty of a general to deem his own safety of less account than the common safety. Near the city is a cave of boundless depth. This soldier is of low stature and lame in his feet. I have seen no more beautiful (woman) than Tullia. On that day Cæsar advanced (*procedere*) not more than six miles. The burden was too heavy for his strength. More men were killed than *would have been expected* from the number of combatants. Three days after Cæsar reached the camp, ambassadors were sent by the

Germans. The consul was blind for many years before (*antequam*) you were born. The king of the Thracians dwelt many years at Rome. Ireland is less by half than Britain. Cicero was much more eloquent than Crassus. The farther the enemy retreated, the more swiftly did our men pursue. Our horsemen pursued the enemy a little too far.

THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

For change from active to passive construction see § 198.

§ 172. RULE XXXV. Verbs which in the active take another case in addition to the object-accusative, in the passive retain that other case; as,

Liber puero *datur*, *A book is given* to the boy.
Arbores foliis *nudantur*, *The trees are stripped* of leaves.

Rem. 1. A second accusative in the active, (except with verbs of teaching and some verbs of asking,) becomes a predicate nominative in the passive. *Urbem vocavit* Romam; *Urbs* Roma *vocatur*

Rem. 2. As intransitive verbs have no direct object in the active, they are not used *personally* in the passive, except with a cognate nominative. (*Cursus curritur.*) When they are used impersonally, the remote object is of course retained. Mihi *a te persuadetur*, I am persuaded by you.

SYNTAX OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

The *finite* verb consists of the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods; the *indefinite* verb, of the infinitive, participles, gerund, and supine.

INFINITIVE.

§ 173. RULE XXXVI. The infinitive is often used as a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative, and may be the subject of a verb; as,

Gratum est tecum ambulare, *It is pleasant* to walk *with you.*

§ 174. RULE XXXVII. *Complementary Infinitive.*— The infinitive is used as a *complement* (*filling up*) with certain verbs and adjectives expressing an incomplete idea; as,

Parat bellum gerere, *He is preparing* to wage *war.*

Rem. 1. The infinitive with adjectives is rare in prose, the gerund being generally used. *Cupidus moriendi*, rather than *cupidus morire.*

Rem. 2. A *purpose* is not expressed in Latin prose by the infinitive. Thus, *I came to see*, must be translated *veni ut viderem*, not *veni videre*, though this construction is sometimes used by the poets.

Rem. 3. An infinitive expressing an incomplete idea (§130, 3) has the same case after it as before it, if both nouns refer to the same thing; as, *volo esse* rex. *Nemini* medio *esse licet. Mihi esse* poetæ *dii non concessere*, The gods have not permitted *me* to be *a poet. Pudet me* victum *discedere*, I am ashamed to come off *conquered.*

Rem. 4. The accusative with the infinitive (§188) is sometimes used with *licet*, and the predicate noun must then be in the accusative; as, *nimini* (*se*) medium *esse licet.*

§ 175. RULE XXXVIII. *Historical Infinitive.* In animated narration the infinitive is often used like a past indicative; as,

Consul in Africam festinare, *The consul* hastened *to Africa.*

For the accusative with the infinitive, see §188.

For the construction of participles, see §185.

GERUND, & GERUNDIVE OR PARTICIPLE IN *DUS.*

§ 176. RULE XXXIX. The gerund is a verbal noun in the oblique cases, (the nominative being supplied by the infinitive,) and is construed with the same cases as the verb from which it is derived.

Studium patrem *videndi*, *The desire of seeing* my father.
Parcendo victis, By sparing *the conquered.*

§ 177. RULE XL. Instead of a transitive gerund the gerundive is frequently used; the object-noun being put

into the case of the gerund, and the gerundive agreeing with it in gender, number, and case; as,

Consilium scribendi *epistolam*,
Consilium epistolæ scribendæ, } *The design* of writing a letter.

Rem. 1. A transitive gerund with an object accusative is not used in the dative or accusative, but the gerundive is used instead; as, *Charta utilis est* scribendis *epistolis*, or *ad* scribendas *epistolas;* (not scribendo *epistolas*). So also when the gerund would be the object of a preposition the gerundive is used instead; as, *In* victore *laudando*, (*not* victorem), *In praising the conqueror.*

Rem. 2. The gerund is preferred when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun; as, *Studium* aliquid *faciendi*, *The desire of doing something.*

Rem. 3. The genitive singular of the gerund is sometimes used instead of the genitive plural of the gerundive, with a noun in the genitive plural; *Facultas* agrorum *latronibus suis* condonandi, *The opportunity* of presenting our fields *to his ruffians.* So also in the expression, *sui purgandi causa*, for the *purpose of excusing themselves;* though *sui* may better be regarded the gen. sing. neuter of the possessive, like *nostri* and *vestri.*

Rem. 4. The verbs *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and sometimes *medeor*, use the gerundive like transitive verbs.

§ 178. RULE XLI. The neuter gerundive is used impersonally with the tenses of *esse*, to express the necessity or duty of doing an action; as,

Scribendum est mihi, *I must write.* (*It must be written by me.*)

Rem. 1. The object of the action is sometimes expressed; as, *nobis* ratione *utendum est*, *We must use* reason.

But with transitive verbs the personal construction is almost always used; as, Epistola *mihi* scribenda *est*, I must write a letter.

(This use of the gerundive is sometimes called the second Periphrastic Conjugation.)

Rem. 2. The agent is expressed by the dative (§ 145), rarely by the ablative with *a* or *ab.*

SUPINE.

§ 179. RULE XLII. (a.) The supine in *um* (acc.) is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion, and is construed with the same cases as its verb; as,

Venio te rogatum, *I come to ask you.*

(b.) The supine in *u* is used with adjectives as an ablative of limitation (§ 161). As,

Facile factu, *Easy to be done, (with respect to the doing.)*

§ 180 EXERCISE 57.

Vocabulary.

Spatium, i, *opportunity, time.*
Defessus, a, um, *wearied.*
Negligens, (-ent-is,) *careless.*
Cur-are, *to attend to.*
Arar, *or* Araris, is, (§ 33, *Rem.* 1.) *The Saone, a river of Gaul.*
Præd-ari, *to plunder.*
Frument-ari, *to forage.*
Honeste, (adv.) *honorably.*
Herminius, i, *Herminius.*
Verutum, i, *javelin.*
Eloquentia, æ, *eloquence.*
Magnanimus, a, um, *magnanimous.*
Ætas, -tat-is, *age, life.*
Satis, (noun, adj., or adv.,) *enough.*
Conserv-are, *to save, preserve.*
Purg-are, *to cleanse, excuse.*
Simul, (adv.) *at the same time.*
Propon-ere, (posu-, posit-,) *to set up.*
Cupidus, a, um, *desirous.*
Vexillum, i, *flag, standard.*
Ag-ere, (eg-, act-,) *to do.*
Ex-ced-ere, (cess-, cess-,) *to go out, retire,*
De-lig-ere, (leg-, lect-,) *to choose.*
Di-rip-ere, (ripu-, rept-,) *to pillage.*
Adhib-ere, *to apply, to use.*
Re-scind-ere, (scid-, sciss-,) *to cut down.*
Disc-ere, (didic-, ——,) *to learn.*
Quer-i, questus, *to complain of.*
Re-pet-ere, (petiv-, petit-,) *to ask back.*
Per-cut-ere, (-io, cuss-, cuss-,) *to strike, kill.*
Hort-ari, *to exhort.*
Pro-fug-ere, [-io, fug-, fugit-,] *to flee.*
Pro-puls-are, *to repel.*
Collig-ere, [leg-, lect-,] *to collect.*
Cogit-are, *to think.*
De-sil-ire, [silu-, sult-,] *to leap down.*
Arcess-ere, [-iv-, -it-,] *to send for.*

EXAMPLES.

Neque,—neque, *Neither,—nor.*
Spatium excedendi, *Time for retiring.*
Consilium capere, *To form a design.*
Pontem in flumine faciendum curare, } *To have a bridge built over a river, (to attend to the building a bridge, &c.)*
Mihi (§ 145) proficiscendum est (§ 178,) } *I must set out, I have to set out.*
Mihi proficiscendum erat, *I had to set out.*
Cæsari (§ 145) omnia agenda, *Cæsar had to do all things.*
Sui (§ 177, *Rem.* 3) purgandi causa, } *For the purpose of excusing himself, herself, themselves.*

A purpose may be expressed,

[a.] After verbs of giving, &c., by a predicate gerundive;
[b.] By *ad* with the accusative of a gerund or gerundive;
[c.] After a noun, by the dative of a gerundive;
[d.] By *causa*, *gratia*, with the genitive;
[e.] By the supine after verbs of motion; as,

[a.] Urbs militibus *diripienda* data est, } *The city was given to the soldiers to be plundered.*
[b.] Ad eas res conficiendas, *For finishing, to finish, these things.*
[c.] Me regem *bello gerendo* creavisti, } *You have made me king* for the purpose *of carrying on the war.*
[d.] Me regem *belli gerendi causa* creavisti, }
[e.] Legati res *repetitum* veniunt, *Ambassadors come* to seek *redress.*

Translate into English.

Germanis neque consilii habendi (§177) neque arma capiendi (§177) spatium datum est. Magna pars equitatus prædandi frumentandique (§176) causa trans Rhenum missa erat. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Omnes homines plura habendi (§135, a) cupidi sunt. Multi in equis parandis (§177) adhibent curam, sed in amicis deligendis (§177) negligentes sunt. Cæsar in Arari pontem faciendum (§177) curavit. Cæsar pontem quem in Rheno faciendum curaverat, rescidit. Hominis mens discendo alitur et cogitando. Breve tempus ætatis satis longum est ad bene honesteque vivendum. Herminius inter spoliandum corpus (§177) hostis veruto percussus est. Loquendi eloquentia augetur legendis (§177) oratoribus et poetis. Principes civitatis, sui conservandi causa, Roma (§163) profugerunt. Fortes et magnanimi* sunt habendi non qui (§129, 2) faciunt, sed qui propulsant injuriam. Illo ipso die mihi (§145) proficiscendum erat. Militibus de navibus erat desiliendum. Mendaci a nullo creditur (§172, *Rem.* 2). Mihi a te noceri non potest (§172, *Rem.* 2).

* Predicate nominative after *sunt habendi*.

Translate into Latin.

☞ The verb *esse* is often omitted with participles.

The Gauls had formed the design of *attacking the town.* Time for *retiring* from (*out of*) the fight was not given to the wearied. The hope *of plundering* had recalled the farmers from their fields. The general gave the city to his soldiers *to be plundered.* The chiefs of the State came to Cæsar *for the purpose of excusing themselves.* The king's daughters had fled from home (XXVIII) *for the purpose of saving themselves.* The Gauls send ambassadors to Rome *to complain-of* (*supine*) injuries, and *to seek* redress. A short life is long enough *to accomplish* all these things. Cæsar *had to do* all things at one time; the flag *had to be set up,* the soldiers *recalled* from the work; (those) who had advanced a little too far, *sent for;* the line *had to be drawn up;* the soldiers *exhorted;* the signal *given.* The soldiers *had* at the same time both to *leap-down* from the ships, and *to fight* with the enemy. We learn by teaching. We live by eating. The Helvetians were desirous of *carrying on* war. We must lead the army over the river. We must *respect* our elders, *favor* our friends, *obey* the laws. We *must love* (§178, *Rem.* 2) our parents and *worship* God. The enemy's ships cannot be hurt (§172, *Rem.* 2) by our sailors.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

§ 181. 1. Sentences are either principal or dependent. A principal sentence makes complete sense when standing alone; a dependent sentence does not make complete sense when alone, but must be connected with another sentence.

2. Dependent or subordinate sentences are of ten kinds, viz.:

[1] *Participial sentences*, i. e. those whose predicate is a *participle*
[2] *Infinitive sentences*, i. e. those whose predicate is an *infinitive*.
[3] *Causal sentences*, introduced by the *causal* conjunctions *quod quia*, &c.
[4] *Final sentences*, introduced by a *final* conjunction.
[5] *Conditional sentences*, introduced by a *conditional* conjunction
[6] *Concessive sentences*, introduced by a *concessive* conjunction.
[7] *Comparative sentences*, introduced by a *comparative* conjunction
[8] *Temporal sentences*, introduced by a *temporal* conjunction.
[9] *Relative sentences*, introduced by a *relative* pronoun.
[10] *Interrogative sentences*, introduced by an *interrogative* word.

3. Every dependent sentence is either a noun, adjective, or adverb, limiting either the subject or predicate of the *principal* sentence on which it depends (*hangs down*).

4. Sentences of the same rank, whether principal or dependent, may be connected by conjunctions, and are then said to be *coordinate* with each other. Coordination is of five kinds, viz.:

[1] *Copulative*, e. g. His father has abandoned him, *and* his friends have deserted him.

[2] *Disjunctive*; e. g. Either his father has abandoned him, *or* his friends have deserted him.

[3] *Adversative*; e. g. His father has abandoned him, *but* his friends will not.

[4] *Causal*; [introduced by *nam, namque, enim, etenim,*] e. g. His friends will desert him, *for* his father has abandoned him.

[5] *Conclusive*; e. g. His father has abandoned him, *therefore* his friends will desert him.

THE MOODS.

§182. RULE XLIII. The indicative is used both in principal and dependent sentences when a fact is stated.

§183. RULE XLIV The subjunctive is used when a thing is stated, not as a *fact*, but simply as *conceived in the mind;*

[a] In a softened assertion; as, *Hoc confirmaverim*, I think I can assert this.

[b] In a question implying doubt, or expecting a negative answer; as, *Quid faciamus!* What shall we do!

(c) To express a supposed case; as, *Forsitan aliquis dixerit*, Perhaps some one will say.

(d) To express a command or prohibition; as, *Ne hoc feceris*, Do not do this.

Rem. The subjunctive is always used to express a command or exhortation in the first person, the imperative having no first person; as, *eamus*, let us go.

TENSES.

§184. The tenses are either primary or historical.

Primary,	PRESENT.	FUTURES.	PRES. PERFECT.
	Amat,	Amabit,	Amavit,
	He loves.	*He will love.*	*He has loved.*
Historical,	IMPERFECT.	PAST PERFECT.	AORIST PERFECT.
	Amabat,	Amaverat,	Amavit,
	He was loving.	*He had loved.*	*He loved.*

RULE XLV *Succession of Tenses.* If there be a primary tense in the principal sentence, there must be a primary in the dependent sentence; if there be an his-

torical tense in the principal, there must be an historical in the dependent.

PRINCIPAL.	DEPENDENT.	
Venio	ut videam,	*I come, that I may see.*
Veniam	ut videam,	*I will come, that I may see.*
Veni	ut videam,	*I have come that I may see.*
Veniebam	ut viderem,	*I was coming that I might see.*
Veni	ut viderem,	*I came that I might see.*

PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

§185. 1. The participle is used to abridge discourse, and may stand in the place of a *causal*, *final*, *conditional*, *concessive*, *relative*, or *temporal* sentence, or a principal sentence connected by *et* with what follows.

2. (a) The participle may agree with the subject or object of the principal sentence, (*participial conjunctive construction*); as, *Aristides patria* pulsus *Lacedæmonem fugit*, *Aristides* when driven *from his country fled to Sparta*:—(b) Or, it may stand with a noun or pronoun in the ablative, without grammatical connection with any word in the principal sentence: as, His rebus constitutis *consul discessit*, These things being determined upon, *the consul departed.* (*Ablative Absolute.*)

3. Here may be noted some peculiarities in the use of the participles.

(a.) The participle in *rus* is used with the verb *esse* to represent the agent as *about to perform*, or *intending* to perform an action. *Locuturus fuit*, He was on the point of speaking. (This is sometimes called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation.*

(b.) The participle in *rus*, especially with verbs of motion, is sometimes used to express a *purpose*. *Ad Jovem Ammonem pergit* consulturus *de origine sua*. *He goes to Jupiter Ammon* to consult *about his origin.*

(c.) The perfect passive participle is often used like a verbal noun in *-io* or *-us*; as, *Ab urbe* condita, *From the* building *of the city*. *Post prælium* factum, *After the* fighting *of the battle*.

§ 186. RULE XLVI. (*Ablative Absolute*). A noun and participle whose case depends upon no other word, are put in the ablative called *absolute*, to express the time, cause, condition, or circumstances of an action.

Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, *in Italiam venit*. } *Pythagoras came to Italy* in the reign of Tarquin, (Tarquin reigning).

Rem. 1. Two nouns, or a noun and adjective, are often used in the ablative absolute without a participle.

Natura duce, *Under the guidance of nature*, (*nature being guide.*)
Manlio consule, *In the consulship of Manlius*, (*Manlius being consul.*)

Rem. 2. This construction is used only when the subject of the participal sentence is different from that of the principal sentence. (A few instances of this construction with a personal pronoun are exceptions.)

§ 187. EXERCISE 58.

Vocabulary.

Repentinus, a, um, *sudden*.
Tempestas, -tatis, *time*.
Ulterior, [274, 1], *further*.
Dyonysius, i, *Dyonysius*.
Syracusæ, ārum, *Syracuse, a city of Sicily*.
Pollicitatio, on-is, *promise*.
Err-are, *to err, to wander*.
De-sper-are, *to despair*.
Atheniensis, is, *an Athenian*.
Messala, æ, *Messala*
Piso, on-is, *Piso*.
Persa, æ, *a Persian*
Arrip-ere, [-io, ripu-, rept-,] *to snatch up*.
Nancisc-i, [nactus,] *to obtain*.
Progred-i, [ior, progressus.] *to go forward*.
Cohort-ari, *to encourage, exhort*.
Cond-ere, [condid-, condit-] *to build, found*.
Com-mitt-ere, [mis-, miss-,] *to commence*.
Del-ere, [delev-, delet-,] *to destroy*.
Aggred-i, [-ior, aggressus.] *to go to, attack*.
Ver-eri, [veritus,] *to fear*.
Ad-duc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] *to lead on*.
Ex sententia, *according to one's notion, satisfactorily*.

EXAMPLE.

Cæsar, *having called a council* ordered, *Cæsar*, consilio convocato, *jussit*.

Translate into English.

Nostri, repentina re perturbati (§ 185, 2, a) arma arripiunt. Barbari, multitudine navium perterriti (§ 185, 2, a)

a litore discesserant. Nactus idoneam ad navigandum (§142, *Rem.* 2) tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia (§167) equites in ulteriorem portum progredi jussit. His rebus ex sententia confectis (§186), imperator, milites cohortatus, prœlium commisit. Viginti annis (§167 *Rem.* 2) ante Catonem natum (§185, 3, c) pater meus vita (§163) decessit. Anno (§167) quadragesimo (363) primo ab urbe condita (§185, 3, c) Numa rex (§136, 2) creatus est. Haud multis annis post Carthaginem deletam (§185, 3, c), Jugurtha natus est. Dionysius tyrannus, Syracusis (§13) expulsus, Corinthi (§ 166, Exc.) pueros docebat. Legatus signum militibus non dedit cupientibus. Natura duce (§186, *Rem.* 1) nunquam errabimus. His rebus constitutis (§186) legati regem de rebus suis desperantem, multis pollicitationibus aggrediuntur (§185, *Rem.* 2). Hac re statim per speculatores (§150, *Rem.* 1) cognita, Cæsar, insidias veritus, exercitum castris (§169) continuit. Alexander in Asiam contendit regnum Persarum occupaturus (§185, 3, b). Cæsar in Italiam profecturus (§185, 3, a) principes civitatum ad se convocat. Consul collem occupaturus est. Athenienses legatos miserunt oraculum consulturos (185, 3, b). Marco Messala et Marco Pisone consulibus (§186, *Rem.* 1) Orgetorix, cupidine regni adductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit.

Translate into Latin.

Who will err under the guidance of nature? Who, pray, will not err under your guidance? In the consulship of Manlius the Gauls sent ambassadors to Rome. These things having been determined upon, the line of battle having been drawn up, the signal having been given, our men commenced battle. Both parties fought (114, 5) bravely. The consul, fearing the enemy's cavalry, kept his forces in

camp (*for*) three days. Two years before the destruction of Carthage the Numidians sent ambassadors to Rome to the senate. The general is going to attack the enemy at sunset. In the reign of Tarquin the proud, many noble citizens were murdered at Rome. The general having called together his lieutenants, ordered them to commence the battle. The Athenians, having consulted the oracle, returned home. Adherbal, (*when*) expelled from Numidia, fled to Rome. These things having been satisfactorily arranged, Cæsar set out to (*in*) Britain.

INFINITIVE SENTENCES.

§188. RULE XLVII. After expressions of *saying, thinking, &c.*, (*verba sentiendi et dicendi,*) and certain impersonal expressions, dependent sentences introduced in English by *that*, are expressed in Latin by the accusative with the infinitive; as,

Dicit me scribere, *He says that I write.*

Rem. 1. The infinitive expresses an action as present, past or future, with reference, not to the present time, but to the time of the leading verb.

[a]	Dicit, *he says* Dicet, *he will say* Dixit, *he has said*	me scribere, *that I write, or am writing.*	me scripsisse. *that I have written.*	me scripturum esse, *that I will write.*
[b]	Dicebat, *he was saying* Dixit, *he said* Dixerat, *he had said*	me scribere, *that I wrote, or was writing.*	me scripsisse, *that I had written.*	me scripturum esse, *that I would write.*
[a]	Dicit, &c.,	epistolam scribi, *that the letter is being written.*[a]	ep. scriptam esse, *that the letter has been written.*	ep. scriptum iri, *that the letter will be written.*
[b]	Dixit, *he said, &c.*	epistolam scribi, *that the letter was being written.*	ep. scriptam esse, *that the letter had been written.*	ep. scriptum iri, *that the letter would be written.*

Hence, after a primary tense (a) the infinitive is translated like the indicative of the same tense, i. e. an inf. present, like an indica-

[a] A doubtful expression, which, however, has been engrafted upon the language

tive present, &c.: after an historical tense (b) the inf. present is translated like the indicative imperfect: the inf. perfect, like the indicative past perfect; the inf. future like the subjunctive imperfect (*should* or *would*); and the inf. future-perfect (*fuisse scripturum*), like the subjunctive past perfect (*should have, would have*).

Rem. 2. The accusative with the inf. fut. passive is properly the object of the supine, the inf. pres. passive *iri* being used impersonally; *dicit epistolam scriptum* iri, he says *that it is gone* to write the letter; i. e. that some one *is going* to write it, and hence, *that it will be written*.

☞ *Rem.* 3. An infinitive sentence is always a noun-sentence, the object of a verb of saying or thinking, the subject of an impersonal verb, or in apposition with another noun.

§189. EXERCISE 59.

Vocabulary.

Negare, *to deny.*
Jugum, i, *yoke.*
Biennium, i, *two years.*
Victor, or-is, *conqueror.*
Prod-itor, or-is, *traitor.*
Cog-ere, [coeg-, coact-,] *to compel.*
Res familiaris, *property.*
Familiaris, e, *pertaining to the family.*
Compar-are, *to acquire.*
Facultas, tat-is, *means, opportunity.*
Larg-iri, *to bribe.*
Neglig-ere, [neglex-, neglect-,] *to neglect.*
Consid-ere, [sed-, sess-,] *to encamp.*
Constat, constitit, *it is evident.*
Animad-vert-ere, [vert-, vers-,] *to perceive.*
Nosc-ere, [nov-, not-,] *to find out, to know.*
Conjic-ere, [-io, jec-, ject-,] *to hurl.*
Pollic-eri, pollicitus, *to promise.*
Sper-are, *to hope.*
Renunti-are, *to bring back word.*
Pull-ere, [pepul-, puls-,] *to beat, drive.*
Mini-ari, *to threaten.*
Confirm-are, *to declare, assert.*
Redd-ere, [reddid-, reddit-,] *to give back, to return.*
Opprim-ere, [oppres-, oppress-,] *to oppress.*

EXAMPLES.

Sub monte, *At the foot of the mountain.*
(a.) Cæsari nunciatur, *Word is brought, it is announced, to Cæsar.*
(b.) Rex *se* negotium confecturum pollicetur, } *The king promises* to finish *the business*
(c.) Latrones *se* regem *occisuros esse* minabantur. } *The robbers threatened* to slay *the king.*
(d.) Imperator *se* regem *futurum* sperabat, } *The general hoped to be king.*
(e.) Memoria (§ 166) tenere, *To remember*
(f.) Cæsar negat *se* posse, } *Cæsar says that he cannot, (denies that he can.)*

(g.) Turpe est regem mentiri, } *It is base* for a king to lie, (*that a king lie.*)

(h.) Constat inter omnes, *All are aware, (it is evident among all.)*

(i.) Dicitur Jugurtham regem esse, } *It is said that Jugurtha is king.* (Impersonal construction.)

Jugurtha dicitur rex esse, } *Jugurtha is said to be king.* (Personal construction.)

Translate into English.

Exploratores dicunt *oppidum* ab hostibus *teneri.* Caius *fratrem* suum magno in periculo *esse* animadvertit. Cæsari (§ 141) notum est *Dumnorigem* Helvetiis (§ 142) *favere.* Reginæ nunciabo *te venisse.* Galba ab exploratoribus certior factus est *Gallos* omnes *discessisse.* Cæsari nuntiatum est *Gallos* propius *accedere* ac lapides telaque in nostros *conjicere.* Nuncius pollicetur *se* negotium ex sententia *confecturum esse.* Principes seperabant *se* totius Galliæ (§ 159, note) potiri *posse.* Equites renuntiaverunt oppidum *expugnatum esse.* Cæsar memoria tenebat *Lucium Cassium* consulem *occisum* (esse), *exercitumque* ejus ab Helvetiis *pulsum* et sub jugum *missum esse.* Cæsar negavit *se* Helvetiis iter per provinciam dare *posse.* Ad eas res conficiendas (§ 177) Helvetii *biennium* sibi (§ 142) satis *esse* duxerunt. Æqum est *victorem parcere* victis (§ 142). Non sine causa dictum est *divitias* alas habere. Constat inter omnes *neminem* sine virtute beatum (§ 174, *Rem.* 3) esse *posse.*

Translate into Latin.

The cruel chief threatened to slay (§ 189, Exc.) the women and children. Ariovistus declared that he would not return the hostages. Cæsar said that he was not leading the army against his country. This base traitor will *say* that he has *not* announced our plans to the enemy. Who can assert that he has never violated the laws of God? Dumnorix asserted that he was about to seize the kingdom.

All were aware that the robbers had slain the merchant. It is not just *for a rich man to oppress* the poor. It is said that in Africa men eat human flesh. The Belgians are said to be the bravest of all the Gauls. Word had been brought to Cæsar that the enemy had moved his camp, and had encamped at the foot of the mountain. Cæsar had said (*dicere*) that he would not neglect the injuries of the Æduans. The chief thought that he would compel the nobility by force. The consul hopes by these things to increase (§ 189, Ex. *d*) his property, and to acquire means for (*ad*) bribing.

CAUSAL SENTENCES.

§ 190. Dependent causal sentences are introduced by all the causal conjunctions except *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *etenim*, which introduce principal sentences.

RULE XLVIII. The subjunctive is used in causal sentences when a statement is made, not as a fact, but as the assertion or opinion of some one else; as,

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet juventutem, *Socrates was brought to trial*, because (*as men said*) he corrupted *the youth*.

Rem. 1. A verb of saying or thinking is sometimes expressed, and the subjunctive still retained by a species of attraction. What would have been the predicate of the causal sentence becomes the accusative with the infinitive. *Iratus est Cæsar* quod diceret *leges esse violatas*, instead of *iratus est Cæsar* quod *leges* essent *violatæ*, Cæsar was angry, *because* (as he alleged) the laws *had been violated*.

Rem. 2. Dependent causal sentences are nouns, usually limiting the predicate like a causal ablative. The causal conjunctions *quod*, *quia*, &c., are relative words.

§ 191. EXERCISE 60.

Vocabulary.

Liscus, i, *Liscus.*
Graviter, *severely.*
Accus-are, *to censure, accuse, to call to account.*
Quod, (conj.) *because.*
Tam, (adv.) *so.*
Necessarius, a, um, *necessary, critical.*
Propinquus, a, um, *near.*
Sublev-are, *to relieve.*
Harudes, um, *the Harudians.*
Quia, *because, (expressing a motive.)*
Quoniam, (quum—jam.) *since, because, (as every body knows.)*
Unde, (rel. adv.) *whence, from which.*
Presens, ent-is, *present.*
Incus-are, *to blame, find fault with.*
Popul-ari, *to lay waste.*
Impe-l-ire, *to hinder.*
Religio, on-is, *religion, a vow.*
Superstitio, on-is, *superstition.*
Intro-duc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] *to introduce.*
Concilium, i, *council.*
Corrump-ere, [rup-, rupt-,] *to corrupt.*
Re-prehend-ere, [prehend-, prehens-,] *to rebuke.*
Vac-are, *to be unoccupied.*
Partim, [adv. §31, *Rem.* 2] *partly.*
Consul-ere, [sulu-, sult-,] *to consult.*
Præter modum, *unduly, beyond measure.*
Ject-are, *to discuss, to toss about.*
Ratio, on-is, *plan, reason.*

EXAMPLES.

Res ita se habet, *This is the case, (the thing thus has itself.)*
Multis presentibus (§ 186,) *In the presence of many.*
Civitati consulere, *To consult for, look to, the state.*

Translate into English.

Cæsar, principibus convocatis, Divitiacum et Liscum graviter accusat *quod* tam necessario tempore (§167), tam propinquis hostibus (§186, *Rem.* 1), ab iis non *sublevetur ;* multo (§168) etiam gravius, *quod* ab iis *sit destitutus* queritur. Ædui legatos miserunt questum (XLII, [a]) *quod* Harudes agros eorum *popularentur.* Socrates necatus est, non *quod* juventutem *corrumperet* et novas superstitiones *introduceret,* sed *quia* Athenienses de sceleribus *reprehendebat.* Id ea ratione Cæsar fecit ; quod nolebat eum locum unde (§ 129, *Rem.* 10) Helvetii discesserant vacare (§ 188). Dumnorix se in Gallia relinqui (§ 188) volebat, partim *quod* insuetus navigandi (IX, [a]) mare *timeret,* partim *quod* religionibus *impediretur.* Cæsar, concilio convocato, centuriones omnium ordinum [§ 132] vehementer incusavit *quod* de rebus minime ad eos pertinentibus sen-

tentiam *dixissent*. Quoniam civitati [§ 142] consulere non possum, mihi consulam. Quoniam resistere debet, in urbem redeamus [§ 184, *Rem*].

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar cut down the bridge which he had had built [see §130, examples] over the Rhine, because he was unwilling for the Germans to follow him into Gaul. Was not Aristides banished from his country, because [*as men thought*] he was unduly just? The Æduans complained that [*because*] Ariovistus had [*as he alleged*] led a great army of Germans across the Rhine. Cæsar, because he was unwilling [*a fact*] for these things to be discussed in the presence of the ambassadors, quickly dismissed the council. The consul said that since he could not consult for the state, he would look to his own safety. You desire to slay me, not because [*as you allege*] I have violated the laws of the commonwealth, but because I have rebuked you severely for your crimes. The shepherd blamed his son strongly, because he had neglected to shear the sheep. Since this is the case, let us set out. Liscus said that since such was the case, he would speak a few things.

FINAL SENTENCES.

§192. Final sentences express a *purpose* or *result*, (the end to which an action tends,) and are introduced by the final conjunctions *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus*.

§193. RULE XLIX. The predicate of a final sentence is in the subjunctive; as,

Veni ut videam, *I have come* to see.

NOTE.—As a purpose has reference to the future, and is not a *fact*, but something conceived in the mind, it should obviously be ex-

pressed by the subjunctive. A result is a *purpose accomplished*, and was regarded by the Latins, not so much in the character of a fact, as of what was intended to follow, or would naturally be expected to follow, in the circumstances, and is therefore indeterminate; hence the use of the subjunctive.

Rem. 1. *Ut* or *uti* expresses either a purpose or a result.

Veni ut videam, *I have come* to see, (*that I may see.*)
Eo impetu milites ierunt ut *hostes se fugæ* mandarent, } *The soldiers went with such violence* that the enemy took to flight.

Rem. 2. [a.] *Ne* always expresses a purpose, [*that—not, lest.*]

Te obscero ne *hoc* facias, *I beseech you* not to do *this.*

A negative result must be expressed by *ut—non.*

[b.] With verbs of fearing *ne* is translated *that*, and *ut*, *that—not*, the final sentence being constructed with reference to the *contrary purpose* or *hope* implied in the verb of fearing. *Timeo ne* moriatur, *I am afraid* that he will die. [*It is my purpose that he shall not.*] *Timeo ut* moriatur, *I am afraid that* he will not die. [*It is my purpose that* he shall.]

Ne—non is sometimes used for emphasis, especially after a negative; as, *Non vereor* ne *tua virtus opinioni hominum* non *respondeat*, I am not afraid that your valor will not answer the expectation of men.

Rem. 3. *Quo, that*, is generally used in preference to *ut*, when a comparative enters the sentence.

Cæsar pontem fecit quo facilius flumen *transiret.*

Rem. 4. *Quin, but that, but that—not*, [=*qui non* or *ut—non,*] is used with negative expressions and expressions of doubt.

Nemo est quin putet, *There is one* who does not think.
Nemo tam imperus est quin putet, *No one is so foolish* as not to think.

Rem. 5. *Quominus, that—not,* is generally used with expressions of hindering in preference to *ne.*

Nihil Caio obstat quominus scribat, *Nothing hinders Caius* from writing.

Quin is sometimes used if a negative precedes.

Rem. 6. *Ut* is often omitted after *volo* and verbs of *permitting, asking, advising, commanding, reminding.*

Ne is is often omitted after *cave.*

Rem. 7. A final sentence is usually a noun, though a result may be an adverb limiting *sic, ita, tam, tantus,* &c. *Ut* in the sense of *as* is always a relative word.

§ 194. EXERCISE 61. (*Ut, Ne, Quo.*)

Vocabulary.

Commutatio, on-is, *change.*
Alacritas, tat-is, *cheerfulness.*
Morti-fer, a, um, *mortal, deadly.*
Pristinus, a, um, *former.*
Communicatio, on-is, *communication.*
Neu, *or* neve, [cop. fin. conj.] *and that not, nor,* [*after a final sentence.*]
Motus, us, *movement, commotion.*
Adduc-ere, [dux-, duct-,] *to lead to, or against, to bring.*
Colloqui, locutus, *to confer, converse.*
Ex equis *or* equo, *on horseback.*
Pac-are, *to subdue.*
Item, [conj.] *likewise.*
Subito, (adv.) *suddenly.*
Una, (adv.) *together.*
Continens, ent-is, *continent.*
Imper-are, (intr.) *to order.*
Prae-cip-ere, (io, cep-, cept-,) *to instruct, to enjoin upon.*
E-dic-ere, [dix-, dict-,] *to issue an edict.*
In-stitu-ere, [stitu-, stitut-,] *to instruct, teach.*
In-cend-ere, (cend-, cens-,) *to set on fire.*
Ex-ur-ere, (uss-, ust-,) *to burn up.*
In-nasc-i, innatus, *to be born in, to spring up.*
Tim-ere, (timu-,) *to fear,* [*as a coward.*]
Metu-ere, [metu-,] *to fear, to be apprehensive.*
Ver-eri, *to feel awe of, to fear.* [As tim-ere *never,* and metuere *rarely has a supine-stem, the tenses formed from the stem are supplied by* vereri *in either sense.*]
Coqu-ere, [cox-, coct-,] *to cook.*

EXAMPLES.

	Negative Purpose.	*Negative Result.*
That—no, that—not any,	Ne quis, (§89, *Rem.* 2)	Ut nullus.
That no one,	Ne quis,	Ut nemo.
That no one at all,	Ne quisquam,	Ut nemo omnium.
That—never,	Ne unquam,	Ut nunquam.
That nothing,	Ne quid,	Ut nihil.

Tanta vis probitatis est *ut* eam vel in hoste *diligamus,* } *So great is the power of honesty, that* we love *it even in an enemy.*

N. B. *In final sentences expressing a result, the subjunctive is translated like the indicative of the same tense.*

Operam dare, *To take care.*
Præceptum est, *Instructions were given.*
Edictum est, *An edict was issued.*
Pater filio præcepit *ne* unquam *mentiretur*, } *The father instructed his son* never to lie.
Dominus servo imperavit *ut* equum *infrenaret*, } *The master commanded the servant* to bridle *the horse.*
Dominus servo imperavit *ne* equum *infrenaret*, } *The master ordered the servant* not to bridle *the horse.*

Translate into English.

Id mihi sic erit gratum *ut* gratius esse nihil *possit*. Ea non *ut* te *instituerem* scripsi. Cæsar castella communit, *quo* facilius Helvetios prohibere *possit*. Oppidani multis cum lacrymis imperatorem obsecrabant *ne* oppidum *incenderet*. Præceptum erat Labieno *ne* prœlium *committeret*. Esse [§ 111, 8] oportet *ut vivamus*, non vivere *ut edamus*. In eo itinere Orgetorix persuasit Castico [§ 141, *note*] *ut* regnum in civitate sua *occuparet;* itemque Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri [§ 127] Divatiaci, *ut* idem *conaretur* persuasit. Rauracis persuasum erat *uti*, oppidis suis vicisque exustis [§ 186], una cum Helvetiis *proficiscerentur*. Consul edixit *ne* quisquam in castris coctum cibum *venderet*. Tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit *ut* omnium animos *perturbaret*. Hac oratione habita [§ 186], tanta commutatio facta est *ut* summa alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi [§ 177] *innata esset*. Legem brevem esse oportet *quo* facilius ab imperitis *teneatur*. Consul militibus imperavit *ne* quem civem *interficerent*. Cæsar veritus *ne* quis motus in Gallia *fieret*, Labienum in continente reliquit. Milites metuunt *ne* mortiferum *sit* vulnus Scipionis. Timeo *ut* hostes ad urbem *perveniant*. Cæsar milites cohortatus est *ut* suæ pristinæ virtutis memoriam *retinerent, neu perturbarentur*

animo [§ 161.] Opera dabatur *ne* quod his [§ 143] colloquium inter se, neve communicatio esset.

Translate into Latin.

The enemy ran forward so swiftly *that* time *was not given* to our men for throwing their darts. So great a panic took possession of the citizens *that* no man *was able* to take up arms. An edict has been issued *that no one leave* the town. Instructions had been given to the horsemen *not to pursue* the enemy too far. Wise men eat *to live*, but fools and gluttons live *to eat*. I advise you, my son, *never to believe* a liar. Balbus is such a liar [*so lying*] *that he is* never *believed* [*it is never believed to him.*] I fear *that some one* has announced our plans to the enemy. Ariovistus demanded *that they should confer* on horseback, *and not bring* more [*amplius*] than ten horsemen apiece to the conference. The Belgians fearing [*having feared*] *that* if all Gaul were subdued [*abl. abs.*] the army of the Romans *would be led against* [*ad*] them, collected great forces. The citizens feared *that* the auxiliaries *would not reach* the city. Cæsar commanded [*imperare*] the soldiers *to run forward* swiftly, *and not give* the enemy time for collecting themselves. Ariovistus said that he feared *that* snares *were prepared* for him. It has been said that brave men do not fear death. The consul thought that Catiline had formed the design of setting the city on fire. An edict was issued *that no* bread [*nothing of bread*] *nor* any [*quis*] other cooked food should be introduced into the camp.

§ 195. EXERCISE 62.—(*Quin, quominus.*)

Vocabulary.

Flere, (flev-, flet-,) *to weep*
Dubius, a, um, *doubtful*.
Ob-st-are, (stit-, stit-,) *to stand in the way of, to hinder*. (Intr).

Compell-are, *to call, address.*
Dubit-are, *to doubt.*
Circum-ven-ire, (ven-, vent-) *to surround.*
Conjunctio, on-is, *friendship, intimacy.*
Avoc-are, *to call away, separate.*
Investig-are, *to investigate.*
Cimon, on-is, *Cimon.*
Custos, custod-is, *guard.*
Itaque, (conj.) *and so, therefore.*
Haud multum, (§153) *not much, not far.*
Bib-ere, [bib-, bibit-] *to drink.*
Im-ped-ire, *to prevent, to tangle the feet.* (Tr.)
De-terr-ere, *to frighten off, to deter.*
Præter-mitt-ere, (mis-, miss-) *to leave undone.*
Ad-spic-ere, -io, [spex-, spect-,] *to look at.*
Im-pon-ere, [posu-, posit-,] *to post, to place.*
Fru-i, fructus, *to enjoy.*
Parmenio, on-is, *Parmenio.*
Medicus, i, *physician.*
Medicamentum, i, *dose of medicine.*

EXAMPLES.

Fieri non potest *quin venturus sit,* { *It cannot be* that he is not going to come, (*but that he is going to come*); *He is certainly going to come.*

Nunquam adspexit *quin* fratricidam *compellaret, She never saw him* without calling *him a fratricide.*

Milites retinere non possum *quin currant, I cannot restrain the soldiers* from running.

Facere *or* mihi temperare } non possum *quin fleam, I cannot help* weeping.

Non est dubium / Negari non potest / Quis dubitat } *quin* deus mundum *regat,* { *There is no doubt / It cannot be denied / Who doubts* } that God rules *the world.*

☞ *After the above expressions* quin *must be translated* that.

Nihil prætermisi *quin* ad te *veniam, I have left nothing undone* to come *to you.*

Nihil Caio obstat *quominus veniat,* / Nihil obstat *quominus* Caius *veniat,* { *Nothing hinders Caius* from coming.

Per me stat *quominus venias, It is my fault* that you do not come.

Quid te impedivit *quominus venires? What prevented you* from coming?

Minimum (§153) abfuit *quin caderet, He was very near* falling.

Translate into English.

Non dubium est *quin* virtus summum *sit* bonum. Balbum nunquam adspexit *quin* proditorem *compellaret.* Fieri non potest *quin* alii a nobis *dissentiant.* Non dubitavit Adherbal *quin* Jugurtha eum interficere *conaretur.* Quis dubitare potest *quin* multo (§168) turpius *sit* fallere quam falli? Germani retineri non potuerunt *quin* in nostros tela *conjicerent.* Per Considium stetit *quominus* Cæsar Helve-

tios *circumveniret*. Orgetorix non dubitat *quin* brevi tempore totius Galliæ regnum occupaturus *sit*. Altitudo fluminis hostes deterrebat *quominus* transire *conarentur*. Nihil prætermisit Cicero *quin* Pompeium a Cæsaris conjunctione *revocaret*. Nihil tam difficile est *quin* quærendo investigari *possit*. Cimon nunquam in hortis custodem imposuit, *ne* quis *impediretur quominus* fructibus (§159, *Rem.* 6) *fueretur*. Parmenio audiverat venenum a Philippi medico regi (§141) parari; itaque epistola scripta (§186) eum deterrere voluit *quominus* medicamentum *biberet* quod medicus dare constituerat.

Translate into Latin.

It cannot be denied that Cæsar was (a man) of the greatest courage. Who can doubt that our men are able to sustain the attack of the enemy (for) many months? The general *will certainly* relieve us in a few days. It cannot be denied that your son was born many years (§167, *Rem.* 2) after the building (§185, 3, c) of the city. I never converse with you *without becoming* wiser. What hinders us *from persuading* Marius *not to storm* the town? It was not Cicero's fault that Pompey was not separated from intimacy with (*of*) Cæsar. The army was not far *from being beaten* and *sent* under the yoke. The soldiers could not be restrained *from running forward* with a great shout. Orgetorix was not far *from getting possession of* the government of all Gaul. There is no man *but knows* that all things are ruled by God. The queen could not help *weeping*.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

§196. Express a condition, and are introduced by the conditional conjunctions, *si*, if; *nisi* or *ni*, unless, if—not; *sin*, but if; *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, provided.

The principal sentence, or complement of the condition, is called the *conclusion*.

§ 197 RULE L. (a.) If the condition is represented as a *fact*, the indicative is used both in the condition and conclusion.

Si vera dicis, *leges* violavi, } If you speak the truth, (*of which I have no doubt,*) *I have broken the laws.*

(b.) If the condition is represented as *possible*, or *likely to be realized*, the subjunctive present or perfect is used in the condition, and the indicative, (generally future,) in the conclusion. (*Indeterminate Condition.*)

Si pecuniam *habeat*, dabit, If he has *the money, he will give it.*

Si mihi pecuniam *dederit*, ibo, } If he will give (shall have given) *me the money, I will go.* (The money must be *given* before I *go.*)

(c.) If the *non-existence* of the condition is implied, the subjunctive is used both in the condition and conclusion, the imperfect for present or future time, the past-perfect for past time.

Si pecuniam *haberet, daret,* } *If he* had *money* (*now,*) *he* would give *it.* *If he* should have *money,* (*at any future time*) *he* would give *it.*

Si pecuniam *habuisset, dedisset,* } *If he* had had *money, he* would have given *it.* (Past time.)

Rem. 1. On the same principle the subjunctive-present or present-perfect is used to express a possible wish, the imperf. or past-perf. to express a vain wish.

Utinam filius { vivat! / viveret! / vixisset! } *O that my son* { *may live!* / *were living!* / *had lived!*

Rem. 2. The condition is sometimes (a.) implied in some other expression; as, sine cibo *nemo vivere posset, No one would be able to live* without food; or (b.) altogether suppressed, in which case the

indicative imperfect is frequently used; as, *Satius erat mori quam mentiri*, It would be *better (if necessary) to die than to lie.*

Rem. 3. When the non-existence of the condition is implied, the indicative (especially the imperfects *decebat, oportebat, debebam, poteram,* and *eram* with a gerundive or adjective,) are sometimes used in the conclusion; as, *Si victoria dubia esset tamen omnes bonos reipubli ce subvenire* decebat, If the victory were doubtful, yet all good men *ought* to come to the assistance of the State.

Rem. 4. The use of the imperfect or past-perfect in a conditional sentence does not necessarily imply the non-existence of the condition, as they are often used simply because the leading verb is past, and not because the character of the condition requires their use. See §184.

Rem. 5. In a conditional sentence the subjunctive is usually translated like the indicative.

Rem. 6. Conditional sentences are adverbs.

§198. EXERCISE 63.

Vocabulary.

Minu-ere, [minu-, minut-] *to make less, to weaken.*
Exerc-ere, *to exercise.*
Subig-ere, [ag-, act-] *to subjugate.*
Incesse-re, [iv-, it-] *to provoke.*
Injuri-a lacess-ere, *to provoke by injury, to injure.*
Dol-ere, *to grieve.*
Præceptum, i, *precept.*
Inimicitia, æ, *enmity.*
Adhuc, [adv.] *still, yet.*
Maturè, [adv.] *soon.*
Utinam, [interj.] *O that! I wish that!*
Con-venire, [veni-, vent-] *to agree.*
Stipendium, i, *tribute, tax.*
Pend-ere, [pependi, pens-] *to weigh, to pay.*
Quotannis, [adv.] *yearly.*
In-citi, *to stir up.*
Perpetuus, a, um *unending.*
Re-spond-ere, [spondi, spons-] *to answer.*
Cav-ere, [cavi, caut-] *to avoid.*
Invit-are, *to invite.*
Vera dicere, *to speak truth.* [literally, *true things.*]
Subvenire alicui, *to come to one's assistance.*

(a) Si hoc *feceris*, te amabo, *If you do* (shall have done) *this, I will love you.* (The *doing* must be accomplished before the *loving.*)

(a) If the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can follow, the Latins use a perfect tense, where in English we use a present.

Translate into English.

Memoria minuitur *nisi* eam *exerceas*. *Si* Helvetii flumen transire *conentur*, Cæsar eos prohibebit. Cæsar Æduis bellum *intulisset* nisi obsides *misissent*. Alexander, si diutius *vixisset*, totum orbem terrarum *subegisset*. Utinam pater meus *vivat!* Utinam rex *viveret*! Cæsar ab Ariovisto postulavit *ne* quam multitudinem hominum in Galliam *transduceret*, *neve* Æduos injuria (§159) *lacesseret*, *neve* his sociisque eorum bellum *inferret*; "*Si* id ita *feceris*," inquit, "mihi (§143) populoque Romano perpetua amicitia tecum *erit*." Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit; "Æduis injuria (§159) bellum non inferam, *si* in eo quod convenerunt *maneant*, stipendiumque quotannis *pendant*." Nisi te satis incitatum esse *confiderem*, plura *scriberem*. Sine ferro (§197, *Rem.* 2, [c]) fieri non *posset* (*it would be impossible*) ut agri colerentur. Imperatore interfecto (§197, *Rem.* 2) fieri non potest quin exercitus pellatur. Si vis me fiere, primum dolendum est (§178) ipsi tibi (§145).

Translate into Latin.

If you speak the truth, Cato has done (to) you a great injury. If this is the case (§191, Ex.), I will set out immediately to Rome. No man can be happy, *unless* his life is *ruled* by the precepts of virtue. If Cæsar *had been able* to avoid these enmities, he *would be* still *living*. If I *knew*, I *would say*. If you *live* well, you will die happily. *I wish you had come* a little (§168) sooner. Ariovistus *would not have led* his army across the Rhine unless *he had been invited* by the Sequanians. It would be impossible to believe this report *if* we *did not know* that the messenger always speaks the truth. If I *had known* your danger, I *would have come* to your assistance. If I go to Rome, I will send

you the money which you demand. If the Helvetians *had endeavored* to cross the river, Cæsar *would hove prevented* them. Ariovistus *would not be waging* war on the Æduans if they *had paid* the tribute. Without an army it *would be impossible* to wage war.

CONCESSIVE SENTENCES

§ 199. Express something *granted* or *yielded*, and are introduced by the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quanquam*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *etiamsi*, *&c.*, with the general meaning *although*.

§ 200. RULE LI. (a) If the thing granted is represented as a *fact*, the indicative is used, generally with *quanquam*, *etsi*, or *tametsi* as,

Romani, quanquam fessi erant, tamen instructi procedunt, } *The Romans, though they were weary, yet march in order of battle.*

(b) A concession merely for argument's sake, or where the non-existence of the thing granted is implied, (a mere conception), is expressed by the subjunctive, usually with *quamvis* or *licet*, sometimes with *etiamsi* or *etsi*; as,

Mendacium, quamvis occuluftur, tamen turpe est, } *A falsehood*, though it be concealed, *is nevertheless base.*

Rem. 1. The complement of a concessive sentence is an adversative sentence introduced by *tamen*.

Rem. 2. *Quanquam* is properly the acc. sing. fem. of *quisquis*, (*rem* being understood); thus (a) *In repect to whatever thing the Romans were weary, &c.*

Rem. 3. *Etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*, (*even if*,) and *ut* in the sense of *even if*, *although*, are properly conditional conjunctions, the mood to be used depending upon the character of the condition. (See §197).

Rem. 4. *Quamvis, quantumlibet, quamlibet,* are properly relative pronouns, (*as much as you please, however much*). Thus, in example (b). A falsehood, *however much it may be concealed, let it be concealed as much as you please*, &c. (See §210, *Rem.* 3).

Rem. 5. *Licet* is an impersonal verb, *ut* being omitted; as, *Fremant omnes* licet. *dicam quod sentio, Though all cry out, (it is allowed that all cry out,) I will say what I think.*

Rem. 6. The subjunctive is always used with *ut* or *quum* concessive.

Rem. 7. Concessive sentences are adverbs.

§ 201. EXERCISE 64.

Vocabulary.

Occult-are, *to conceal.*
Fessus, a, um, *weary.*
Nondum, (adv.) *not yet.*
Tamen, (conj.) *nevertheless, yet.*
Emolumentum, i, *advantage.*
Crebro, (adv.) *frequently.*
Put-are, *to think.*
Strenuus, a. um, *brisk, active.*
Italicus, i, *Italian.*
Penes, (prep.) *with, in the power of.*
Deditio, onis, *surrender.*
Advers-ari, *to resist, object.*
Sic, (adv.) *thus.*
Cognosc-ere, (nov-, cognit-,) *to find out.*
Accid-ere, (accid-, ——,) *to happen.*
Suspic-ari, *to suspect.*
Con-sequi, secutus, *to follow, to pursue, to attain.*
Nesc-ire, *not to know.*
Suad-ere, suas-, suas-, *to advise.*
Potior, us, (potis, potissimus,) *better; preferable to.*
Reri, ratus, *to think, to deem.*
Transire, (transi-, transit-,) *to pass over, to pass away.* (§111, 9.)
Vit-are, *to shun, to escape.*

Translate into English.

Quod turpe est, id, *quamvis occultetur*, honestum fieri nullo modo potest. Nostri milites *quamquam* itinere et prœlio fessi *erant*, tamen, consule imperante, ad summum (§128, *Rem.* 8) collem celeriter procurrerunt. Cæsar, *etsi* nondum eorum consilia *cognoverat*, tamen fere id quod accidit suspicabatur. Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt, quod decet, *etsi* nullum consecuturum emolumentum *vident*. Quod (§129, *Rem.* 2) crebro aliquis videt, non miratur, *etiamsi* causam *nescit*. *Licet* strenuum metum *putes* esse, velocior tamen spes est. Italici Adherbali suadent *uti* se et oppidum Jugurthæ *tradat*; at ille, *tametsi* omnia potiora (XVIII, b) fide (XXX) Jugurthæ rebatur, tamen quia penes Italicos,

si adversaretur (§197, *Rem.* 4), cogendi potestas erat, deditionem facit. Divitiæ, *quamvis* magnæ *sint*, tamen alas habent. *Quamvis* prudens atque sapiens *sis*, mortem vitare nullo modo potes: sic transit gloria mundi.

COMPARATIVE SENTENCES

§ 202. Express comparison, and are introduced by comparative conjunctions, (*than, as,*) *quam, sicut, velut, prout, tanquam, quasi, utsi, acsi;* with *ac* and *atque* (as or than).

§ 203. RULE LII. In comparative sentences

(a) A *fact* is expressed by the indicative; as,

Quam *maximas* potest *copias cogit, He collects as great forces* as he can.

(b) A *mere conception* and not a fact, is expressed by the subjunctive; as,

Me adspicitis quasi *monstrum* essem, *You gaze at me* as if I were *a monster.*

Rem. 1. The comparative conjunctions are for the most part either relative or conditional words. Thus *quam, than,* is a relative, *rem* being understood. Cicero eloquentior fuit quam (*rem*) Cæsar (*eloquens fuit*). *In-respect-to-what* Cæsar *was eloquent*, Cicero was more eloquent; i. e. *Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar.* So in example (a), (Copias cogit (*tam*) maximas *quam* potest, He collects forces very great *in that degree in which degree* he can,) *quam* is an adverbial relative, *tam* understood being its antecedent. In the example, *In horto ambulabam* sicut *meus est mos*, (— as my custom is), *sic* is an adverbial demonstrative limiting *ambulabam*, and *ut* an adverbial relative having *sic* as its antecedent;—(In horto *eo modo* ambulabam *quo modo* meus est mos *ambulare*). In example (b) *quam* (quasi=quam si) is a relative, and *si* a conditional conjunction. Me aspicitis *quam (adspiceretis) si &c.* You gaze at me *as (you would gaze) if* I were &c.

Rem. 2. In comparative sentences the subjunctive is mostly translated by the indicative.

Rem. 3. Comparative sentences are adverbs.

TEMPORAL SENTENCES

§ 204. Point out the time of an action, and are introduced by the temporal conjunctions *ut*, *ubi*, *quum*, when; *postquam*, *posteaquam*, after; *antequam*, *priusquam*, before; *quando*, when, whenever; *simulac*, *simul*, as soon as; *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, while, as long as, until.

NOTE 1. In the narration of facts, the indicative will of course be used in temporal sentences; as, *Postquam in urbem venit*, After he came into the city

NOTE 2. The adverbial relative *quam* or *cum*, (at what time, when, while), frequently has also a *causal* or *concessive* force, *since*, *although*. As a pure particle of time, it takes the indicative; but it is also followed by the subjunctive imperfect or past-perfect in the narration of past facts, especially when the aorist-perfect is used in the principal sentence. When the subjunctive is used, however, the idea of cause is usually combined with that of time. *Quum*, *causal* or *concessive*, always takes the subjunctive. Hence,

§ 205. RULE LIII. The subjunctive is always used (a) with QUUM *causal* or *concessive*; (b) frequently also with QUUM *temporal*, especially when the aorist-perfect is used in the principal sentence.

(a) Quæ quum ita sint, *Since these things are so.*

(a) *Ceres frumenta invenit*, quum *antea homines glandibus* vescerentur, *Ceres invented grains*, whereas *men before* lived *on acorns.*

(b) Quum *nostri arma* cepissent, *hostes se receperunt*, When *our men* had taken up *arms*, *the enemy retreated.* (Here *quum cepissent* points out both the time and cause of the enemy's retreat.)

§ 206. RULE LIV. With *antequam* and *priusquam* (a) the indicative is used to express the simple priority

of one action to another, (both having actually been performed.)

Filios convocavit antequam mortuus est, *He called together his sons* before he died.

(b) The subjunctive is used, (1), when the action is future and doubtful; (2), when the non-existence of the action is implied; (3), in indefinite general expressions.

(1) *Cæsar*, priusquam *quidquam* conaretur, *Divitiacum vocavit*, } *Cæsar*, before he attempted *anything*, *called Divitiacus.*

(The *attempting* was future to the *calling*, and dependent upon the result of Cæsar's interview with Divitiacus).

(2) Prius *ad hostium castra pervenit*, quam *Germani quid agerctur sentire* possent; } *He reached the enemy's camp* before *the Germans* could *find out what was going on.*

(It is here implied that the Germans *never could* find out.)

(3) *Tempestas minatur* antequam surgat, } *The tempest threatens* before it rises. (A general truth).

Rem. 1. After a future in the principal sentence, the indicative present or future-perfect is used with *antequam* and *priusquam*; as, Antequam *pro Murena dicere* instituo, Before I begin to speak *for Murena, I will say a little for myself.*

Rem. 2. In historical narrative the subjunctive imperfect and past perfect are sometimes used with these conjunctions, very much in the same way as with *quum* temporal. *Paucis* ante *diebus* quam *Syracusæ* caperentur, *A few days* before *Syracuse* was taken.

§ 207 RULE LV *Dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of *until*, are followed by the indicative when a fact is stated; by the subjunctive, when the action is doubtful or future, (not a *fact*, but a *conception*).

Locum relinquere noluit dum *Milo* veniret, } *He would not leave his post* till *Milo* should come.

(These conjunctions in the sense of *while, as long as*, take the indicative.)

Rem. 1. All temporal sentences are adverbs, and in such sentences the subjunctive is for the most part translated like the indicative.

§208. EXERCISE 65.

Vocabulary.

Aries, -etis, *ram.*
Infirmus, a, um, *weak.*
Scapha, æ, *boat.*
Commius, i, *Commius.*
Atrebas, [at-is,] *Atrebatian.*
Mandatum, i, *order.*
Ver, [ver-is,] *spring.*
Acerbus, a, um, *bitter.*
Phocion, on-is, *Phocion.*
Perpetuo, *continually.*
Epaminondas, æ, *Epaminondas,* [Appr. I.]
Obsidio, on-is, *siege.*
Pavor, or-is, *fright.*
Se recipere, *to recover one self*
Exspect-are dum, *to wait for anything to happen.*
Periculum facere, *to make a trial.*
Fulguratio, on-is, *lightning.*
Sonus, i, *sound.*
Rusticus, a, um, *rustic.*
Suessiones, um, *Suessiones.*
Bœotii, orum, Bœotians.
Dementia, æ, *madness.*
Sum-ere, [sumps-, sumpt-,] *to take.*
Rosa, æ, *rose,*
Verres, -is, *Verres.*
Compl-ere, [plev-, plet-,] *to fill.*
De-ferre, [tul-, lat-,] *to carry* [*from one place or person to another.*]
Dif-ferre, [distul-, dilat,] *to put off, defer.*
In-cip-ere, [-io, cep-, cept-,] *to begin.*
In-cid-ere, [incid-, incas-,] *to fall upon.*
Con-sperg-ere, [spers-, spers-,] *to sprinkle.*
Præ-st-are, [stit-, stit- and stat-,] *to be superior.*
At-ting-ere, [-tig-, tact-,] *to touch, reach.*
De-sist-ere, [stit-, stit-,] *to leave off.*
Bell-are, *to war.*
Claud-ere, [claus-, claus-,] *to shut up.*
Ex-pon-ere, [posu-, posit-,] *to set forth, explain.*
Præ-mitt-ere, [mis-, miss-,] *to send before.*
De-fervesc-ere, [ferv-,] *to subside.*
Inter-ced-ere, [cess-, cess-,] *to come between, to intervene.*
Deliber-are, *to deliberate.*
De-flu-ere, [deflux-, deflux-,] *to flow away.*

Translate into English.

1. QUUM, *when, since, although, whereas.*

Cæsar *quum* id *nunciatum esset,* maturavit ab urbe proficisci. Quod (§129, *Rem.* 9) *cum animadvertisset* Cæsar, scaphas longarum navium militibus (XXV) compleri jussit. Britanni Commium Atrebatem, *quum* ad eos Cæsaris mandata *deferret,* comprehenderant, et in vincula conjecerant. *Quum* rosam *viderat,* tum incipere (§188) ver arbitrabatur. O acerbam mihi memoriam (XXIII) temporis illius et loci, *quum* hic in me *incidit, quum complexus est, conspersitque* lacrymis, nec loqui præ mœrore potuit! Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, *quum* ditissimus esse *posset.* Homines, *quum* multis rebus (XXVI) infirmiores *sint,* hac re (§161) maxi-

me bestiis (§142) præstant, quod loqui possunt. Ædui, *quum* se suaque ab Helvetiis defendere non *possint*, legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt rogatum (XLII) auxilium. *Quum* vita sine amicis metus (IX, [a]) plena *sit*, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare. Quæ *cum* ita *sint*, ad urbem proficiscamur (§183, *Rem.*)

2. *Postquam, antequam, priusquam.*

Ea *postquam* Romæ *audita sunt*, timor omnes invasit. Decem *post* diebus (§167, *Rem.* 1 & 2) *quam* Cæsar in Italiam *pervenit*, legiones duæ erant conscriptæ.

(R. LV, [a]) *Ante* decimum diem (§167, *Rem.* 2) *quam* vita (§163) discessit, liberos omnes convocavit. Hæc omnia *ante* facta sunt *quam* Verres Italiam attigit. Epaminondas non *prius* bellare destitit *quam* Lacedæmonem obsidione (§159) clausit.

(b) Cives *prius* se dediderunt *quam* aries murum *attigisset*. Antequam de republica *dicam*, exponam breviter consilium meum. Cæsar priusquam hostes se ex pavore et fuga *reciperent*, in fines Suessionum exercitum duxit. Ad hæc cognoscenda *priusquam* periculum *faceret*, Caium præmittit. *Ante* videmus fulgurationem *quam* sonum *audiamus*.

3. *Dum, donec, quoad.*

Dum hæc geruntur, Cæsari nunciatum est hostes propius accedere. Lucius, quoad potuit, pontem defendit. Epaminondas, quum animadverteret mortiferum se vulnus accepisse, ferrum in corpore continuit *quoad renuntiatum est* vicisse (§188) Bœotios. Irati rogandi sunt* ut vim differant, *dum defervescat* ira. Cæsar, ut spatium intercedere posset *dum* milites *convenirent*, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum. Dum vivimus (§183, *Rem.*) vivamus. Cæsar summæ dementiæ (vii) esse judicabat, ex-

* Ought to be requested.

spectare *dum* hostium copiæ *augeantur*. Rusticus exspectat *dum defluat* amnis.

RELATIVE SENTENCES

§209. Are introduced by a relative word. (For construction of relatives see §129.)

The predicate of a relative sentence is of course in the indicative when a *fact* is stated. The subjunctive is used in three cases.

§210. RULE LVI. The subjunctive is used in relative sentences; (a) expressing *purpose*, *result*, or *cause* (*qui*=*ut* or *quod with demonstrative*). As,

Legatos miserunt qui (=ut ii) *pacem* peterent, } *They sent ambassadors* to sue for *peace*. (*Purpose*)

Non is sum qui *hoc* faciam, } *I am not such a one* as to do *this*. (*Result.*)

Male fecit Hannibal qui *Capuæ* hiemarit, } *Hannibal did wrong* in wintering (because he wintered) *at Capua*. (*Cause*)

(b) In indefinite general expressions, both affirmative and negative.

Sunt qui dicant, *There are* some *who* say.

Nemo est orator qui *se Demosthenis similem esse* nolit, } *No one is an orator* who is unwilling *to be like Demosthenes*.

(c) To express the words or opinions of some one else, and not of the author,

Nunicatum est equites qui præmissi essent *revertisse*, } *Word was brought that the horsemen* who had been sent forword *had returned*.

Rem. 1. The subjunctive with *qui* expresses a purpose with reference to the *object* of the sentence, a purpose with reference the subject being expressed by *ut*. (See §193. §180, Example.) Thus *qui pacem peterent* means, *that they, (the ambassadors,) might seek peace*. *Qui* may be used with the passive construction; *Legati missi sunt qui pacem peterent;* where the object in the active becomes subject in the passive.

Rem. 2. *Quippe, utpote,* and *ut* are frequently joined with *qui* expressing a cause. The indicative is frequently used with *quippe qui.*

Rem. 3. The subjunctive is used in indefinite general expressions introduced by any relative word, whether adjectival or adverbial. Ubi *res* posceret *castellum communivit,* Wherever *circumstances* required, *he built a fort.* Such relative sentences express a *condition,*—thus, *If circumstances anywhere required,* &c. But the indicative is frequently used; as, Quamcunque *in partem vestri impetum* fecerant *hostes loco cedere cogebantur.*

Rem. 4. The poets and some prose writers use the indicative with *sunt qui, erant qui,* &c. The indicative will of course be used when a definite subject is introduced. *Sunt feræ quæ domari non* possunt, *There are wild beasts* which cannot *be tamed.* (A fact.) But the subjunctive is used even then, if a *particular fact* is not stated; as, *sunt feræ* quæ *domari non* possint, ——— *such that they cannot be tamed* (if one should make the attempt.)

Rem. 5. A relative sentence is an adjective, limiting the antecedent. *Puer qui legit,* the *reading* boy. But as an adjective often agrees with a noun while limiting a verb, so an adjective sentence frequently limits the predicate, expressing the *purpose* (like a dative of purpose,—§144), or the cause (like an ablative of cause,—§159.) See examples, LVI, a.

§211. EXERCISE 66.

Vocabulary.

Divinus, a, um, *pertaining to the Gods.*
Quo, (adv. for old acc. *quom.*) *whither.*
Rudis, e, *uncivilized.*
Com-mitt-ere, (mis-, miss-.) *to commit.*
Argutus, a, um, *sagacious.*
Fortunatus, a, um, *fortunate.*
Præco, on-is, *herald, crier.*
Pecc-are, *to do wrong, to sin.*
Complures, a, and ia, *very many, quite a number.*
Phalanx, phalang-is, (*Gr.* acc. phalanga, *pl.* phalangas,) *phalanx.*
Homerus, i, *Homer.*
Adulatio, on-is, *flattery.*
Fortuna, æ, *fortune.*
Natus, (part. of *nascor,*) *a son.*
Aut,—aut, *either.—or.*
Ad-ven-ire, (ven-, vent-,) *to arrive.*
Præ-esse, (fu-,) intr-. *to preside over.*
Di-lig-ere, (lex-, lect-.) *to choose, to love.*
Vid-eri, visus, (*pass. of* videre,) *to seem.*
Cens-ere, (censu-, cens-,) *to be of opinion.*
Re-per-ire, (reper-, repert-, *to find.*
In-sil-ire, (silu-, ——,) *to leap upon.*
Re-vell-ere, (vell-, vuls-,) *to tear off.*
Præ-pon-ere, (posu-, posit-,) *to prefer.*
Una, (*parte* understood, §166.) *together.*
Fall-ere, (fefell-, fals-,) *to deceive.*
Occid-ere, (cid-, cas-,) *to fall, to die.*
Druides, um, *Druids.*
Fama, æ, *fame, report.*
Præditus, a, um, *endowed.*
Esuriens, ent-is, (part. of *esurire,*) *hungry.*
Quam, (relative adv.) *as.*

EXAMPLES.

(a). *Dignus est* qui ametur (LVI, a), } He is worthy of being loved (*that he be loved.*)

(b). *Idoneus est* cui res mandetur (LVI, a), } He is fit to have the business entrusted to him (*that the business be entrusted*).

(c). *Doctior sum quam* qui *a te* docear (LVI, a), } I am too learned to be taught by you,—(*than that I be taught.*)

(d). Quod sciam (LVI, b), *As far as I know.*
Quod meminerim, *As far as I remember.*

(e). *Legatus*, ut imperatum erat, *flumen transiit*, } *The lieutenant*, as had been ordered, *crossed the river.*

(Here *ut* is a relative pronoun, subject of *imperatum erat*, the antecedent being contained in *flumen transiit.*)

(f). *Nemo est* qui putet (LVI, b), *There is no one who* thinks.
Nemo est quin putet (§193), *There is no one who* does not think.

(g). An quisquam est? } *Is there any one?* (stronger than *numquis*).

Translate into English.

1. PURPOSE, LVI, a.—Britanni Druides habent, *qui* rebus (§141, *Note*) divinis *præsint.* Ædui legatos Romam (§154) miserunt *qui* auxilium a senatu (§151, *Rem.* 1) *peterent.* Legati missi erant *qui nunciarent* oppidum expugnatum esse (§188). Galli locum non habebant *quo* se *reciperent.* Cæsar equitatum præmisit *qui* (§129, *Rem.* 7) hostium itinera *explorarent.*

2. RESULT, LVI, a.—Nemo tam rudis est ad *quem* fama sapientiæ tuæ non *pervenerit.* Socrates dignus erat *qui* ab omnibus *diligeretur.* Caius non satis idoneus visus est *cui* tantum negotium *mandaretur.* Non sumus ii *quibus* nihil verum esse (§174) *videatur.* Non is sum *qui* tantum scelus *committam.* Major sum quam *cui* (§142) *possit* fortuna nocere. Argutior fuit Jugurtha quam *qui* Mecipsæ verbis *falleretur.*

3. CAUSE, LVI, a.—O fortunate adolescens, *qui* tuæ

virtutis Homerum præconem (§151, b) *inveneris*! Peccavisse (§174) mihi videor *qui* a te *discesserim*. Omnes laudabant fortunas meas, *qui* (§129, *Rem.* 7) natum tali ingenio (§160) præditum *haberem*.

4. LVI, b.—Sunt *qui censeant* una animum et corpus occidere (§188). Reperti sunt complures *qui* in phalangas *insilirent*, et scuta manibus *revellerent*. Nihil est *quod* homines tam miseros (§151, b) *faciat* quam impietas et scelus. An quisquam est *qui* libertati servitutem *præponat?* Nemo est *quin* Balbum stultum (§151, b) *existimet*.

5. LVI, c.—Arioristus dixit se obsides *quos* ab Æduis *haberet* non redditurum (§188). Cæsar negavit se Helvetiis *quod postularent* dare (§174) posse.

Translate into Latin.

The Britons sent ambassadors *to say* (LVI, a) that they would return the prisoners whom they had taken (LVI, c). No one of the soldiers, *as far as I know*, has left his post. This boy has never, *as far as I recollect*, deceived me. Is Caius (a) suitable (person) *to commit* your daughter to? Kings are not too wise *to be conquered* by flattery, nor too sagacious *to be deceived*. Some say (*there are who say,*) that the consul is both (*et*) a liar and a thief. *Some thought* that the enemy would not besiege the city. Is there any one *who doubts* that (§193, *Rem.* 4) God rules the world? Is there any one who thinks that a robber will return the booty *which* he *has taken?* The townsmen will send the noblest of the state *to sue for* (ask) peace. The general is worthy *of being loved* by all the soldiers. The lieutenant, as was ordered, sent forward the cavalry to *sustain* the attack of the enemy till the footmen should arrive (§207).

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

§212. Are introduced by an interrogative word, and contain a question.

1. A *direct* question is asked by means of a principal sentence; as, *Quis venit?* Who comes?

2. An *indirect* question contains the *substance* of a direct question, without giving the exact words, and the sentence by which it is asked is always dependent; as, Janitor interrogavit *quis veniret*, The porter asked *who came*.

3. Questions, both direct and indirect, are asked by means of interrogative pronouns (§88), and the particles *ne, nonne, num* (§81); and double questions, by *utrum—an, whether—or*. In an indirect question *ne* means *whether, if;* nonne, *if not;* num, *whether, if*.

§213. RULE LVII. The subjunctive is used in a direct question implying doubt; as,

Quo fugiam! Whither shall I fly?

§214. RULE LVIII. The subjunctive is always used in indirect questions; as,

Nescio quis veniat, *I do not know who* is coming.

Rem. 1. The older writers sometimes use the indicative in indirect questions.

Rem. 2. The first part of a double question is often omitted. *Cujum pecus est hoc?* an Melibœi?—*Is it another person's*, or is it Meliboeus's?

Rem. 3. Dependent interrogative sentences are nouns.

§215. EXERCISE 67

Vocabulary.

Quo? *whither?*
Permultum, (adv.) *very much.*
Consultum, i, *a thing determined;* abl. *on purpose.*
Incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
Vitreus, a, um, *of glass.*
Concavus, a, um, *hollow.*
Manus concava, *the hollow of the hand.*
Unde? *whence?*
Abd-ere, (abdid-, abdit-,) *to run for concealment.*
Sit-ire, *to be thirsty.*
Interrog-are, *to ask.*
Appollo, in-is, *Appollo.*
Ab Ap. petere, *to inquire of Appollo.*
Infans, ant-is, *infant.*
Irasc-i, iratus, *to be angry with.*
Providentia, æ, *providence.*

Cur? *why?*
Deorsum, (adv.) *down-hill.*
Delphi, orum, *Delphi, (a city of Greece.)*
Patina, æ, *dish.*
Morini, orum, *the Morini.*
Af-ferre, (attul-, allat-) *to bring forward.*
Causam afferre, *to explain.*
Præstantia, æ, *excellence.*
Catinus *or* um. i, *bowl.*
Fictilis, e, *earthen.*
Casus, us, *chance.*

EAXMPLES.

Quid [§155] interest? *What difference does it make?*
Nihil [§155] refert *or* interest, *It makes no difference.*
Ubi gentium [§134]? { *Where in the world?* [*In what place of the nations!*
Nescio quis *clamavit,* { *Somebody or other* [I don't know who shouted. [A *fact.* *Nescio-quis*= *aliquis,* but stronger.]

Translate into English.

Quisnam in horto ambulat? Nescio *quis* in horto *ambulet.* Puer dicere non potuit *quo* latrones sese *abdidissent* Sæpe non utile est scire *quid* futurum *sit.* Qualis *sit* animus, ipse animus nescit. Permultum interest *utrum* casu *an* consulto *fiat* injuria. Caii nepos-ne es, an filius? Incertum est Caii nepos-ne *sim,* an filius. Si sitis (L, a) nihil interest *utrum* aquam *bibas* an vinum, nec refert *utrum sit* aureum poculum, an vitreum, an manus concava. Nonne canis lupo (§142, *Rem.* 3) similis est? Puer patrem interrogavit *nonne* canes lupis similes *essent.* Puer interrogatus est *utrum* pluris (§137) patrem *an* matrem faceret. Numquis (§89) infantibus (§142) irascitur? Interrogat Caius *num* quis infantibus *irascatur.* Quo itis, pueri? In hortum? Arioviston (§142, *Rem.* 3) mirum visum est *quid* in ejus Gallia Cæsari (§143) negotii (§134) *esset.* Mentiri (§173) honestum-ne *sit* factu (XLII, b) *an* turpe, nemo dubitat. *Unde* legati *venissent* rex nunquam reperire potuit. An quisquam dubitat casu-*ne* an dei providentia mundus *regatur?* Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandarum (§177) causa morabatur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui causas afferrent (LVI, a) *cur* civitas populo Romano bellum *intulisset.* Nescio quis in horto *ambulabat.*

Translate into Latin.

Does any man doubt concerning the excellence of virtue?

The poet asks *whether any one* doubts concerning the excellence of virtue. Can you explain, my son, *why* water always *flows* down hill? The king sent messengers to Delphi (§154) to inquire (LVI, a) of Appollo *whether* he should give his daughter in marriage to Clodius *or* Glaucus. What difference does it make to a hungry man *whether* he *eats* his food out of a golden dish *or* an earthen bowl? It makes no difference to the dead whether the king is a wise man or a fool. It is uncertain whether the girl *thinks more of* (§137) her father or mother. It is uncertain whether Balbus values life or honor most (*pluris*). It seems wonderful to me what business either you or your father *has* (§143) in my garden. Did Caius kill his brother by chance, *or* on purpose? I have not been able to find out *whether* the injury *was done* by chance *or* on purpose. No one knows *where* in the world Glaucus *is wandering*.

§216. In narrating the words or opinions of another the writer may give, either

(a). The exact words of the speaker; as, *Cæsar dixit*, "Veni, vidi, vici," *Cæsar said*, "I came, I saw, I conquered," (*Oratio recta*, or *Direct discourse;*) or

(b). The *substance* of what the speaker said, but not the exact words; as, *Cæsar dixit* se venisse, vidisse, vicisse, *Cæsar said* that he had come, seen, conquered. (*Oratio obliqua*, or *Indirect discourse.*)

§217 RULE LIX. Principal sentences in the *oratio recta*, are expressed in the *oratio obliqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent sentences in the *oratio recta*, take the subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*.

Oratio recta.	*Oratio obliqua.*
Ariovistus dixit, "Obsides quos ab Æduis habeo non reddam,"	Ariovistus dixit *se* obsides quos ab Æduis *haberet* non *redditurum esse*.

Rem. 1, An imperative in the *oratio recta*, becomes a subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*, a verb of commanding or exhorting being understood.

Rem. 2. The reason for the use of the subjunctive referred to above (Rule LIX) is obvious, as the writer is making the statement, not as a fact upon his own authority, but as the opinion or assertion of some one else.

Rem. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used in relative sentences in the *oratio obliqua*, the relative being equivalent to *et* with a demonstrative, and the sentence being therefore dependent only in form. The same construction occurs occasionally in other dependent sentences.

Rem. 4. The indicative is occasionally used in dependent sentences in *oratio obliqua*.

Rem. 5. Questions in which the indicative is used in direct discourse, are generally expressed in oblique discourse by the accusative with the infinitive, if the subject is of the *first* or *third* person; by the subjunctive, if the subject is of the second person.

Si reteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num *eius recentium injuriarum memoriam deponere* posse? (*Si—vellem, num*—possum?)

An quicquam superbius esse? (*An quicquam superbius* est?)

Quid tandem vererentur, *aut cur de sua virtute* desperarent? (Quid veremini, aut cur desperatis?)

If the subjunctive is used in direct discourse (§183), it is of course retained in oblique.

§ 218. EXERCISE 68.

Vocabulary.

Super-are, *to be remain.*
Invictus, a, um, *invincible.*
Sub-ire, (§111, 2,–subi-, subit-,) *to go under.*
Suspic-ari, *to suspect.*
Opulentus, a, um, *powerful.*
Plus (adv.) plusq-, *to be more powerful.* See §159, *Rem.* 2.
Stipendiarius, a, um, *tributary.*
Con-gredi, (-gr-, gressus,) *to meet, to fight.*
Propterea quod, *for the reason that, because.*
Cog-nosc-ere, (nov-, nit-,) *to ascertain.*
Intellig-ere, (lex-, lect-,) *to find out, know.*
Accid-ere, (accid-, —,) *to happen.*

Translate into English.

Ariovistus respondit, Æduos, *quoniam* belli fortunam

tentassent,* et armis superati *essent*, stipendiarios (§130, 2) esse factos: neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse: cum Cæsar vellet, *congrederetur* (§217, *Rem.* 1): intellecturum (§188) quid invicti Germani, *qui* inter annos quatuordecim tectum non *subiissent*, virtute (facere) possent (§214). Diviatiacus dixit 'pejus (§128, *Rem.* 5) victoribus Sequanis quam Æduis victis accidisse (§188), *propterea quod* Ariovistus in eorum finibus *consedisset*, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, *qui esset* optimus totius Galliæ (§134), *occupavisset*.' Consul pollicitus est 'se, *postquam* rex finem loquendi *fecisset*, legatos auditurum esse.' Imperator respondit 'se, *etsi* nondum principum consilia *cognovisset*, tamen conjurationem fieri† suspicari.' Philosophus respondit 'negari (§174) non posse quin homines mortales essent (§193).' Rex dixit, '*qui* (§129, *Rem.* 2) opulentior *esset*, *etiamsi* injuriam acciperet (§200), tamen, *quia* plus *posset*, facere (§174) videri.'

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar *said* (*negavit*) that he could *not* give the Helvetii a way through the province, because he feared that (§193, 2, b) they would do injury to his allies. The scouts announced to Cæsar that the cavalry which he had sent forward had been routed by the enemy; that the skirmishers had not been able to cross the river; that the forces which the Germans had collected would arrive in three days. Word was brought that the footmen, the flight of the horsemen having been seen, had retreated to the mountain.

(Change the examples in the Latin exerise from *oratio obliqua* to *oratio recta*.)

* For *tentavissent*. † Depends on *se suspicari*.

APPENDIX I.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§219. 1. Nouns of this declension transferred from the Greek end in *e* (fem.); *as* and *es*, (masc.)

PARADIGM.

N.	Pe *nel* o pe,	*N.*	[illegible] as,	*N.*	An *chi* ses,
G.	Pe *nel* o pes,	*G.*	[illegible] æ,	*G.*	An *chi* sæ,
D.	Pe *nel* o pæ,	*D.*	Æ *ne* æ,	*D.*	An *chi* sæ,
Ac.	Pe *nel* o pen,	*Ac.*	Æ *ne am*, *or* an,	*Ac.*	An *chi* sen,
V	Pe *nel* o pe,	*V.*	Æ *ne* a,	*V*	An *chi* se, *or* a,
Ab.	Pe *nel* o pe.	*Ab.*	Æ *ne* a.	*Ab.*	An *chi* se, *or* a.

2. Nouns in *e* transferred from the Greek sometimes have *en* in the accusative.

3. Those Greek nouns which have a plural are declined in that number like *mensa*.

4. The gen. plural of patronymics in *es*, and of some compounds in *gena*, and *cola*, has *um* instead of *arum*.

APPENDIX II.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

§220. 1. Greek nouns of the second declension end in *os* (masc. and fem.), and *on* (neut.), commonly changed in Latin into *us* and *um*.

PARADIGM.

					Barbiton, *a lyre*	
	Singular.				*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	*De* los,	An *dro* ge *os*,		*N.*	*bar* bi ton,	*bar* bi ta,
G.	*De* li,	An *dro* ge o, *or* i,		*G.*	*bar* bi ti,	*bar* bi ton,
D.	*De* lo,	An *dro* ge o,		*D.*	*bar* bi to,	*bar* bi tis,
Ac.	*De* lon.	An *dro* ge o, *or* on,		*Ac.*	*bar* bi ton,	*bar* bi ta,
V.	*De* le,	An *dro* ge *os*,		*V.*	*bar* bi ton,	*bar* bi ta,
Ab.	*De* lo.	An *dro* ge o.		*Ab.*	*bar* bi to.	*bar* bi tis.

2. The plural of Greek nouns in *os* is declined like the plural of *dominus*, except that they sometimes have *-on* instead of *-orum* in the genitive.

3. Greek proper names in *eus* are declined like *dominus*, except that they have the vocative in *eu*. They sometimes retain the Greek forms in the other cases, viz.: gen. *cos*, dat. *ei* (contracted *i*), acc. *ea*, and are of the third declension.

4. *Pelage* is found as the acc. pl. of *pelagus*.

APPENDIX III.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§221. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension :—

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
S.	Lampas,	-adis, -ados,	-adi,	-adem, -ada,	-as,	-ade.
Pl.	-ades,	-adum,	-adibus,	-ades, -adas,	-ades,	-adibus.
S.	Heros,	-*o*is,	-*o*i,	-*o*em, -*o*a,	-os,	-*o*e.
P.	-*o*es,	-*o*um,	-*o*ibus,	-*o*es, -*o*as,	-*o*es,	-*o*ibus.
	Chelys,	-yis, -yos,	-yi,	-ym, -yn,	-y,	-ye *or* y.
	Poesis,	-is, -ios, -eos,	-i,	-im, -in,	-i,	i.
	Achilles,	-is, -ei, -i -eos,	-i,	-em, -ea, -en,	-es, -e,	-e *or* -i.
	Orpheus,	-eos,	-ei,	-ea,	-eu,	See §229.3.
	Aer,	-eris,	-eri,	-era,	-er,	-ere.
	Ildo,	-us,	-o,	-o,	-o,	-o.

APPENDIX IV.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§22. 1. Nouns are derivd from { other nouns, *Denominatives;* adjectives, *Abstracts;* verbs, Verbals.

DENOMINATIVE NOUNS.

2. The ending *ium* added to the stem of a noun denotes office or condition, and sometimes a collection or assemblage; as, *colleg-ium*, (*colleg-a*), the office of colleague, an assemblage of colleagues, a *college*.

3. The ending *imonium* added to a noun-stem denotes condition, and derivatively, several other relations: as, *matr-imonium*, motherhood, the married state; patr-imonium, fatherhood, then derivatively, *that which results from being a father, what a father gives a son, what a son inherits*, a patrimony.

4. The ending *-etum* added to the stem of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *laur-etum*, a laurel grove; *querc-etum*, an oak grove.

5. The *diminutive* endings, *lus, la, lum, ulus*, (*a, um*,) *olus*, (*a, um*,) sometimes *culus, unculus, uleus*, denote a small specimen of the primitive. *Libellus*, (*liber*,) a little book; *filiolus*, (*filius*,) a little son.

6. *Patronymics* are personal names derived from the name of one's father or other ancestor. They end in *ides* (penult short, fem. *is*); *ides* (penult long, fem. *eis*); *ias, iades* (fem. *as*); and some feminines in *ine* or *ione*. As,

Tyndar-ides, *a son of Tyndarus*; Tyndar-is, *a daughter of Tyndarus*. Ner-ides, *a son of Nereus*; Ner-eis, *a daughter of Nereus*.

7. *Amplificatives* are personal names given on account of the great size of some part of the body. They are formed by adding *o* to noun-stems; as, *capit-o*, big head; *nas-o*, big-nose.

ABSTRACT NOUNS.

8. Adjectival abstracts are formed by adding to adjective stems the endings *tas, itas, etas*; *tus, itus, itudo*; *ia, itia, ities*; *ea*, and *imonia*.

VERBAL NOUNS.

9. The name of an action or condition is expressed

(a) By adding *or* to the *present-stem* (generally of intransitive verbs); *mær-or*, grief; *splend-or*, brightness.

(b) By adding *ium* to the *present* or *supine-stem*; as, *gud-ium*, joy; *exit-ium*, destruction.

(c) By adding *io* or *us* to the supine-stem; as, *lect-io*, a reading; *cant-us*, a singing.

(d) Sometimes by adding *ela*, *imonia*, *imonium*, to the present-stem, or *ura* to the supine-stem; as, *quer-ela*, complaining, a complaint.

10. *Ura* added to the supine-stem usually denotes the result of an action; as, *pict-ura*, the result of painting, a *picture*.

11. The doer of an action is expressed by *or*, (fem. *rix*), added to the supine-stem; as, *vict-or*, *vict-rix*, a conqueror. Some nouns in *tor* are formed from other nouns, though an intermediate verb is always supposed to exist; as, *vi-a*, *vi are*, *vi at-or*; *gladi-us*, *gladi-are*, *gladi-at-or*.

The doer is expressed by adding *a* or *o* to the present-stem of a few verbs; as, *scrib-a*, *comed-o*.

12. The endings *ulum*, *bulum* (*brum*,) *culum* (*clum* or *crum*,) *trum*, added to the present-stem, express the instrument, sometimes the place, for performing the action; as, *ven-a-bulum*, a hunting spear; *veh-i-culum*, a vehicle. These endings are sometimes added to noun-stems; as, *acet-abulum*, a vinegar cruet.

13. The ending *men* added to the present-stem, expresses the thing in which the action of the verb is exhibited; as, *flu-men*, that which exhibits *flowing*, a river; *ag-men*, something which exhibits *motion*, an army on the march.

14. The ending *mentum*, added to the present-stem, usually with a connecting vowel, expresses the means of performing the action; as *doc u-mentum*, a means of showing, a proof.

15. The ending *orium* added to the supine-stem expresses the place where an action is performed; as, *audit-orium*, a lecture-room.

16. Adjectives are mostly derived from verbs (*verbals*), or from nouns and adjectives, (*denominatives*).

DENOMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

17. The ending *eus*, (sometimes *nus*, *neus*,) means *made of*, as, *aur-eus*, made of gold; *ebur-nus*, made of ivory. Sometimes it expresses resemblance in character; as, *virgin-eus*, maidenly. The endings *inus* (penult short,) and *enus* have the same meaning.

18. The endings *alis*, *anus*, *aris*, *arius*, *ilis* (penult long,) *atilis*, *icus*, *icus*, *ius*, *inus* (penult long,) and *ivus*, mean *pertaining to*, *belonging*

to, and form *possessive* adjectives. The ending *ilis* often denotes character; as, *puer-ilis*, boyish. These adjectives are often used as nouns, the limited noun being omitted; as, *ferr-arius* (*faber*,) a smith; *medic-ina* (*ars*,) the physician's art, medicine; *avi-arium*, a place pertaining to birds, an aviary; *ov-ile*, something pertaining to sheep, a fold.

19. The endings *osus* and *lentus* mean *full of*; as, *vin-osus*, full of wine; *fraud-u-lentus*, full of fraud.

20. From names of places are formed possessives in *anus*, *as*, *ensis*, *ius*, *icus*; as, *Athen-i-ensis*, of Athens, an Athenian.

21. The ending *atus* means *furnished with*, *wearing*; as, *al-atus*, winged; *barb-atus*, bearded.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES.

22. The ending *bundus* added to the present-stem, with a connecting vowel, has the meaning of the participle present, but usually with an intensive force; as, *err-a-bundus*, wandering to and fro; *cund-us* has sometimes the same meaning.

23. The ending *idus*, added to the present-stem, expresses state or condition; as, *cal-idus*, cold; *rapidus*, rapid.

24. The ending *uus* added to the stem of an intransitive verb, expresses condition or tendency;—added to the stem of a transitive verb, it has a passive meaning; as, *congru-us*, agreeing; *noc-uus*, hurtful; *conspic-uus*, visible.

25. The endings *bilis* (with a connecting vowel,) and *ilis*, added to verbal stems, express passively, capability or desert; as, *fac-ilis*, capable of being done; as, *am-a-bilis*, deserving to be loved. Sometimes they are active in meaning; as, *horr-i-bilis*, producing horror.

26. The ending *icius*, or *itius*, added to the supine-stem, has a passive sense; as, *fict-icius*, feigned.

27. The ending *ax* expresses an inclination—generally an evil one; as, *rap-ax*, rapacious.

28. The ending *ivus* added to the supine stem expresses, actively capacity or tendency; as, *conjunct-ivus*, having a tendency to unite, conjunctive.

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

29. From noun and adjective stems are formed

(a) Intransitives (in *ō, eo, or,*) denoting *to be* that denoted by the primitive; as, *comit-or*, I accompany.

(b) Transitives (*o, or,*) denoting *to do* or *make, to exercise, employ* or *use* upon something, that which is denoted by the primitive; as, *fraud-o*. I use fraud, I defraud; *liber-o*, I make free.

30. From verbs are derived the following:

(a) *Frequentatives*, expressing frequency, or increase, of the action expressed by the primitive. They are formed by adding the endings of the first conjugation to the supine-stem, *at* passing into *it;* as, *clam-are* (clam-at-,) to cry—*clam-it-are*, to cry aloud, or frequently. A few add *ito* to the present-stem; as, *ag-ito*. Frequentatives are sometimes formed from frequentatives; as, *curro, curso, cursito; venio, vento, ventito.*

(b) *Inceptives*, expressing the beginning of an action or condition. They are of the third conjugation, and are formed by adding *sco, scor* to the present-stem with a connecting vowel; *lab-a-sco*, I begin to totter; *ard-e-sco*, I begin to be warm; *profic-i-scor*, I begin to make myself forward, I set out.

(c) *Desideratives*, expressing strong desire. They are of the fourth conjugation, and are formed by adding *urio* to the supine-stem of the primitive; as, *es-urio*, (*edo,*) I desire to eat, I am hungry. They are few in number.

(d) *Diminutives*, which express trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the present or supine stem; as, *conscrib-illo*, I scribble.

(e) *Intensives*, which express earnest action. They are of the third conjugation, and are formed by adding *esso*, or *isso*, to the stem of the primitive; as, *fac-esso*, I do with all my might.

NOTE. Many verbs of the above classes have only the meaning of the primitive.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE FORMATION.

§223. 1. Every verb-form consists of two parts, the stem and the ending. The ending consists of the *personal signs*

(for the most part pronominal roots of the different persons); the *connecting vowel*; and, in some tenses, the *tense-sign*. Though for the sake of convenience we call the radicals *am-*, *mon-*, and *aud-* the present-stems of the verbs *amare*, *monere*, and *audire*, the stems are in fact *ama-*, *mone-*, and *audi-*; verbs of 1st, 2nd, and the 4th conjugations may, therefore, be termed *pure* or *vowel* verbs, while only those of the 3rd conjugation have consonant stems. Thus, in the form *ama-ba-tis*, (*ama-eba-i-tis*,) *ama-* means *love*; *eba-*, the tense-sign, marks incomplete action in past time, (the *e* being absorbed by *a* of the stem,) and means *did*; *i*, the connecting vowel, or *mood-sign*, is absorbed by the *a* preceding, while *tis*, the personal sign, means *ye* or *you*. The whole, if literally rendered, means *love-did-ye*, or according to the English idiom, *ye love-did*, *ye love-d*.

2. The following tables show the personal, mood, and tense-signs, which, uniting with the verb stem, produce the various verb forms.

(a) PERSONAL ENDINGS.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
Person.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Active.	m,	s, *Ind. Perf.* sti.	t,	mus,	tis, *Ind. perf.* stis.	nt.
Passive.	r,	ris, re,	tur,	mur,	mini,	ntur,

NOTE. The personal sign *m* is the radical of the Greek, Latin, and English *me*: *mus* is the pluralized form: *s*, frequently interchanged with *t*, is the radical of *tu*, (Greek *su*, English *th-ou*,) and *tis* is the same form pluralized, the *t* being resumed: *t*, of the third person, (plur. *nt*,) has a demonstrative force, and is found as a prefix in *tantus*, *talis*, &c.; and as a suffix in *id*, (English *i-t*,) *is-te*, &c.

The [illegible] the passive is *r*, and enters into all the passive endings except *i*, which is wholly unlike the rest, and is generally

considered a participial ending (Greek *menoi*,) *estis* being understood;—*ama-mini estis*. The personal signs for the Imperative are, *to*, (pl. *tote*,) *to*, (pl. *nto*,) Pass., *re* or *tor*, (pl. *mini*,) *tor*, (pl. *ntor*.)

(b) MOOD SIGNS.

Persons.		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Indicative.	All but Pres.-Perfect, and Fut., 3rd and 4th conj.	o,	i, (*pass.* e,	i,	i,	i,	u.
	Pres.- Perf.	*i*,	i,	i,	i.	i,	eru
	Fut., 3rd and 4th conj.	a,	i,	i,	i,	i,	u.
Subjunctive	Pres., 2nd, 3rd, and 4th conj.	*a*,	*a*,	*a*,	*a*,	*a*;	*a*.
	Pres., 1st conj.	*e*,	*e*,	*e*,	*e*,	*e*,	*e*
	Pres.-Perf.	i,	i, *i*,	i,	i, *i*,	i, *i*,	*i i*.
	Imperf. and Past-Perf.	e,	*e*,	*e*,	*e*,	*e*	*e*.
Imperative.		—	e,	e,	—	i.	u.
Inf. Active *e*, *pass.* i.							

Note. The mood-signs of the Indic. are short (except *i* and *eru* of the pres.-perf.); those of the Imper. are short; those of the Subj. long (except *i* of the pres.-perf. which is long or short.)

(c) TENSE SIGNS.

	Pres.	Imperf.	Fut.	Pres.-Perf.	Past-Perf.	Fut.-Perf.
Indicative.	none,	ebe,	eb, 1st & 2nd conj. e, 3rd & 4th conj.	none,	era,	er.
Subjunctive.	none,	er,		er,	iss,	
Infinitive.	er,			iss,		

Note. The sign of completed action must not be confounded with the tense signs. It is

In the 1st conj. *v*, sometimes passing into *u*,—*sec-u-i*;
" " 2nd " *v*, generally passing into *u*,—*mon-u.i*;
" " 3rd " generally *s*, sometimes *u*.
" " 4th " *v*.

Before it the final letter of the stem is lengthened; as, ama-vi, fle-vi, audi-vi. The reduplication is sometimes used, as in Greek, to indicate completed action; as, *mo-mord-i*, *po-posc-i*, *ve-ven-i*, (contr. ven-i,) *mo-mov-i*, (contr. mov-i). Such perfects as pav-i, (*pa-sc-o*,) quiev-i, (*quie-sc-o*,) sprev-i, (*sper-n-o* for *spre-n-o*,) are regularly formed on vowel-stems, strengthened by the addition of *sc*, (App. IV. 30, b,) and *n*.

3. Where two vowels come together, the former usually absorbs the latter, the two short syllables making one long one. It must be borne in mind, however, that no vowel in Latin can be long before *m*, *t*, or *r*, except in certain monosyllables. The mood-sign *o* and the personal-sign *m*, never stand together, but one or the other is dropped; as, *amao(m)*, *amaba(o)m;—amo*, *amabam*.

4. In the following table the stem, sign-sign mood-sign, and personal-sign, are exhibited.

PARTS ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

Full Form.	*Contracted Form.*	*Full Form.*	*Contracted Form.*
reg-o (m)	reg-o	ama-o (m)	am-o
reg-i-s, &c.,	reg-is &c,	ama-i-s &c,	am-as
reg-u-nt	reg-unt	ama-u-nt	am-*a*nt
reg-*e*ba-(o) m	reg-*e*bam	ama-*e*ba-(o) m	am-*a*bam
reg *e*ba i s, &c.,	reg *e*bas	ama *e*ba i s &c,	am *a*bas
reg *e*ba u nt	reg *e*bant	ama *e*ba i t	am *a*bat
reg e a m	reg am	ama eb o (m)	am *a*bo
reg e i s, &c ,	reg *e*s	ama eb i s, &c.,	am *a*bis
reg e u nt	reg ent	ama eb u nt	am *a*bunt
reg a m	reg am	ama e m	am em
reg *a* s, &c.	reg *a*s	ama *e* s &c,	am *e*s
reg *a* mus, &c.,	reg *a*mus	ama *e* mus	am *e*mus
reg er e m	reg er*e*m	ama er e m	am *a*rem
reg er *e* s	reg er*e*s, &c.,	ama er *e* s	am *a*res &c
reg e	reg e	ama e	am *a*
reg i to	reg ito	ama i to	am *a*to
reg i te	reg ite	ama i te	am *a*te
reg i tote, &c.,	reg itote, &c.,	ama i tote, &c.,	am *a*tote
reg er e	reg ere	ama er e	am *a*re

PARTS ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

Full Form.	*Contracted Form.*	*Full Form.*	*Contracted Form.*
regs *i*	rex *i*	am*av* i	am*av* *i*
regs i sti	rex isti	am*av* i sti	am*av* isti
regs i mus, &c.	rex imus, &c.,	am*av* i mus	am*av* imus &c.

Full Form.	*Contracted Form.*	*Full Form.*	*Contracted Form.*
regs era [o] m	rex eram	amav era [o] m	amav eram
regs era i s, &c	rex eras, &c.,	amav era i s, &c.,	amav eras, &c.
regs er o [m]	rex ero	amav er o [m]	amav ero
regs er i s, &c.	rex eris, &c.	amav er i s, &c.	amav eris, &c
regs er i m	rex erim	amav er i m	amav erim
regs er i s, &c.	rex eris, &c.	amav er i s, &c.	amav eris, &c.
regs iss e m	rex issem	amav iss e m	amav issem
regs iss e s, &c.	rex isses, &c.	amav iss e s, &c.	amav isses, &c.
regs iss e	rex isse	amav iss e	amav isse.

ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

fle o [m]	fle o	audi o [m]	aud io
fle i s	fl es	audi i s	aud is
fle i t, &c.	fl et, &c.	audi i t, &c.	aud it, &c.
fle u nt	fl ent	audi u nt	aud iunt
fle eba [o] m	fl ebam	audi eba [o] m	aud iebam
fle eba i s	fl ebas	audi eba i s	aud iebas
fle eba i t, &c.	fl ebat, &c.	audi eba i t, &c.	aud iebat, &c.
fle eb o [m]	fl ebo	audi a [o] m	audi am
fle eb i s	fl ebis	audi e i s	audi es
fle eb i t, &c.	fl ebit, &c.	audi e i t, &c.	audi et, &c.
fle a m	fl eam	audi a m	aud iam
fle a s	fl eas	audi a s	aud ias
fle a t	fl eat, &c.	audi a t	aud iat, &c.
fle er e m	fl erem	audi er em	aud irem
fle er e s, &c.	fl eres	audi er e s	aud ires, &c.
fle e —	fl e	audi e —	aud i
fle e te, &c.	fl ete, &c.	audi e te, &c.	aud ite, &c.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

fle v i [m]	flev i	audi v i [m]	audiv i
flev era [o] m	flev eram	audiv era [o] m	audiv eram
flev er o [m]	flev ero	audiv er o [m]	audiv ero

Full Form.	*Contracted Form.*	*Full Form.*	*Contracted Form.*
flev er i m	flev erim	audiv er i m	audiv erim
flev iss e m	flev issem	audiv iss e m	audiv issem
flev iss e	flev isse	audiv iss e	audiv isse

NOTE.—The pupil can readily complete the tables for himself.

5. The participles are formed by adding adjectival endings to the verb-stem, [sometimes with a connecting vowel in consonant verbs,] *ns* expressing continuance [actively]; *turus*, futurity; *tus*, completion [passively]; and *-ndus*, fitness, capacity.

6. The gerund is a verbal noun formed by adding -ndi, &c., to the verb-stem, a connecting vowel being necessary in consonant verbs: *reg-e-ndi*.

7. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth conjugation, sometimes complete [as *cursus*], but usually found only in the accusative and ablative. It is formed by adding *tus* [sometimes *sus*] to the verb-stem.

APPENDIX VI. PECULIARITIES OF TENSE FORMATION

TENSES FORMED ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

§224. 1. The tense-sign of the indicative future in verbs of the fourth conjugation [*i* stems] seems anciently to have been *eb*, as in *a* and *e* stems, the *i* of the stem absorbing the *e* of the tense-sign; as. *vesti-b-o*, *sci-b-o*, instead of *vestiam*, *sciam*. The same contraction also occurs in the imperfect; as *ves-tibam*. The forms *ibam* and *ibo* of *eo* are still retained.

2. The endings *im*, *is*, &c., in the subjunctive present [mood-sign *i*] are sometimes found in the earlier writers and in the poets; as *edim*, *edis*, *edit*, *edimus*, &c., for *edam*, &c. The same mood-sign is always found in the forms *sim*, *sis*, &c., *velim*, *velis*, &c., and their compounds.

3. The ending *e* is dropped in the imperatives *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*. The short forms are also used in their compounds, except those compounds of *facio* which change *a* into *i*; as, *effice*.

4. The personal-sign of the imperative future passive 2nd person singular was anciently *mino*; as *horta-mino*, *progredi-mino*. The older

writers sometimes use the active ending of the imperative in deponent verbs; as *arbitrato*, instead of *arbitrator*.

TENSES FORMED ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

5. The letter *v* of the perfect stem is frequently elided and the first vowel of the ending is absorbed, when followed in the first conjugation by *s*, in the other conjugations by *s* or *r*; as *ama-[v]-isti, amasti; fle-[v]-eram, fleram.* When *i* precedes *v*, there is usually no contraction. This is especially the case in compounds of *eo*; as *redii, perii, subii &c.*

6. When the perfect-stem ends in *s*, the syllables *is, iss;* immediately following it, are sometimes omitted; as *evasti, evassem, evastis*, for *evas-isti, evas-issem, evas-istis.*

7. An ancient future-perfect in *so* sometimes occurs, from which subjunctive forms in *sem* and *sim*, are formed; as *recepso, recepsim.* Sometimes this future is formed on the present-stem; as, *habesso.*

The forms *ausim, faxim* and *faxo*, are retained by the classic writers.

COMPOUND VERBS.

8. Compound verbs generally form their perfect and supine stem like the simple verbs from which they are derived. Sometimes, however, there is a change of the stem vowel; as *hab-co, pro-hib-eo; fac-io, con-fic-io; scand-o, de-scend-o.* A reduplication in the perfect is omitted in compound verbs; as, *cæd-o, ce-cid-i; oc-cid-o, oc-cid-i;* but the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

APPENDIX VII.

THE VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

§225. *First Conjugation.*

1. The perfect and supine stems are formed, in the first conjugation, by adding respectively *av* and *at* to the present stem; or, to speak more correctly, by adding *v* and *t* to the crude form of the verb; as, *ama-, amav-, amat-.*

2. But

(a) The characteristic vowel *a* is elided in the perfect tenses of a few verbs, (*v* passing into *u* after a consonant,) and in such cases is usually changed into *i* in the supine; as, *crepo, crep-u-i, crep-i-tum.*

(b) The perfect stem is formed by reduplicating the initial consonant with *e*; as *d-are, ded-i.*

(c) Some verbs seem originally to have reduplicated; but the reduplication has been dropped, the two first syllables blending into one, and the short stem-vowel becoming long; as *lav-o*, lav-i, for la-la-vi

3. The following list contains the verbs which vary from the usual mode of formation.

Crepo, crepare, crepui, crepitum, *to creak.* Increpo, -avi, *or* -ui, -atum *or* -itum. Discrepo, -ui, —. Recrepo, are, —, —.

Cubo, cubui, cubitum, *to lie down.* Incubo *has rarely* -avi. *Some of the compounds insert* m, *and* are of the 3d conjugation.

Domo, domui, domitum, *to tame.*

Do, dare, dedi, datum, *to give. Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions are of the 3d conjugation.*

Frico, fricui, frictum *or* fricatum, *to rub.*
confrico, confricavi, confricatum.

Juvo, juvi, jutum, juvaturus, *to help.*

Lavo, [are, & ere,] lavi, lotum, lautum, *and* lavatum, lavaturus, *to wash.*

Mico, micui, ——, *to quiver*
dimico, -avi *rarely* -ui. -atum.
emico, -ui, -atum.

Neco, necavi *rarely* necui, necatum *rarely* nectum, *to kill.*

Plico, plicavi & plicui, plicatum & plicitum, *to fold.*
applico, complico, explico, implico, *in the same way. The other compounds have* -avi, atum.

Poto, -avi, potum and potatum, *to drink.*

Seco, secui, sectum and secatum, *to cut. So also* præseco, reseco. *The other compounds have only* sectum.

Sono, sonui, sonitum, sonaturus, *to sound.* Consono, exsono, insono, præsono, -ui, ——. Resono, avi, ——.

Sto, steti [*for* sesti,] -statum, *to stand.*

Tono, tonui, ——, *to thunder*
Attono, -ui, -itum.

Veto, vetui, vetitum, *to forbid.*

§226. SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. The perfect stem is formed, in the second conjugation

(a) by adding *v* to the *crude form* of the verb, as in the first conjugation; as, *fle-o, flev-i.*

(b) But in most verbs the characteristic *e* is elided, *i* passing into *u*; and, as in the first conjugation, the characteristic is changed into *i* in the supine; as, *mone-o, monu-i, monit-um.*

(c) In many verbs *e* is elided, and *s*, instead of *v*, added; with such consonant changes as euphony may require; as *arde-o, ar-s-i* for *ard-si*; *auge-o, aux-i* for *augs-i.*

(d) A few verbs reduplicate the initial consonant, and drop the characteristic *e*; as, *morde-o, mo-mord-i.*

(e) Some verbs preserve a trace of the reduplication in the lengthening of the stem-vowel in the perfect, the characteristic, as in the last class, being elided; as, *move-o mov-i*; perhaps for *mo mov-i*; or perhaps the original form was *move-v-i*, syncopated into *mov-i*, to avoid having two successive syllables begin with *v*. All verbs of the first and second conjugations which lengthen the stem-vowel in the perfect, have stems ending in *v*, except *video* and *sedeo.*

2. The following list contains the verbs of the second conjugation which form the perfect and supine stems otherwise than according to §226, 1, b, that being considered the regular formation, as it is the one which most commonly occurs.

Aboleo, abolevi, abolitum, *to destroy. The other compounds of the obsolete* oleo, *are* adoleo, adolui, (*rarely* adolevi,) adultum; exolesco, (*inceptive from* exoleo,) exolevi, exoletum; deleo, -evi, etum.

Algeo, alsi, ——, *to be cold.*

Arceo, arcui, arctum or artum, *to keep off.*

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, *to burn.*

Audeo, ausus sum, (*rarely* ausi, *from which* ausim,) *to dare.*

Augeo, auxi, auctum, *to increase.*

Caveo, cavi, cautum, *to beware.*

Censeo, censui, censum, *to be of opinion.* percenseo, persensui; recenseo, recensui, recensum, *and* recensitum.

Cieo, civi, citum, *to arouse. The compounds with* ex *and* ad *are of the fourth conjugation. The pe-*

nult of excitus *is common, and that of* concitus *is rarely long.*
Conniveo, connivi, *or* connixi,——, *to shut the eyes.*
Denseo, densetum, *to be dense*
Doceo, docui, doctum, *to teach.*
Faveo, favi, fautum, *to favor.*
Ferveo, ferbui, *or* fervo fervi, *to boil.*
Fleo, flevi, fletum, *to weep.*
Foveo, fovi, fotum, *to warm.*
Fulgeo, fulsi, (*anteclassical and poetic*, fulge, fulsi,) *to flash.*
Gaudeo, gavisus, *to rejoice.*
Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, *to stick.* Obhæreo,-ere, ——, ——; *so also* subhæreo.
Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, *to indulge.*
Jubeo, jussi, jussum, *to order*
Luceo, luxi,——, *to shine.* Polluceo,-luxi, luctum.
Lugeo, luxi, luctum, *to mourn.*
Maneo, mansi, mansum, *to stay.*
Misceo, miscui, mistum *or* mixtum, misturus, *to mix.*
Mordeo, momordi, morsum, *to bite.*
Moveo, movi, motum, *to move.*
Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, *rarely* mulctum, *to stroke.*
Mulgeo, mulsi *rarely* mulxi, mulsum, *or* mulctum, *to milk.* Emulgeo,-ere,——, emulsum.
Neo, nevi, netum, *to spin.*
Paveo, pavi,——, *to fear*
Pendeo, pependi,——, *to hang.*—impendeo,-ere.
Pleo (obsolete), plevi, pletum, *to fill.*
Prandeo, prandi, pransum, *to breakfast.*
Rideo, risi, risum, *to laugh.*
Sedeo, sedi, sessum, *to sit;* præsideo, præsedi,——.
Soleo, solitus, *rarely* solui, *to be accustomed.*
Sorbeo, sorbui,——, *to suck up.*—resorbeo,-ere, ——; absorbeo, absorbui, *rarely* absorpsi, absorptum.
Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, *to pledge*
Strideo, stridi, *to creak.*
Suadeo, suasi, suasum, *to advise.*
Teneo, tenui, tentum, *to hold;* pertineo, pertinui,——
Tergeo *or* tergo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.*
Turgeo, tursi ——, *to swell.*
Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, *to shear.*
Torqueo, torsi, tortum, *to twist.*
Torreo, torrui, tostum, *to roast*
Urgeo *or* urgueo, ursi,——, *to press.*
Video, vidi, visum, *to see.*
Voveo, vovi, votum, *to vow.*
Vieo, ——, vietum, *to plait.*

§ 227. To these may be added the following impersonal and deponent verbs of 2nd conjugation.

Decet, decuit, *it becomes.*
Libet, libuit *or* libitum est, *it pleases.*
Licet, licuit *or* licitum est, *it is allowed.*
Liquet, liquit *or* licuit, *it is clear.*
Miseret, miseruit, *less frequently* miseretur, miseritum *or* misertum est, *it pities.*
Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*
Piget, piguit *or* pigitum est, *it grieves.*
Pœnitet, pœnituit, *it repents*
Pudet, puduit *or* puditum est, *it shames.*

Tædet, tæduit *or* tæsum est, *it disgusts.*
Fateor, fassus, *to confess;* diffiteor, -eri, ——.
Medeor, ——, *to cure.*
Misereor, miseritus *or* misertus, *to pity.*
Reor, ratus, *to think.*
Tueor, tuitus *or* tutus, (*the latter passive,*) *to behold, to gaze at.*

§ 228. The following have the perfect-stem in *u*, but want the supine.

Aceo, *to be sour;* candeo, *to be white;* caneo, *to be hoary;* egeo, *to want;* emineo, *to rise up;* florco, *to flower;* horreo, *to bristle;* lateo, *to lie hid;* muceo, *to be mouldy;* nigreo, *to be black;* oleo, *to smell;* palleo, *to be pale:* pateo, *to be open;* sileo, *to be silent;* strideo, *to creak;* studeo, (studivi *once,*) *to be eager;* stupeo, *to be stunned;* timeo, *to fear.*

§ 229. The following have neither perfect nor supine stems, though from some of them perfect tenses are formed with an inceptive force.

Ægreo, *to be sick;* albeo, *to be white;* areo, *to be dry;* aveo, *to covet;* calleo, *to be hard;* calveo, *to be bald;* ceveo, *to fawn;* clareo, *to be bright;* clueo, *to be famous;* flacceo, *to droop;* flaveo, *to be yellow;* fœteo, *to stink;* frigeo, *to be cold;* frondeo, *to bear leaves;* hebeo, *to be dull;* humeo, *to be moist;* lacteo, *to suck;* langueo, *to be faint;* lenteo, *to be slow;* liveo, *to be livid;* maceo, *to be lean;* mæreo, *to grieve;* niteo, *to shine;* oleo, *to smell;* polleo, *to be powerful;* puteo *to stink;* renideo, *to glitter;* rigeo, *to be stiff;* rubeo, *to be red;* scateo, *to gush out;* seneo, *to be old;* sordeo, *to be filthy;* splendeo, *to shine;* squaleo, *to be foul;* sueo, *to be wont;* tepeo, *to be warm;* torpeo, *to be stiff;* tumeo, *to swell;* vegeo, *to arouse;* vigeo, *to flourish;* vireo, *to be green;* uveo, *to be moist.*

VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND STPINE STEMS.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 230. 1. The perfect stem is formed in the third conjution.

(a) By adding s, to the present-stem, which in this con-

jugation is the crude form of the verb. As, *carp-o, carps-i.*

(b) By adding *v* to the crude form of the verb, which has been strengthened by adding *n* or *sc*, as in Greek. These are all originally vowel verbs. As, *cre-sc-o, crev-i; pa-sc-o, pav-i; no-sc-o, nov-i; si-n-o, siv-i; sper-n-o, sprev-i* (by metathesis for *spervi*.)

(c) By adding *u* (the form which the perfect sign *v* assumes after a consonant.) As, *al-o, alu-i.*

(d) By adding *iv* to the present stem; as, *accēss-o, accessiv-i.*

(e) By reduplicating the initial consonant; as, *curr-o, cu-curr-i.*

(f) By lengthening the present-stem, with or without vowel change; as, *em-o, ēm-i; ag-o, ēg-i.*

(g) In a number of verbs (especially vowel verbs in *u*,) the perfect-stem is like the present stem; as, *acu-o, acu-i.*

2. The supine-stem is usually formed in the third conjugation by adding *t*, frequently by adding *s*, to the present stem.

3. The following list contains most of the verbs of this conjugation.

Acuo, acui, acutum, *to sharpen.*
Ago, ēgi, actum, *to set in motion.* ambigo,-ere, ——, —— dego, degi. satago,-ere, ——, ——.
Alo, alui, altum and alitum, *to nourish.*
Ango, anxi, ——. *to choke.*
Arguo, argui, argutum, *to convict.*
Arcesso, (*passive* or i,) arcessivi, arcessitum, *to send for.*
Batuo, batui, ——. *to beat.*
Bibo, bibi, bibitum, *to drink.*
Cado, cecidi, casum. *to fall.* accido, decido, excido, and succido.
have no supine-stem. See App. VI, 8.
Cædo, cecidi, cæsum, *to cut.* *The compounds change æ into* i; *as,* occīdo, occīdi, occīsum. See App. VI, 8.
Cando, *to cause to shine; when* accendo, incendo, succendo, (-cendi,-censum.)
Cano, cecini, cantum, *to sing.* præcino,-cinui,-centum; concino, cinui,——; *so* occino, occino,-ere,——,——; *so also* incino, intercino, recino, succino.

Capesso, -ivi, -itum, *to seize.*
Capio, cepi, captum, *to take.* So antecapio. *The other compounds change* a *of the present-stem into* i, *and of the supine-stem into* e; *as,* accipio, -cepi, -ceptum.
Carpo, carpsi, carptum, *to pluck.*
Cedo, cessi, cessum, *to yield.*
Cello, ante-, præ-, re-cello, -ere, ——, ——, excello, -cellui, -celsum; percello, perculi, percussum.
Cerno, crevi, cretum, *to decide.*
Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, *to gird.*
Clango, ——, ——, *to clang.*
Claudo, clausi, clausum, *to shut.*
Claudo, ——, claudum, *to limp.*
Clepo, clepsi *rarely* clepi, *to steal.*
Colo, colui, cultum, *to cultivate.* Occulo, occului, occultum.
Como, compsi, comptum, *to adorn.*
Compesco, compescui, —, *to check.*
Consulo, -sului, -sultum, *to consult.*
Coquo, coxi, coctum, *to cook.*
Cresco, crevi, cretum, *to grow.*
Cudo, -ere, —, —, *to forge.* Excudo, excudi, excusum.
Cupio, -ivi, itum, *to desire.*
Curro, cucurri, cursum, *to run.* concurro, succurro, transcurro, *drop the reduplication. The other compounds have both forms; as,* accurro, accurri *and* accucurri, accursum. antecurro, -ere, —, —; *so also* circumcurro. See App. VI. 8.
Condo, condidi, conditum, *to hide.* abscondo, -condidi *or* -condi, -conditum *or* consum. *So the other compounds of* do.
Depso, depsui, depstum, *to knead.*
Dico, dixi, dictum, *to say.*
Disco, didici, disciturus, *to learn.*
Dispesco, —, dispestum, *to separate.*
Divido, divisi, divisum, *to divide.*
Duco, duxi, ductum, *to lead.*
Edo, edi, esum, *to eat.* See §111.
Exuo, exui, exutum, *to put off.*
Emo, emi, emptum, *to buy.* demo, dempsi, demptum.
Facesso, -ivi, -itum, *to do eagerly.*
Facio, feci, factum, *to do.* *Imper. pres.* fac. *The compounds with a verb follow the simple; as,* calefacio, -feci, -factum; calefac, calefio: *those with a preposition change* a *of the present stem into* i, *and of the supine-stem into* e; *and have a regular passive; as,* interficio interfeci, interfectum; interficior, interfici, interfectus.
Fallo, fefelli, falsum, *to deceive.* refello, refelli, —.
Fendo, (obs.) defendo, defendi, defensum, *to defend:* offendo, fendi, -fensum, *to offend.*
Fero, ferre, (*syncopated from* ferere,) tuli, latum, *to carry. A perf.* tetuli *occurs.* affero, attuli, allatum; aufero, abstuli, ablatum; confero, contuli, collatum; differo, distuli, dilatum; effero, extuli, elatum; infero, intuli, illatum; offero, obtuli, oblatum; suffero, sustuli, sublatum.
Fervo, fervi, *to boil. See* fervco, 2d conj.
Fido, fisus, *to trust.* confido, confidi *or* confisus sum
Figo, fixi, fixum *rarely* fictum, *to fix.*
Findo, fidi, fissum, *to split.*
Fingo, finxi, fictum, *to feign.*
Flecto, flexi, flexum, *to bend.*
Fligo, flixi, —, *to dash.* affligo, affixi, afflictum. *So* infligo, profligo, -are, &c.
Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, *to flow.*

Fodio, fodi, fossum, *to dig.* *Old inf. pass.* fodiri; *so also* effodiri.
Frango, fregi, fractum, *to break.*
Fremo, fremui, fremitum, *to roar.*
Frendo, ——, fresum and fressum, *to gnash.*
Frigo, frixi, frictum *rarely* frixum, *to fry.*
Fugio, fugi, fugitum, *to fly.*
Fulgo, —, —, *to flash.*
Fundo, fudi, fusum, *to pour.*
Furo, ——, ——, *to rage.*
Gemo, gemui, gemitum, *to groan.*
Gero, gessi, gestum, *to bear*
Gigno, (for gi-geno.) genui, genitum, *to beget.*
Glisco, —, —, *to grow.*
Glubo, —, —, *to peel.* deglubo, degluptum.
Gruo, (obs.) congruo, ingruo, -grui.
Ico, ici, ictum, *to strike.*
Imbuo, imbui, imbutum, *to imbue.*
Incesso, incessivi *or* incessi, ——, *to attack.*
Induo, indui, indutum, *to put on.*
Jacio, jeci, jactum, *to throw.* conjicio, -jeci, -jectum; *so the other compounds.*
Jungo, junxi, junctum, *to join.*
Lacesso, -ivi, itum, *to provoke.*
Lacio, (obs.) allicio allexi, allectum, *to allure.* So illicio, pellicio; *but* elicio, elicui & elexi, elicitum.
Lædo, læsi, læsum, *to hurt.*
Lambo, lambi, lambitum, *to lick.*
Lego, legi, lectum, *to read.* *So the compounds with* ad, per, præ, re, sub, and trans: *the other compounds change* a *into* i. Diligo, intelligo, *and* negligo, *have* -lexi, -lectum.
Lingo, linxi, linctum, *to lick:* delingo, —, —, *to lick up.*
Lino, livi *or* levi, litum, *to daub.*
Liquo, liqui, —, *to leave.* relinquo, *and* delinquo, -liqui, -lictum.
Ludo, lusi, lusum, *to play.*
Luo, lui, luiturus, *to atone.* abluo, -lui, -lutum. *So* diluo *and* eluo.
Mando, mandi, mansum, *to chew.*
Mergo, mersi, mersum, *to dip.*
Metuo, metui, metutum (*rare*), *to fear.*
Mingo, minxi, mictum, *to make water.*
Minuo, minui, minutum, *to lessen.*
Mitto, misi, missum, *to send.*
Molo, molui, molitum, *to grind.*
Mungo, (obs.) emungo, emunxi, emunctum, *to wipe the nose.*
Necto, nexui & nexi, nexum, *to knit.* annecto, -nexui, -nexum. *So* innecto *and* connecto.
Ningo *or* -guo, ninxi, ——, *to snow.*
Nosco, novi, notum, *to know.* agnosco *and* cognosco *have* -nitum. dignosco *and* præ -nosco *have only the present-stem.*
Nubo, nupsi, nuptum, *to veil.*
Nuo, *to nod.* abnuo, -nui, -nuitum, *or* -nutum; annuo, -nui, nutum; innuo, -nui, -nutum; renuo, -nui. ——.
Olo, olui, ——, *to smell*
Pando, ——, passum *or* pansum, *to spread.* dispando, ——, dispansum.
Pango, panxi, pegi, and pegegi, pactum, pancturus, *to fix.* *The compounds have* -pegi, -pactum, *except* depango *and* suppingo, *which want the perf.-stem:* *and* repango, *which wants both perf. and sup. stems.*
Parco, peperci, *rarely* parci, parcitum *and* parsum, *to spare.*
Pario, peperi, partum *and* paritum.

to bring forth. The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.
Pasco, pavi, pastum, *to feed.*
Pecto, pexi, pexum, *and* pectitum, *to comb.*
Pedo, pepedi, ——, *to break wind.* oppedo, ——, ——.
Pello, pepuli, pulsum, *to drive.*
Pendo, pependi, pensum, *to weigh.*
Peto, petivi, petitum, *to beg.*
Pingo, pinxi, pictum, *to paint.*
Pinso, pinsi *and* pinsui, pinsitum, pinsum, *and* pistum, *to pound.*
Plango, planxi, planctum, *to beat.*
Plaudo, plausi, plausum, *to clap.* circumplaudo, ——, ——. *The other compounds, except* applaudo, *change* au *into* o
Plecto, plexi, *and* plexui, plexum, *to twine.*
Pluo, plui, *or* pluvi, ——, *to rain.*
Pono, posui, positum, *to place.*
Porricio, porreci, porrectum, *to sacrifice.*
Posco, poposci, ——, *to demand.*
Prehendo, Prendo, } -di, -sum, *to seize.*
Premo, pressi, pressum, *to press.*
Promo, prompsi, promptum, *to bring out.*
Psallo, psalli, —, *to play on a stringed instrument.*
Pungo, pupugi, punctum, *to prick. The compounds with* con-, dis-, ex-, *and* inter-, *have* punxi, punctum. repungo, —, —.
Quæro, quæsivi, quæsitum, *to seek.*
Quatio, —, quassum, *to shake. The compounds change* qua *into* cu; *as,* concutio, concussi, concussum.
Quiesco, quievi, quietum, *to rest.*
Rado, rasi, rasum, *to shave.*
Rapio, rapui, raptum, *to snatch*
Rego, rexi, rectum, *to rule.*
Repo, repsi, —, *to creep.*
Rodo, rosi, rosum, *to gnaw.* e-, *and* præ-rodo, *want the perf. stem; and* ebrodo, *both perf. and sup. stems.*
Rudo, rudivi, ruditum, *to bray.*
Rumpo, rupi, ruptum, *to break.*
Ruo, rui, rutum, ruiturus, *to fall.* corruo, corrui, — ; *so* irruo.
Sapio, sapivi, *and* sapii, —, *to be wise.* resipio, —, — : *so* desipio.
Scabo, scabi, —, *to scratch.*
Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, *to engrave.*
Salo *or* sallo, —, salsum, *to salt.*
Scando, scandi, scansum, *to climb.*
Scindo, scidi, (*anciently* scescidi,) scissum, *to cut.*
Sci-co, scivi, scitum, *to order.*
Scribo, scripsi scriptum, *to write*
Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, *to carve.*
Sero, sevi, satum, *to sow.*
Sero, —, sertum, *to entwine. compounds have* -serui.
Serpo, serpsi, serptum, *to creep.*
Sido, sidi, (*collateral form of* sedeo,) *to settle.*
Sino, sivi, situm, *to place.*
Sisto, stiti, statum, *to stop. The compounds want the supine-stem.*
Solvo, solvi, solutum, *to loose.*
Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, *to scatter.*
Specio, spexi, spectum, *to look; used only in the compounds.*
Sperno, sprevi, spretum, *to despise.*
Spuo, spui, sputum, *to spit.* respuo, respui, —.
Statuo, statui, statutum, *to place.*
Sterno, stravi, stratum, *to strew.*
Sternuo, sternui, — to sneeze.
Sterto, stertui, —, *to snore.*
Stinguo, —, —, *to put out. The compounds have* stinxi, stinctum.
Strepo, strepui, —, *to make a noise.*
Stridо, stridi, *to creak.*

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, *to bind.*
Struo, struxi, structum, *to build.*
Sugo, suxi, suctum, *to suck.*
Sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take.*
Suo, sui, sutum, *to sew.* consuo, —. consutum, *so* dissuo, assuo, —, —.
Tango, (*strengthened from* tago.) tetigi, tactum, *to touch.*
Tego, texi, tectum, *to cover.*
Temno, —, —; contemno, -tempsi, temptum, *to despise.*
Tendo, tetendi, tensum *and* tentum, *to stretch.* So in- os-, *and* retendo, detendo, —, -tensum. *The other compounds have* tentum.
Tergo, (tergeo, *2nd conj.*) tersi, tersum, *to wipe.*
Tero, trivi, tritum, (*syncopated for* terivi, teritum, *to rub.*
Texo, texui, textum, *to weave.*
Tingo (*or* -guo,) tinxi, tinctum, *to moisten.*
Tollo, tetuli (*anciently,*) *rarely* tolli, —, *to raise.* sustuli *and* sublatum *from* suffero, *supply the perfect and supine stems of* tollo *and* sustollo. *The compounds want perfect stem.*
Traho, traxi, tractum, *to draw.*
Tremo, tremui, —, *to tremble.*
Tribuo, tribui, tributum, *to attribute.*
Trudo, trusi, trusum, *to thrust.*
Tundo, tutudi, tunsum & tusum, *to beat. The compounds have* tusum; *but* contunsum, detunsum, obtunsum, *and* retunsum *also occur.*
Ungo (*or* -guo), unxi, unctum, *to anoint.*
Uro, ussi, ustum, *to burn.*
Vado, vasi, (*once*), —, *to go.* supervado, —, —. *The other compounds have* vasi, vasum.
Veho, vexi, vectum, *to carry.*
Vello, velli & vulsi, vulsum, *to drag.* So avello, divello, evello; intervello, -vulsi, -vulsum. *The other compounds have* velli *only.*
Vergo, versi, —, *to incline.*
Verro, verri, versum, *to sweep.*
Verto, verti, versum, *to turn.*
Vinco, vici, victum, *to conquer.*
Viso, visi, visum, *to visit.*
Vivo, vixi, victurus, *to live*
Volvo, volvi, volutum, *to roll.*
Vomo, vomui, vomitum, *to vomit.*

INCEPTIVE VERBS.

§231. Very few inceptive verbs have a supine-stem, and these take it from the simple verb; the perfect-stem, when used, is also adopted from the simple verb. In many inceptives, especially those derived from nouns and adjectives, the intermediate verb in *-eo* is not used; as, *gravesco*, from *gravis*.

Acesco, acui, *to be sour.*
Ægresco, —, *to grow sick.*
Albesco, —, *to grow white.*
Alesco, —, *to grow.* coalesco, -alui, -alitum.
Ardesco, arsi, *to take fire.*
Aresco, —, *to grow dry.* exaresco, -arui; *so* inaresco, peraresco.

Augesco, —, *to begin to grow.*
Calesco, —, *to grow warm.*
Calvesco, —, *to grow bald.*
Candesco, candui, *to grow white.*
Canesco, —, *to grow grey.*
Claresco, clarui, *to become bright.*
Condormisco, -dormivi, *to grow sleepy.*
Conticesco, -ticui, *to become silent.*
Crebresco, crebui & crebrui, *to increase*
Crudesco, crudui, *to become cruel.*
Ditesco, —, *to grow rich.*
Dulcesco, dulcui, *to grow sweet.*
Duresco, durui, *to grow hard.*
Evilesco, evilui, *to grow vile.*
Extimesco, extimui, *to fear greatly.*
Fatisco, —, *to gape.*
Flaccesco, flaccui, *to wilt.*
Fervesco, ferbui, *to boil.*
Floresco, florui, *to begin to flourish.*
Fracesco, fracui, *to grow rancid.*
Frigesco, frixi, *to grow cold.*
Frondesco, frondui, *to grow leafy.*
Fruticesco, —, *to begin to shoot.*
Gelasco, —, *to freeze.*
Gemisco, —, *to begin to sigh.*
Gemmasco, —, *to begin to bud.*
Gemmesco, —, *to become a gem.*
Generasco, —, *to be produced.*
Grandesco, —, *to grow large.*
Gravesco, —, *to grow heavy.*
Hæresco, —, *to adhere.*
Hebesco, —, *to grow dull.*
Horresco, horrui, *to grow rough.*
Humesco, —, *to grow moist.*
Ignesco, —, *to become inflamed.*
Indolesco, -dolui, *to be grieved.*
Insolesco, —, *to be haughty.*
Integrasco, —, *to grow fresh.*
Juvenesco, —, *to grow young.*
Languesco, langui, *to grow languid.*
Lapidesco, —, *to become stone.*
Latesco, —, *to grow broad.*
Latesco, —, *to lie hid.* delitesco *and* oblitesco *have* -litui.
Lentesco, *to become soft.*
Liquesco, licui, *to become liquid.*
Lucesco, —, *to grow light.*
Lutesco, —, *to grow muddy.*
Macesco, —, Macresco, macrui, } *to grow lean*
Madesco, madui, *to grow wet.*
Marcesco, —, *to pine away.*
Maturesco maturui, *to ripen.*
Miseresco, —, *to pity.*
Mitesco, —, *to grow mild.*
Mollesco, —, *to grow soft.*
Mutesco, —, *to grow dumb.* obmutesco, obmutui.
Nigresco, nigrui, *to grow black.*
Nitesco, nitui, *to grow bright.*
Notesco, notui, *to become known.*
Obbrutesco, —, *to become brutish.*
Obdormisco, —, *to fall asleep.*
Obsurdesco, obsurdui, *to grow deaf.*
Occallesco, —, callui, *to grow hard.*
Olesco, (*rarely used.*) aboleseo, abolevi. adolesco, adolevi, adultum, *to grow up.* exolesco, -olevi, -oletum, *to grow obsolete. So* obsolesco; inolesco, —, olevi, olitum.
Pallesco, pallui, *to grow pale.*
Patesco, patui, *to be opened.*
Pavesco, —, *to grow fearful.*
Pertimesco, -timui, *to fear greatly.*
Pinguesco, —, *to grow fat.*
Pubesco, pubui, *to grow to maturity.*
Puerasco, —, *to become a boy.*
Putesco, putui Putresco, —, } *to become rotten.*
Raresco, —, *to become thin.*
Resipisco, -sipivi, -sipii, *and* -sipui, *to come to oneself.*
Rigesco, rigui, *to grow cold.*
Rubesco, rubui, *to grow red.*

-nesco, —, *to become sound.* con-sanesco, -sanui.
Senesco, -senui, *to grow old.*
Sentesco, —, *to perceive.*
Siccesco, —, *to become dry.*
Silesco, —, *to grow silent.*
Solidesco, —, *to grow solid.*
Sordesco, sordui, *to grow filthy.*
Splendesco, splendui, *to grow bright.*
Spumesco, —, *to begin to foam.*
Sterilesco, —, *to become barren.*
Stupesco, —, *to be astonished.*
Suesco, suevi, suetum, *to become accustomed.*
Tabesco, tabui, *to waste away.*
Teneresco, & -asco, —, *to grow tender.*
Tepesco, tepui, *to grow warm.*
Torpesco, torpui, *to grow torpid.*
Tremisco, —, *to grow tremulous.*
Tumesco, tumui } *to begin to swell.*
Turgesco, —, }
Uvesco, —, *to grow moist.*
Valesco, —, *to grow strong.*
Vanesco, —, *to vanish.* evanesco, evanui.
Veterasco, -avi, *to grow old.*
Viresco, —, *to grow green.*
Vivesco, vixi, *to come to life.*

§232 DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Apiscor, aptus, *to get.*
Expergiscor, -perrectus, *to wake up.*
Fatiscor, *to gape.* defetiscor, defessus. *So the other compounds.*
Fruor, fruitus, fructus, fruiturus, *to enjoy.*
Fungor, functus, *to perform.*
Gradior, grassus, *to walk.* aggredior, aggredi, & aggrediri, aggressus. *So* progredior.
Irascor, *to be angry.*
Labor, lapsus, *to fall.*
Liquor, *to flow.*
Loquor, locutus, *to speak.*
Miniscor, (obs.) comminiscor, commentus, *to invent.* reminiscor, *to remember.*
Morior, mori, *rarely* moriri, mortuus, moriturus, *to die.*
Nanciscor, nactus *or* nanctus, *to obtain.*
Nascor, natus, nasciturus, *to be born.*
Nitor, nixus, *or* nisus, nisurus, *to strive.*
Obliviscor, oblitus, *to forget.*
Paciscor, pactus, *to bargain.*
Patior, passus, *to suffer.*
Proficiscor, profectus, *to set out.*
Queror, questus, *to complain.*
Ringor, rinctus, *to snarl.*
Sequor, secutus, *to follow.*
Tuor, tutus, *to protect.*
Vescor, *to eat.*
Ulciscor, ultus, *to avenge*
Utor, usus, *to use.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 223. 1. Verbs of the fourth conjugation are vowel verbs, the characteristic vowel being *i*. The perfect-stem is formed

(a) By adding ***v*** ; as, *audi-o,* audiv-i.

(b) The characteristic vowel is dropped in some verbs, and then *v* passes into *u*; as, *sali-o, sal-u-i.*

(c) By dropping the characteristic and adding *s*; as, *sepio, seps-i.*

(d) By dropping the characteristic and lengthening the stem-vowel; as, *veni-o*, ven-i.

2. The supine-stem is formed by adding *t.*

In many verbs *v* of the perfect stem is elided.

3. The following list contains those verbs which form the perfect-stem according to the three last methods mentioned above.

Amicio, -ui *or* -xi, amictum, *to clothe.*
Balbutio, —, —, *to stammer.*
Cæcutio, —, —, *to be blind.*
Cambio, campsi, *to exchange.*
Dementio, —, —, *to be mad.*
Effutio, —, effutitum, *to prate*
Eo, ivi, itum, *to go. The compounds almost always elide* v *of the perfect-stem*, redii, &c. anteeo, -ivi *or* -ii, —, contraeo, —, — *so also* posteo.
Farcio, farsi, fartum *and* farctum, *to pack. The compounds change* a *into* e; *as*, refercio, -fersi, -fertum; *but* con- *and* ef- farcio *and* fercio, —, fartum *and* fertum.
Ferio, —, —, *to strike.*
Ferocio, -ivi *and* -ii, *to be fierce.*
Fulcio fulsi, fultum, *to prop.* fulsitus *occurs.*
Gannio, —, —, *to bark.*
Glocio, —, —, *to cluck.*
Grandio, —, —, *to make great.*
Haurio, hausi, *rarely* haurii, hausum *rarely* hausitum, hausus, hausurus, hauritus, hauriturus.
Hinnio, —, —, *to neigh.*
Ineptio, —, —, *to trifle.*
Pario *is of the third conjugation but its compounds are of the fourth; as*, aperio, aperui, apertum; *so* opperio.
Reperio, reperi, repertum; *so* comperio, *rarely deponent.*
Prurio, —, —, *to itch.*
Queo, (*like* eo,) quivi, quitum, *to be able.*
Raucio, —, rausum, *to be hoarse.*
Rugio, —, —, *to roar.*
Sævio, sævii, -itum, *to rage.*
Sagio, —, —, *to perceive keenly.*
Salio, salui *or* -ii, saltum, *to leap;* as- & de silio, -ui, sultum: pro- & trans-silio, -ui, -ivi, ii; ab-in-, sub-silio, -ii, -ui; dis-. ex-, re-silio, -ui; circum- & præ silio, —, —.
Salio, —, salitum, *to salt.*
Sancio, sanxi, sanctum & sancitum, *to ratify.* Sancierat *occurs.*
Sarcio, sarci, sartum *to patch.*
Sarrio, -ivi, -ui, -itum, *to hoe.*
Scaturio, —, —, *to gush out.*
Sentio, sensi, sensum, *to feel.*
Sepelio, -ivi & ii, *rarely* sepeli, sepultum, *rarely* -itum, *to bury.*
Sepio, sepsi, septum, *to hedge.*

Singultio, —, —; *also* singulto, —, -atum, *to sob.*
Sitio, -ivi & ii, —, *to be thirsty.*
Suffio, ii, itum, *to fumigate.*
Tussio, —, —, *to cough.*
Vagio, —, —, *to cry.*
Veuio, veni, ventum, *to come.*
Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, *to bind.*

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Metior, mensus, *and* mentitus, *to measure.*
Ordior, orsus, *to begin.*
Orior, ortus, oriturus, *to rise. Of the 3rd conj. except in fin. pres.*
Perior, (*obs. whence* peritus,) experior, expertus, *to try.* oppetior, oppertus *and* oppetitus, *to wait for.*
Potior, potitus, *to obtain.*
The poets sometimes use an indicative present and subjunctive imperfect of the third conjugation.

APPENDIX VIII.

ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING TIME.

§ 234. 1. The Romans divided the natural day, (from sunrise to sunset,) into twelve equal hours of varying length according to the time of year. The night was also divided in the same way into four equal watches.

2. The year, according to the calendar of Julius Cæsar, was divided into twelve months, as follows:

Januarius,	31 days.	Maius,	31 days.	September,	30 days.
Februarius,	28 "	Junius,	30 "	October,	31 "
Martius,	31 "	Quintilis,	31 "	November,	30 "
Aprilis,	30 "	Sextilis,	31 "	December,	31 "

3. In early times the year began in March, hence the names, *Quintilis, Sextilis, September, &c.* Quintilis and Sextilis, were afterwards changed to *Julius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two Cæsars.

4. The day of the month was reckoned from three points, Kalends, Nones, and Ides, which fell respectively on the *first, fifth,* and *thirteenth* of each month; except March, May, July, and October, when the Nones fell on the *seventh,* and the Ides on the *fifteenth.*

5. Any given date was reckoned, not backward from the first day of the month as with us, but forward to the next Kalends, Nones, or Ides, *inclusive*. Thus the 2nd of March was called the "sixth before the Nones of March;" *sextus (ante) Nonas Martias*, or *ante diem sextum Nonas Martias;* the 16th of March was called the "17th before the Kalends of April," *septimus decimus (ante) Kalendas Apriles*, or *ante diem septimum decimum Kalendas Apriles*. The 2nd of June was called *quartus Nonas Junias*, or *ante diem quartum Nonas Junias, &c.*

6. In leap year February had 29 days, the 24th (*sextus Kal. Mar.*) being doubled and called *bisextus Kal. Mar.*— Hence leap year was called *bisextilis*.

7. Therefore, to reduce the Roman calendar to our own,

(a). For a date before the Nones or Ides, subtract the number of days from the day of the month on which the Nones or Ides fell, and add one to the remainder. Thus, *a. d. VIII, Idus Maias*, (15—8) + 1=8; May 8th.

(b). For a date before the Kalends, subtract the number of days from the number of days in the month, and add *two* to the remainder. Thus, *a. d. XVII, Kal. Jun.;* (31—17) + 2=16; May 16th.

8. To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the proces will be reversed.

9. The week of seven days (*hebdomas,*) was not used a Rome till after the introduction of christianity.

APPENDIX IX.—PROSODY.*

§236. Prosody is the science of versification.

* Prosody belongs rather to poetry than to grammar. In the following appendix the only metres discussed are hexameter and pentameter, these being the only ones the pupil is likely to encounter in the course of preparation for college. The rules of quantity are for the most part derived from the full and laborious work of Dr Andrews.

QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it, a long syllable requiring twice as much time as a short one.

2. A vowel is long by *nature*, as *duco*; or by *position*, as *restiti*. A syllable that is sometimes long and sometimes short is said to be *common*.

§237. RULE I. A vowel before another vowel is short.

So also when *h* comes between two vowels, it being only a breathing.

Exc. 1. *Fio* has i long except before *er*; and sometimes even then; as *fiunt*, *fiam*.

Exc. 2. *E* between two i's is long in the genitive and dative of the 5th declension; as, *faciei*.

Exc. 3. *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *ai*; as, *aulai*.

Exc. 4. *A* & *E* are long in the endings *aius*, *eius*, *eia*.

Exc. 5. *I* is common in genitives in *ius*, but in *alterius* it is almost always short.

Exc. 6. The first vowel of *eheu* is long; that of *Diana*, *io*, and *ohe*, is common.

§238. RULE II. Dipthongs are long.

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel.

Exc. 2. A dipthong at the end of a word is sometimes made short when the next word begins with a vowel.

§239. RULE III. Contracted syllables are long. (For an exception see §223, 3.)

§240. RULE. IV A vowel before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position.

NOTE. A vowel, other than *i*, really combines with *j* to form a dipthong.

REM. 1. The vowel is long by position when one or both the consonants are in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is common.

Rem. 2. A short vowel at the end of a word before an initial double consonant or *j* in the next word, is not lengthened.

Rem. 3. The law of position is frequently disregarded by the comic poets.

Exc. 1. *I* is short before *j* in the compounds of *jugum;* as, *bijugus.*

Exc. 2. A vowel naturally short, before a mute and liquid, is common.

Rem. 4. A vowel is made long by position in compound words where the former part ends with a mute, and the latter part begins with a liquid; as, *a*bluo.

Rem. 5. A short vowel at the end of a word, before a mute and liquid in the next word, is rarely lengthened, except in the arsis of a foot.

Rem. 6. In Latin words only *l* and *r* following a mute lengthen a preceding short vowel.

§241. RULE V Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives.

Exc. 1. Frequentatives from verbs of the 1st conjugation change *a* long into *i* short; clamat-um, clamit-o.

Exc, 2. (*a*). Some derivatives lengthen a short vowel; *such as* de-ni *from* decem; persona *from* sono; humanus *from* homo; secius *from* secus; laterna *from* lateo; sedes *from* sedeo; litera *from* lino; tegula *from* tego; suspicio *from* suspicor.

(b) Some shorten a long vowel; *as,* dicax *from* dico, dux (ducis) *from* duco, fides *from* fido, labo *from* labor, lurcerna *from* luceo, molestus *from* moles, nato *from* natum, noto *from* notum, odium *from* odi, quasillus *from* qualus, sagax *from* sagio, sopor *from* sopio, vadum *from* vado, voco *from* voc-is.

§242. RULE VI. Words introduced from the Greek, or other languages, retain their original quantity; so also Latin stems have the same quantity as the cognate Greek ones; *as,* Darius, (*Greek* Dareios); vicus (*Greek oikos, digammated.*)

§243. RULE VII. Compound words retain the quantity of their components.

Exc. 1. Agnitus *and* cognitus *from* notus; dejero & pejero from juro; hodie *from* hoc die; nihil *from* hilum; compounds in dicus from dico; innuba, pronuba, subnuba, from nubo, (*but* connubium *has* u *common;*) imbecillus *from* bacillum; ambitum *from* itum; *but* i *is short in* ambitus *and* ambitio.

Exc. 2. *Pro* is short in *procella, procul, profanus, profari, profestus, proficiscor, profiteor, profugio, profundus, pronepos, proneptis,* and *protervus.* It is common in *procuro, profundo, propago, propello,* and *propino.* The Greek *pro* is always short.

Rem. 1. The inseparable prepositions *dis* and *re* are short; *di, se,* and *ve,* are long.

Rem. 2. *A* ending the former part of a compound word is long; the other vowels short.

Exc. 1. *E* is long in *se* for *sex* or *semi,* and common in some compounds of *facio.*

Exc. 2. *I* is long when the first part of a compound is declined, or may be separated without altering the sense; as, quidam, agricultura; also in the former part of compounds of *dies* (biduum, meridies, &c.,) in ibique, utrobique, and ibidem; and in idem when masculine.

Exc. 3. *O* is long in compounds of *contro, intro, retro, quando,* (except *quandoquidem,*) and in alioqui.

INCREMENTS.

§244. 1. A noun is said to *increase* when in any of its cases it has more syllables than in the nominative singular. A plural increment is one which belongs to the endings of the plural number, while a singular increment always belongs to the stem.

2. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first increment, and the penult the second; if three, the syllable before the antepe-

nult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third; as,

1 1 2 1 2 3
sermo, ser-mon-is, ser-mon-i-bus, it-in-er-i-bus.

SINGULAR INCREMENTS.

§ 245. RULE VIII. Increments of the third declension in *a* and *o* are long; in *e*, *i*, and *u*, are short.

Rem. 1. There are no singular increments in the second declension, stems in *r* merely dropping the nominative ending. Those of the first, fourth, and fifth, belong to § 237.

A.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*,) with *anas*, *mas*, *vas*, (*vadis*,) *baccar*, *hepar*, *jubar*, *lar*, *nectar*, *par*, *fax*, and *sal*, increase short.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *s* preceded by a consonant increase short in *a* and *o*; as, *daps*, *dapis*; *scrobs*, *scrobis*.

O.

Exc. 3. *O* in the increment of neuters is short; but *os* (oris) and neuter comparatives have *o* long. The increment of *ador* is common.

Exc. 4. *Arbor*, *memor*, *bos*, *compos*, *impos*, *lepus*, *and præcox* increase short.

E.

Exc. 5. Nouns in *en*, *enis*, (except *Hymen*,) with *Anio* and *Nerio*, increase long; also *hæres*, *locuples*, *mansues*, *merces*, *quies*, *Iber*, *ver*, *alec* or *alex*, *lex*, *rex*, *vervex*, *plebs* and *seps*.

I.

Exc. 6. Nouns and adjectives in *ix* increase long; but *calix*, *coxendix*, *filix*, *fornix*, *larix*, *nix*, *pix*, *salix*, and *strix*, increase short.

Exc. 7. *Dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *vis*, *Nesis*, *Quiris*, *Samnis*, and *vibex*, increase long.

U.

Exc. 8. Nouns in *us* (gen. *uris udis*, *utis*,) with *fur*, *frux*, *lux*, *Pollux*, increase long; but *intercus*, *Ligus*, *and pecus*, increase short.

Rem. 2. Increments in *y* belong to Greek Nouns.

PLURAL INCREMENTS.

§ 246. RULE IX. Plural increments in *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u* are short.

INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 247. 1. A verb is said to *increase* when any of its forms has more syllables than the second person singular of the indicative present active.

2. The number of the increment is reckoned as in nouns: (§ 244, 2,) as,

audis, aud-i-tis (1), aud-i-e-bas (1 2), aud-i-e-ba-tis (1 2 3), aud-i-e-bam-i-ni (1 2 3 4).

§ 248. RULE X. In the increment of verbs *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u*, short.

A.

Exc. 1. The first increment of *do* is short.

E.

Exc. 2. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of the present and imperfect of the third conjugation, and in the second increment in *beris* & *bere*.

Exc. 3. *E* is short before *rum*, *rim*, & *ro*, and the person *s* formed from them.

I.

Exc. 4. *I* is long before *v* or *s* in the perfect-stem.

Exc. 5. *I* is long in the supine-stem of *gaudeo*, *accesso*, *divido*, *recesso*, *lacesso*, *peto*, *quæro*, *recensco*, & *obliviscor*.

Exc. 6. *I* is long in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except *imus* of the perfect: *also in* simus, sitis, velimus, velitis, nolito, nolite, nolitote.

Exc. 7. *I* is common in *ris*, *rimus*, *ritis*, of the indicative future perfect and subjunctive perfect.

U.

Exc. 8. *U* is long in the supine stem and future participle active

PENULTS.

§249. RULE XI. Monosyllabic present and perfect stems are long (§225, 2, c,); *as* mōvi, mōtum (perhaps syncopated from *movitum*).

Exc. (a.) Seven perfect-stems are short; *bib-i, ded-i, fid-i* (from *findo*), *scid-i, stet-i, stit-i, tul-i.*

Note. A reduplication is always short: hence the short stems of *bibi, dedi, steti,* (for *sesti*), and *stiti* (for *sisti*).

(b.) Ten supine-stems are short: *cit-um, dat-um, it-um, lit-um, quit-um, rat-um, rut-um, sat-um, sit-um, stat-um.*

So also the obsolete *futum* whence *futurus.*

§250. RULE XII. (a.) Words in *abrum, acrum, atrum, ubrum, osus, ātum, itum, utum, udus, aris* & *elis,* lengthen the penult.

Exc. *Gelus, gelum* and *sedus; defrutum, pulpitum, petoritum. lutum.*

(b.) Words in *ca, do, ga, go, ma, tus, le, les, lis, na, ne, ni, nis, dex, dix, mex, mix, lex,* and *rex,* lengthen the penult.

Exc. *Brassica, dica, fulica, mantica, pedica, pertica, scutica, tunica, vomica; cado, divido, edo* (to eat), *solido, spado, trepido; caliga, toga, plaga, fuga, ego, ligo; anima, lacrima, victima; catus, latus* (*-eris,*) *metus, vegetus, anhelitus, digitus, gratuitus, halitus, servitus, spiritus, notus, quotus, urbutus, putus, inclutus; male;* verbals in *ilis* and *bilis;* adjectives in *atilis; dapsilis, gracilis, humilis, parilis, similis, sterilis, mugilis, strigilis; sine, canis, cinis, juvenis, buccina, fiscina, femina, fuscina, lamina, pagina, patina, sarcina, apinæ, nundinæ, culex, silex, rumex.*

(c.) *A, e, o, u,* before *mus, mum, nus, num,* are long.

Exc. *Glomus, humus, postumus, nemus; anus* (an old woman), *manus, oceanus, penus, tenus, Venus, onus, bonus, sonus, laganum.*

(d.) Words in *ates, itis, otis, ata, eta, ota, uta,* lengthen the penult; except *sitis, potis, nota, rota.*

(e.) A penultimate vowel before *v* is long.

Exc. *Avis, brevis, gravis, levis, ovis; juvo, lavo, ovo; avus, cavus, favus, novus, favor, pavor, novem.*

§ 251. RULE XVIII. (a.) Words in *acus, icus, idus, ilus, imus; ba, bo, pa, po; etas, itas,* and *ita;* shorten the penult.

Exc. Dăcus, meracus, opacus; amicus, apricus, ficus, mendicus, picus, posticus, pudicus, spicus, umbilicus; *I*dus, fidus, infidus, nidus; asilus, bimus, limus, opimus, patrimus, matrimus, quadrimus trimus, *and the superlatives in mus and* primus; gleba, bubo, glubo, libo, nubo, scribo, ripa, cupa, lupa, pupa, scopa, repo, pituita.

(b.) Diminutives and polysyllables in *ulus,* with verbs in *ino, inor,* shorten the penult.

Exc. Festino, sagino, propino, opinor, *and compounds of* clino.

§ 252. RULE XIV Words in *inus,* except adjectives expressing time or material, lengthen the penult.

Exc. But matutīnus, repentīnus, and vespertīnus lengthen the penult, and the following shorten it: *accīnus, asĭnus, dominus, facĭnus, sinus, terminus, geminus, circinus, minus.*

§ 253. RULE XV. Before final *ro, ror, a* and *e* are short; the other vowels, long.

Exc. Pero, spero, *foro, soror, voro, furo.*

§ 254. RULE XVI. Before final *rus, ra, rum, e* is short; the other vowels, long.

Exc. Austerus, galerus, plerus, procerus, serus, severus, verus, statera; *barbarus, nurus, pirus, scarus, sparus, torus, hara, moru, parum, supparum.*

§ 255. RULE XVII. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult; those in *iter* and *itus* shorten it. But *statim,* (immediately,) is short.

Rem. 1. Many apparent exceptions to the foregoing rules are covered by § 241, § 242, § 243. The masculine only of adjectival ter-

minations is given, the quantity of the feminine and neuter being of course that of the masculine.

REM. 2. Patronymics, (Greek,) in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult, while those in *ais, eis, ois*, lengthen it. Nouns in *eus* form patronymics in *ides*.

ANTEPENULTS.

§256. RULE XVIII. The connecting vowels *i, o*, and *u*, are short; *a* is long: as, *vinolentus, fraudulentus, alimentum*, atr*a*mentum.

§257. RULE XIX. A vowel before *nea, neo, nia, nio, nius, nium*, is long.

EXC. *Castanea, tinea, moneo, mineo, moneo, teneo, ignominia; luscinia, venia, lanio, venio*, and words in *cinium*.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

MONOSYLLABLES.

§258. RULE XX. (a.) Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long.

(b.) Monosyllabic *nouns* ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short.

EXC. 1. *Cor, fel, mel, pol, vir, os*, (*ossis*.) *vas*, (*vadis*,) are short.

EXC. 2. En, non, cras, plus, cur, par, *are long*. So also monosyllables in *c*, except *nec* (short,) and *hic* and *hoc* (common.)

EXC. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases and verb forms in *as, es*, and *is*, are long: but *es* from *sum* is short.

POLYSYLLABLES.

A final.

§259. RULE XXI. A final, in words declined, is short, and long in words undeclined.

EXC. 1. A final is long in the ablative singular of the first declension: and in the vocative singular of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*.

EXC. 2. *A* final is short in *eia, ita, quia*, and *puta*, when used ad

verbially; sometimes also in *contra* and numerals in *ginta*. In *postea* it is common.

E final.

§ 260. RULE XXII. *E* final is short in words of two or more syllables.

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in the first and fifth declensions.

Exc. 2. Final *e* in the imperative active, second person singular of the second conjugation is a contraction; but it is sometimes short in *cave, vale, vide.*

Exc. 3. Final *e* is long in *fere, ferme, ohe,* and in adverbs derived from adjectives of the second declension; but it is short in *bene, male, inferne,* and *superne.*

I final.

§ 261. RULE XXIII. *I* final is long.

Exc. *I* final is common in *mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi, nasi, quasi,* and *cui* when a dissyllable.

O final.

§ 262. RULE XXIV. *O* final, in words of more than one syllable, is common.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative, and in the local adverbs *quo, eo, eodem, &c.;* also in *omnino* and *io.*

Exc. 2. *O* final is short in *cito, illico, profecto,* and *modo,* and generally in *ego* and *homo.*

U final.

§ 263. RULE XXV. *U* final is long.

D, L, N, R, T, final.

§ 264. RULE XXVI. A vowel before *d, l, n, r, t,* final is short.

Exc. *E* is long in lien, Iber, and Celtiber.

C final.

§ 265. RULE XXVII. A vowel before *c* final is long: but *e* in *donec* is short.

As, Es, Os, final.

§ 266. RULE XXVIII. *As, es,* and *os,* final are long.

Exc. 1. *As* is short in *anas.*

Exc. 2. *Es* is short in nouns of the third declension, class III (§ 85); and in *penes.*

Exc. 3. *Os* is short in *compos, impos,* and *cs* (*cesis*).

Is, Us, Ys, final.

§ 267 RULE XXIX. *Is, Us,* and *Ys,* final are short.

Ex. 1. *Is* and *us* are long in plural cases, and in the nominative of nouns having a long stem vowel; *as,* mus*is,* fruct*us,* tell*us,* Samn*is.*

Exc. 2. Contracted final syllables in *us* and *is* are of course long. *as,* aud*is for* audi-is, fruct*us for* fructu-is.

Exc. 3. *Ris* in the indicative future perfect and subjunctive perfect is common.

Remark. The last syllable of a verse (except the anapæstic and Ionic *a minore*), may be long or short.

VERSIFICATION

§ 268. 1. A *foot* is a combination of two or more syllables. A compound foot consists of two simple feet united. The only feet which we have occasion now to mention, are the *Spondee,* consisting of two long syllables, as n*ubis*; and the *Dactyl,* consisting of a long syllable and two short ones: as, P*anicus.*

2. *Metre* is the arrangement of syllables and feet into verses. In *dactylic* metre the fundamental foot is a *dactyl.*

3. A *verse* is a number of feet arranged in a certain order, and constituting a line of poetry: Two verses are called a distich, half verse, a hemistich.

4. *Scanning* is dividing a verse into the feet of which it is composed, or reading it *metrically.*

5. The figures of prosody are

(a.) *Synalœpha,* or the elision of a final vowel or diph-

thong in scanning, when the next word begins with a vowel. Thus, *si omnes* is read s'omnes; *illi inter se*'ill'inter se, &c.

Rem. 1. *O, heu, ah, proh, væ,* and *vah,* are not elided. Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes stand unelided, and if so, they are generally short in the thesis of a foot.

(b.) *Ecthlipsis,* or the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the next word begins with a vowel. As,

Monstr(*um*) horrend(*um*) inform(*e*) ingens cui lumen ademptum.

Final *s* was sometimes elided in the same way by the earlier poets.

Rem. 2. *M* final, when unelided, is short before a vowel.

(c.) *Synæresis,* or the contraction of two separate vowels into one syllable; as, *deinde, fluviorum, tenuis,* pronounced *dine-de, fluv-yorum, ten-wis.*

(d.) *Diæresis,* or the separation of one syllable into two; as, *silua* for *silva; su-adent* for *suadent.*

(e.) *Systole,* or the shortening of a syllable, naturally or by position long; as,

Obstupui, *steterunt* comæ; vox faucibus hæsit.

(f.) *Diastole,* or lengthening a syllable naturally short.

(g.) *Synapheia,* or such a connection between the last syllable of one verse and the first of the next, that the former is made long by position, or cut off by synalœpha or ecthlipsis.

6. Rhythm is the alternate elevation (*arsis*) or depression (*thesis*) of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a verse. The terms *arsis* and *thesis* are also applied to the part of the foot on which this elevation or depression takes place. The arsis of a foot is on the long syllable.

7 The cæsura of the verse is such a division of the line,

by the ending of a word, as affords a convenient and harmonious pause.

§ 269. 1. An *hexameter* or *heroic* verse consists of six feet, the last of which is a spondee, and the fifth a dactyl; but the fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and then the verse is called *spondaic*.

Ludere | quæ vel- | lem ‖ cala- | mo per | missit a- | grestı. *Virg. E* 1, 1c.
In nova | fert ani- | mus ‖ mu- | tatas | dicere | formas. *Ov. M.* 1, 1.
Cura de | ven sobo- | les ‖ mag- | num Jovis | incre- | mentum. *Virg.*

2. The *cæsura* in hexameter usually occurs after the arsis of the third foot, as above; frequently, however, it occurs after the arsis of the fourth foot, and there is then a slighter one after the arsis of the second; as,

*I*nde to- | ro pater | Æne- | as ‖ sic | orsus ab | alto.

3. A light and rapid movement is produced by the recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one, by that of spondees.

*A*tque le- | vem stipu- | lam ‖ crepi- | tanti | urere | flamma.
*I*ll(i) in- | ter se- | se ‖ mag- | na vi | brachia | tollunt.

§ 270. 1. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, anapæsts (i. e. two short and one long).

*A*h nimis | ex, ve- | ro ‖ nunc | tibi no- | men erit.

2. It is generally, however, divided into two hemistichs, the first containing two dactyls, two spondees, or a dactyl and a spondee, followed by a long syllable; the second, two dactyls, followed by another long syllable. The cæsura occurs at the close of the first hemistich.

Natu- | ra sequi- | tur ‖ semina | quisque su- | æ.
*A*h nimis | ex ve- | ro ‖ nunc tibi | nomen e- | rit.

3. This verse usually alternates with hexameter, forming what is called elegiac verse.

☞ For a discussion of other metres, see Zumpt's Latin Grammar, or Andrews' Latin Grammar.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A OR AB.

a *or* ab, prep., *from, by;* §120, 2.
ab-do, (-ere, abdid-, abdit-,) to *run for concealment, to hide.*
ab-eo, (-ire, abi-, abit-,) to *go away.*
absens, entis, (absum), *absent.*
ab-solvo, (-ere, solv-, solut), to *free from, clear, absolve.*
ab-sum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, to *be away from, to be absent.*
ab-undo, -are, &c., to *abound.*
ab-utor, -i, -usus, to *abuse.*
ac-cedo, -ere, cess, cess, to *approach.*
ac-cendo, -ere, accend-, accens-, to *set on fire.*
ac-cido, -ere, accid-, —, to *happen.*
ac-cipio, -ere, cep-, cept-, to *receive.*
ac-curro, -ere, curr-, *seldom* cucurr-, curs-, to *run to.*
ac-cuso, are, &c., to *bring to trial, accuse, reproach.*
acer *or* acris, -is, -e, *sharp.*
acerbus, a, um, *bitter.*
acies, ei, *edge, point, line of battle.*
acriter, adv. (acer), *sharply;* §119.
ad, (prep., §120, 1), *to, at, towards.*
ad-do, -ere, addid-, addit-, to *add.*
ad-duco, -ere, dux-, duct-, to *lead to* or *against, to prompt, excite.*
adeo, (adv.), *so.*
Adherbal, -alis, *a Numidian prince, son of Micipsa, and half-brother to Jugurtha.*
ad-hibeo, -ere, -u-, -it-, to *bring to, apply, employ.*

ADHUC.

ad-huc, (adv.), *as yet.*
ad-itus, -us, *approach.*
ad-miror, -ari, &c., to *wonder.*
ad-moneo, -ere, &c., to *remind.*
ad-olescens, -ent-is, *young, a young man.*
ad-spicio, -ere, spex-, spect-, to *look at, behold.*
ad-ventus, -us, *arrival.*
ad-versor, -ari, &c., to *object, oppose.*
ad-verto, (-ere, vert-, vers-,) to *turn towards. Participle* adversus, adversum, *used as preposition.*
ædificium, i, *building.* From
ædifico, -are, &c., to *build.*
Æduus, i, *an Æduan.*
æquor, -oris, *a level surface. the sea.* From
æquus, a, um, *level, even, just.*
aer, -is, *air.*
æstas, -tat-is, *summer.*
æstimo, (-are, &c.), to *value, esteem.*
ætas, -tat-is, *age, life.*
af-fero, (ferre, attul-, allat-,) to *bring to.*
Africa, æ, *Africa.* Hence
Africanus, a, um, *African:* a surname of Scipio on account of his exploits in Africa.
ager, agri, *field, land, territory.*
Agesilaus, i, *Agesilaus,* a distinguished Spartan king.
ag-gredior, i, gressus, to *go to, approach, attack.*
agilis, e, *active.*
agmen, -inis, *an army on the march.*

AGNUS.

agnus, i, *lamb.*
ago, -ere, egi, act-, to *lead, drive.*
agricola, æ, *farmer.*
ala, æ, *wing.*
alacer *or* cris, e, *cheerful;* whence
alacritas, tatis, *eagerness, promptness.*
Alexander, dri, *Alexander,* king of Macedonia.
alienus, a, um, *belonging to another, foreign.*
aliquando, *at some time.*
aliquantus, a, um, *somewhat great, considerable*—aliquantum agri, *a considerable piece of ground.*
aliquis, qua, quod *or* quid, *some, any, some one,* §89.
alius, a, ud, (§56, Rem 1), *another (of many.)*
Allobrox, brogis, *an Allobrogian.*
allo, -ere, allu- allit- & alt-, to *support.*
Alpes, ium, *the Alps*
alter, a, um, (§56), *another (of two), second.*
altitudo, inis, *height, depth.*
altus, a, um, *high, deep.*
amans, antis, *fond.*
ambulo, -are, &c., to *walk.*
amens, entis, *mad.*
amicitia, æ, *friendship;* from
amicus, i, *friend.*
amitto, -ere, mis-, miss-, to *lose.*
amnis, is, (§33, Rem. 6, Exc. 2), *river.*
amo, -are, &c., to *love.*
amor, oris, *love.*
amplector, (i, plexus), to *embrace.*
amplus, a, um, *large ample;* amplius, *more.*
an, (interrog, disjunc, conj.), *or.*
ancilla, æ, *maid-servant.*
ancora, æ, *anchor.*
Ancus Martius, *4th king of Rome.*

ANGUSTUS.

angustus, a, um, *narrow.*
anima, æ, *breath, life.*
animadverto, -ere, vert-, vers-, to *turn the mind to, to perceive.*
animal, alis (§39), *animal.*
animus, i, *mind, soul.*
annus, i, *year.*
anser, eris, *goose.*
ante, (§120, 1), *before.*
antequam, (often separated, temp. conj.), *before.*
antea, *aforetime, before.*
antenna, æ, *sail yard.*
Antigonus, i, *Antigonus.*
Antiochia, æ, *Antioch,* a city of Syria.
Antiochus, i, *Antiochus.*
anxius, a, um, *anxious, uneasy.*
aper, pri, *wild boar.*
aperio, -ire, aperu-, apert-, to *open.*
Apollo, inis, *Apollo;* ab Apolline petere, to *inquire of Apollo.*
appello, -are, &c., to *call.*
appetens, entis, *eager for.*
ap propinquo, -are, &c., to *approach.*
aptus, a, um, *fit, suitable.*
apud, *with, among;* of persons, *at the house of, in the works of.*
aqua, æ, *water.*
aquila, æ, *eagle.*
ara, æ, *altar*
Arar *or* Araris, is *the Saone,* a river, of Gaul.
aratrum, i, *plow.*
arbitror, -ari, -atus, to *think, suppose.*
arbor, oris, (§38, Exc. 1), *tree.*
arcesso, -ere, -iv-, -it-, to *call, bring.*
arcus, us, *bow;* §48, *Rem.* 4.
argentum, i, *silver.*
argutus, a, um, *sagacious.*

ARIES.

aries, -etis, *ram, battering ram.*
Ariovistus, i, *a German king.*
Aristides, is, *an Athenian,* surnamed the Just from his integrity.
arma, orum, *arms.*
armo, are, &c., to *arm.*
aro, are, &c., to *plow.*
ar-ripio, ere, ripu-, rept-, to *seize, snatch up.*
ars, art-is, *skill, art.*
arx, arc-is, *citadel.*
as, assis, *a pound of copper, (about 16 & 2 third cents of our money); in general, a thing of small value.*
ascendo, ere, cend-, cens-, to *ascend.*
asinus, i, *ass.*
asper, a, um, *rough.*
aspicio, ere, spex-, spect-, to *behold, see.*
Athenæ, arum, *Athens.*
Atheniensis, is, *Athenian.*
atque *or* ac, (cop. conj.), *and.*
atrox, ocis, *savage, cruel, fierce.*
auctoritas, tatis, *authority, influence.*
audax, acis, *bold, daring.*
audeo, ere, ausus, to *dare.*
audiens, (participial adj.), *hearing, attentive;* audiens dicto, *attentive to orders, obedient.*
audio, ire, &c., to *hear.*
augeo, ere, aux-, auct-, to *increase, swell.*
aureus, a, um, *golden.* From
aurum, i, *gold.*
aut, *or;* aut—aut, *either—or.*
auxilium, i, *aid, help.*
avarus, a, um, *greedy, covetous.*
avidus, a, um, *desirous, eager.*
avis, is, *bird;* §33, *Rem.* 6.
a-voco, are, &c., to *call away, separate.*

CANTUS.

B.

Babylon, onis, *Babylon.*
Balbus, i, *Balbus, (stammerer).*
barbarus, a, um, *foreign, barbarous*
beatus, a, um, *happy.*
Belga, æ, *a Belgian.*
bello, are, &c., to *war.*
bellum, i, *war.*
beneficium, i, *benefit.*
bene, (melius, optime), *well.*
benignus, a, um, *kind.*
bibo, ere, bib-, bibit-, to *drink.*
Bibrax, actis, *a town in Gaul.*
biduum, i, *two days' time.*
biennium, i, *two years' time.*
bipartito, *in two divisions.*
blandus, a, um, *flattering.*
Bœotii, orum, *the Bœotians.*
bonus, a um, *good.*
bos, bovis, *ox* or *cow.*
brevis, e, *short.*
breviter, (adv.), *shortly.*
Britannia, æ, *Britain.*
Britannus, i, *a Briton.*

C.

cadaver, eris, *corpse.*
Cadmus, i, *Cadmus.*
cado, ere, cecid-, cas-, to *fall.*
cæcus, a, um, *blind.*
cædo, ere, cecid-, cæs-, to *cut, kill.*
Cæsar, aris, *Cæsar.*
cæspes, itis, *turf.*
Caius, i, *Caius.*
calamitas, tatis, *misfortune.*
calcar, aris, *spur.* From
calx, calc-is, *heel.*
campester, *level;* from
campus, i, *plain.*
canis, is, *dog.*
canto, are, &c., to *sing.*
cantus, us, *singing.*

CAPAX.

capax, ācis, *capable of receiving. roomy, large.*
capio, ere, cēp-, capt-, to *take.*
capitalis, e, *of the head, capital.*
captīvus, i, *prisoner, captive.*
caput, capitis, *head.*
carcer, eris, *prison.*
carmen, inis, *song, poem.*
caro, carnis, *flesh.*
carpo, ere, carps-, carpt-, to *pluck.*
Carthago, inis, *Carthage*
Carthaginiensis, is, *Carthagenian.*
cārus, a, um, *dear.*
Cassius, i, *Cassius.*
castellum, i, *tower, fort.*
Casticus, i *Casticus.*
castīgo, āre, &c., to *chastise.*
castra, ōrum, *camp.*
cāsus, ūs, *a falling, chance.*
catena, æ, *chain, fetter.*
Catilīna, æ, *Catiline.*
catinus *or* um, i, *bowl, dish.*
Cato, ōnis, *Cato.*
causa, æ, *reason, cause;* abl., *for the sake of,* always placed after the limiting word.
caveo, ēre, cāv-, caut-, to *beware.*
cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to *yield.*
celer, *or* is, e, *swift.* Hence
celeritas, tātis, *swiftness.*
celo, āre, &c., to *conceal.*
censeo, ēre, censu-, cens-, to *be of opinion, to think.*
censor, ōris, *censor, a Roman magistrate.*
centum, *hundred;* § 63.
centurio, ōnis, *centurion, captain of a hundred men*
certāmen, inis, *contest, strife.*
cervus, i, *stag.*
cētera, um (*nom. sing. m. not used*) *the rest* (*of a thing.*)
charta, æ, *paper.*
cibus, i, *food.*

COLLOQUOR.

Cicero, ōnis, *Cicero.*
cingo, ere, cinx-, cinct-, *to gird*
cinis, eris, *ashes.*
circiter, *about.*
circum, *around.*
circum-do, are, ded-, dat, to *put around,* to *surround.*
circumfundo, ere, fud-, fus-, to *pour around,* to *surround.*
circum-venio, īre, ven-, vent-, to *surround.*
cis, citra, *on this side of.*
cīvilis, *of citizens, civil.*
cīvis, is, *citizen.*
cīvitas, tātis, *state.*
clamo, āre, &c., to *shout.*
clamor, ōris, *shouting.*
clārus, a, um, *famous, renowned*
classis, is, *fleet.*
Claudius, i, Claudius.
Clodius, i, Clodius.
claudo, ere, claus-, claus-, to *shut*
clavis, is, *key.*
clementia, æ, *mildness.*
cliens, entis, *client, dependant*
cœlum, i, *heaven.*
cœno, āre, &c, to *dine, sup.*
cœpi, (§ 113, Rem. 1,) *I began*
cogito, āre, &c., to *think, reflect.*
cognomen, inis, *surname.*
cognosco, ere, nov-, cognit-, to *find out, learn.*
cogo, ere, coeg-, coact-, to *collect, bring together, compel.*
cohors, hortis, *cohort.*
cohortor, -āri, -ātus, to *encourage*
collega, æ, *colleague.*
colligo, ere, leg-, lect-, to *assemble, gather, collect.*
collis, is, *hill.*
colloco, āre, &c., to *put, station, place, set up.*
colloquium, *conversation, conference.*
colloquor, locutus, to *converse.*

COLO.

colo, ere, colu-, cult-, to *cultivate;* of the gods, to *worship.*
color, oris, *color.*
columba æ, *dove.*
com-edo, onis, *glutton.*
com-es, itis, *companion.*
commemoro, are, &c., to *relate.*
com-meo, are, to *come and go.*
com-missum, i, (*part of* com-mitto,) *a thing done, crime.*
com-mitto, to *bring or send together,* to *commence* (*battle.*)
Commius, i, Commius.
commodum, i, *convenience.*
com-moveo, ere, mov-, mot-, to *move, disturb, disquiet.*
com-munis, e, *common.*
comparo, are, &c., to *bring together, acquire.*
com-pello, ere, pul-, puls-, to *drive together.*
compello, are, to *call, address.*
com-perio, ire, per-, pert-, to *find out, ascertain.*
com-plector, i, plexus, to *embrace.*
com-pleo, ere, plev-, plet, to *fill.*
com-plures, ium, (§72, 5,) *a great many.*
com-pos, otis, *having control of.*
conatus, us, *attempt.*
con cavus, a, um, *hollow;* manus concava, *the hollow of the hand.*
con-cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to *yield.*
con-cilium, i, *council.*
con-cito, are, &c., to *rouse, excite, urge on, raise.*
con-cordia, æ, *agreement, concord.*
con-curro, ere, curr-, curs-, to *run together.*
con-cursus, us, *running together.*
con-cutio, ere, cuss-, cuss-, to *shake violently.*
con-demno, are, &c., to *condemn.*

CONSUL.

con-do, ere, did-, dit-, to *found, build.*
con-duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *bring or lead together.*
con ficio, ere, fec-, fect-, to *finish.*
con fido, ere, fisus, to *trust.*
con firmo, are, &c., to *assert, establish.*
con fiteor, eri, fessus, to *confess.*
con gredior, i, gressus, to *meet with;* in a friendly or hostile sense.
con jicio, ere, jec-, ject-, to *throw, hurl.*
con junctio, onis, *union, friendship, intimacy.*
con jungo, ere, junx-, junct-, to *unite.*
con juro, are, &c., to *swear together, conspire.*
con juratio, onis, *conspiracy.*
con jux, jug is, *husband or wife.*
conor, -ari, -atus, to *attempt.*
conscius, a, um, *conscious.*
con scribo, to *levy, enroll.*
con sector, -ari, -atus, to *pursue eagerly and overtake.*
con sequor, i, secutus, to *pursue, attain.*
con servo, are, &c., to *preserve, save.*
con sido, ere, sed, sess-, to *encamp, settle.*
con silium, i, *counsel, advice.*
con spergo, ere, spers-, spers-, to *sprinkle.*
con stanter, *firmly, persistently.*
con stat, constitit, *it is evident.*
con stituo, ere, stitu-, stitut-, to *determine, put, fix.*
con suesco, ere, suev-, suet-, to *accustom.*
con suetudo, inis, *custom.*
consul, is, *consul.*

CONSULO.

consulo, ere, sulu-, sult, to *take counsel, reflect, consult*
consultum, i, (part.) *a thing reflected on;* abl. *on purpose.*
con sumo, ere, sumpt-, sumpt-, to *consume.*
con temno, ere, tempt-, tempt-, to *despise.*
con tendo, ere, tend-, tent-, to *strive, contend, hasten.*
con tinens, entis, (part. pres.), *holding together continent.*
con tinenter, (adv.), *continually.*
con tineo, ere, tinu-, tent-, to *hold on all sides, keep in.*
contra, *against.*
con traho, ere, trax-, tract-, to *draw together.*
con venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to *come together, assemble.*
copia, æ, *abundance;* pl. *forces.*
coquo, ere, cox-, coct-, to *cook.*
Corinthus, i, *Corinth.*
corniger, a, um, *horned.*
cornu, us, *horn.*
corona, æ, *crown.*
corpus, oris, *body.*
cor rigo, ere, rex-, rect-, to *set straight, correct.*
cor rumpo, ere, rup-, rupt-, to *destroy, corrupt.*
cras, (adv.), *to-morrow.*
creber, a, um, *frequent.*
crebro, (adv.), *frequently.*
credo, ere, did-, dit-, to *believe.*
cremo, are, &c., to *burn.*
creo, are, &c., to *create, make.*
cresco, ere, crev-, cret-, to *grow.*
crinis, is, *hair.*
cruciatus, us, *torture.*
crudelis, e, *cruel.*
cubiculum, i, *bedchamber.*
cubile, is, *couch.*
cujus, a, um, *whose?*

DEFLUO.

culpa, æ, *fault.*
culter, i, *knife.*
cum, *with.*
cupiditas, tatis, *longing, lust.*
cupidus, a, um, *desirous, eager.*
cupio, ere, iv-, it-, to *desire.*
cur, *why?*
cura, æ, *care.*
curo, are, &c., to *care for, attend to.*
curro, ere, cucurr-, curs-, to *run.*
currus, us, *chariot.*
cursus, us, *running, course.*
custos, odis, *keeper, guardian, sentinel.*

D.

damno, are, &c., to *condemn.*
Davus, i, *Davus.*
debeo, ere, &c., to *owe, ought.*
de cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to *depart.*
decem, *ten;* § 63.
de clivis, e, *sloping downward.*
decoro, are, &c., to *adorn.*
decorus, a, um, *becoming.*
decus, oris, *honor, dignity.*
de decus, oris, *disgrace.*
de ditio, onis, *surrender.*
de do, ere, dedid-, dedit-, to *surrender.*
de fendo, ere, fend-, fens-, to *defend.*
de fenso, are, &c., to *defend diligently.*
de fero, ferre, tul-, lat-, to *bring or carry (from one place or person to another.)*
de fervesce, ere, ferv- & ferbu-, to *boil down, subside.*
defessus, a, um, *weary.*
de-flagro, are, &c., to *burn down.*
de fluo, ere, flux-, flux-, to *flow down or away.*

DEJICIO.

de jicio, ere, jec-, ject-, to *throw down.*
delecto, are, &c., to *delight.*
deleo, ere, ev-, et-, to *destroy.*
de libero, are, &c., to *deliberate.*
de ligo, ere, leg-, lect-, to *choose.*
de lictum, i, *fault, crime.*
Delphi, orum, *Delphi,* a town of Greece.
dementia, ae, *madness.*
de monstro, are, &c., to *show.*
deni, *ten at a time;* §63.
dens, dentis, *tooth.*
densus, a, um, *thick, dense.*
denuntio, are, &c., to *announce, threaten.*
deorsum, (adv.) *down-hill.*
de pono, ere, posu-, it-, to *lay aside.*
de silio, ire, silu-, sult-, to *leap down.*
de sisto, ere, stit-, stit-, to *cease.*
de spero, are, &c., to *despair.*
destino, are, &c., to *fasten*
de stituo, ere, stitu-, stitut-, to *desert.*
de stringo, ere, strinx-, striet-, to *draw.*
de super, (adv.) *from above.*
de terreo, ere, &c., to *scare off, deter.*
deus, i, (§24, *Rem.* 2,) *a god.*
de voro, are, &c., to *gulp down.*
dexter, tera, terum, *or* tra, trum, *on the right, right.*
Diana, ae, *Diana,*
dico, are, &c., to *dedicate.*
dico, ere, dix-, dict-, to *say.*
dictator, oris, *dictator.*
dies, ei, *day.*
dif fero, ferre, dis-tul-, di-lat-, to *put off, defer.*
dif ficilis, e, *difficult.*
dif fido, ere, fisus, to *distrust.*

DUCENTI.

dignus, a, um, *worthy.*
di labor, i, lapsus, to *fall to pieces.*
di ligo, ere, lex-, lect-, to *love.*
di midium, i, *half.*
di mitto, ere, mis-, miss-, to *send out.*
Dionysius, i, *Dionysius.*
di ripio, ere, ripu-, rept-, to *tear asunder, plunder, pillage.*
dis cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to *depart.*
discipulus, i, *pupil, learner.*
disco, ere, didic-, to *learn.*
dis cordia, ae, *disagreement.*
dis pono, ere, posu-, posit-, to *arrange.*
dis puto, are, &c., to *discuss, dispute.*
dis sentio, ire, sens-, sens-, to *differ in opinion, dissent.*
dis similis, e, *unlike.*
diu, utius, utissime, [adv.] *long.*
dives, itis, *rich.*
divido, ere, vis-, vis-, to *divide.*
divinus, a, um, *divine.*
Divitiacus, i, *an Æduan chief.*
divitiæ, arum, *riches.*
do, dare, ded-, dat-, to *give.*
doceo, ere, docu-, doct-, to *teach.*
doctus, a um, *learned.*
doleo, ere, &c., to *grieve.*
dolor, oris, *pain, grief.*
domina, ae, *mistress.*
dominus, i, *master.*
domus, (§48, Rem. 5,) *house.*
donec, *until;* temp. conj.
donum, i, *gift.*
dormio, ire, &c., to *sleep.*
dormito, are, &c., to *fall asleep.*
Druides, um, *the Druids.*
dubitatio, onis, *doubt.*
dubito, are, &c., to *doubt.*
dubius, a, um, *doubtful.*
ducenti, ae, a, (§63,) *two hundred.*

DUCO.

duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *lead, deem, consider, regard.*
dulcis, e, *sweet.*
dum, *while, as long as, until.*
Dumnorix, igis, *brother of Divitiacus.*
duo, æ, o, *two.*
duplex, icis, *double.*
duplico, are, &c., to *double*
durus, a, um, *hard.*

E.

E *or* ex, *out of, from, in consequence of, after.*
e dico, ere, dix-, dict-, to *issue an edict.*
edo, ere, ed-, es-, (§ 114,) to *eat.*
e doceo, ere, docu-, doct, to *teach thoroughly, educate*
e duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *lead out.*
effigies, ei, *image, likeness.*
egens, entis, *needy.*
egeo, ere, egu-, to *need.*
egestas, tatis, *poverty.*
ego, (§ 78), *I.*
egregius, a, um, *remarkable.*
e jicio, ere, jec-, ject-, to *cast out.*
elegans, antis, *luxurious, elegant.*
eloquens, entis, *eloquent.*
eloquentia, æ, *eloquence.*
emo, ere, em-, empt-, to *buy.*
emolumentum, i, *advantage.*
Epaminondas, æ, (App. I), *the great Theban general.*
Ephesus, i, *a city of Asia Minor*
Ephesius a, um, *Ephesian.*
epistola, æ, *letter, epistle.*
eques, itis, *horseman.*
equester, *or* tris, e, *of a horse.*
equito, are, &c., to *be a horseman, to ride on horseback.*
equitatus, us, *cavalry.*

FATEOR.

equus, i, *horse.*
e ripio, ere, ripu-, rept to *rescue.*
erro, are, &c., to *err.*
error, oris, *error.*
esuriens, entis, *hungry.*
et, *and.*
etiam, *also.*
ex cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to *retire.*
exemplum, i, *example.*
ex eo, ire, exi-, exit, to *go out.*
exerceo, ere, &c., to *exercise.*
exercitus, us, *army.*
exiguus, a, um, *slight, small.*
existimo, are, &c., to *judge, think.*
exitium, i, *destruction.*
ex pello ere, pul-, puls, to *drive out.*
ex ploro, are, &c., to *search out.*
ex plorator, oris, *scout.*
ex pono, ere, posu-, posit-, to *explain.*
ex pugno, are, &c., to *storm.*
ex sisto, ere, stit-, stit, to *stand out.*
ex specto, are, &c., to *await, look for.*
ex uro, ere, uss-, ust-, to *burn up*

F.

facies, ei, *form, face.*
facile, *easily*: from
facilis, e, *easy.*
facinus, oris, *deed, crime*, from
facio, ere, fec-, fact-, to *do, make, esteem, value*
facultas, tatis, *means, power.*
fallo, ere, fefell-, fals-, to *deceive.*
fama, æ, *fame, reputation.*
fames, is, *hunger, famine.*
familia, æ, *family.*
familiaris e, *pertaining to the family*; res fam., *property.*
fateor, eri, fassus, to *confess*

FATIGO.

fatigo, are, &c., to *weary*.
faveo, ere, fav-, faut-, to *favor*.
febris, is, *fever*.
femina, ae, *woman*.
femur, oris & inis, *thigh*.
ferax, acis, *fertile*.
fere, [adv.] *almost*.
fero, ferre, tuli, latum, to *bear, carry*.
ferox, ocis, *fierce*
ferreus, a, um, *made of iron*.
ferrum, i, *iron*.
ferus, a, um, *wild, savage*.
fessus, a, um, *wearied*.
festino, are, &c., to *hasten*.
fides, ei, *faith, promise*.
fides, ium, *strings, a lute, lyre*.
fidus, a, um, *faithful*.
figura, ae, *figure, shape*.
filia, ae, *daughter*.
filius, i, *son*.
fingo, ere, finx-, fict-, to *make, feign*.
finis, is, *end, limit, boundary*.
finitimus, a, um, *neighboring*.
firmus, a, um, *strong, firm*.
flagito, are, &c., to *demand*, [*earnestly*.]
flatus, us, *blast*.
flecto, ere, flex-, flex-, to *bend*.
fleo, flere, flev-, flet-, to *weep*.
fletus, us, *weeping*.
floccus, *a lock of wool*, [*anything of small value*.]
flos, floris, *flower*.
fluctus, us, *wave*.
flumen, inis, *river*.
fluo, ere, flux-, flux-, to *flow*.
foedus, eris, *league, treaty*.
folium, i, *leaf*,
fons, fontis, *fountain*.
forma, ae, *form, shape*.
formido, are, &c., to *dread*.
fortis, e, *brave*.

GREX.

fortitudo, inis, *fortitude, firmness*.
fortuna, æ, *fortune*.
fossa, æ, *ditch*.
frater, tris, *brother*.
fratricida, æ, *fratricide*.
fraus, fraudis, *deceit*.
frenum, i, *pl.* i & a, *bit, bridle*.
fretus, a, um, *trusting*.
frons, frontis, *forehead*.
fructus, us, *fruit*.
frumentor, ari, &c., to *forage*.
frumentum, i, *corn, grain*.
fruor, i, fructus, fruitus, to *enjoy*.
frustra, (adv.), *in vain*.
fuga, æ, *flight*.
fugio, ere, fug-, fugit-, to *flee*.
fugo, are, &c., to *put to flight, rout*.
fulguratio, onis, *lightning*.
fur, furis, *thief*.

G.

Gallia, æ, *Gaul*.
Gallus, i, *a Gaul*.
gallina, æ, *hen*.
gaudeo, ere, gavisus, to *rejoice*.
gener, i, *son-in-law*.
gens, gentis, *race, family*.
genus, eris, *kind, race*
Germania, æ, *Germany*.
Germanus, i, *a German*.
gero, ere, gess-, gest-, to *wage, carry*.
gladius, i, *sword*.
Glaucus, i, *Glaucus*.
gloria, æ, *glory*.
Græcia, æ, *Greece*.
Græcus, i, *a Greek*.
grammatica, æ, *grammar*.
gratus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasant*
gravis, e, *heavy, severe*.
graviter, *heavily, severely*.
gregatim, *in flocks, herds*.
grex, gregis, *flock, herd*.

H.

habeo, ere, &c., to *have, hold.*
habito, to *have frequently, dwell.*
hœdus, i, *kid.*
hæreo, ere, hæs, hæs, to *stick.*
Hannibal, alis, *Hannibal.*
Harudes, um, *Harudians.*
hasta, æ, *spear.*
haud, *not.*
Helvetius, i, *a Helvetian.*
Hercules, is, *Hercules.*
Herminius, i, *Herminius.*
herus, i, *master.*
Hibernia, æ, *Ireland.*
hiberna, (castra), *winter-quarters.*
hic, hæc, hoc, *this.*
hiemo, are, &c., to *winter.*
hiems, is, *winter.*
hodie, *to-day.*
Homerus, i, *Homer.*
homo, inis, *man.*
honeste, *honorably.*
honestus, *honorable.*
honor, oris, *honor.*
hora, æ, *hour.*
horreum, i, *granary.*
hortor, ari, &c., to *encourage.*
hortus, i, *garden.*
hospes, itis, *guest.*
hostis, is, *enemy.*
humanus, a, um, *human.*
humanitas, tatis, *refinement.*
humerus, i, *shoulder.*
humilis, e, *low.*
humus, i, *ground.*

I.

ibi, *there.*
idem, eadem, idem, *same.*
idoneus, a, um, *fit, suitable.*
ignarus, a, um, *ignorant.*
ignis, is, *fire.*
ignosco, ere, nov-, not-, to *forgive.*

INCOLUMIS.

ille, a, ud, *that, the former, he.*
illicio, ere, lex-, lect-, to *decoy.*
imber, bris, *rain, shower.*
imitor, ari, &c., to *imitate.*
immanis, e, *immense, huge.*
immemor, oris, *unmindful.*
immortalis, is, e, *immortal.*
immortalitas, tatis, *immortality.*
impatiens, entis, *not able* or *willing to bear, impatient.*
impedimentum, i, *hindrance.*
impedio, ire, &c., to *hinder.*
impello ere, pul-, puls-, to *drive on.*
imperator, oris, *general, emperor.*
impero, are, &c., to *order.*
imperitus, a, um, *ignorant, unskilled.*
imperium, i, *command, government.*
impetro, are, &c., to *obtain.*
impetus, us, *attack.*
impietas, tatis, *undutifulness.*
impiger, a, um, *active.*
impleo, ere, plev-, plet-, to *fill.*
impono, ere, posu-, posit-, to *put upon.*
importo, are, &c., to *bring in, import.*
impotens, entis, *unable to restrain.*
improbus, a, um, *wicked.*
imprudens, entis, *imprudent.*
imus, a, um, see *inferus.*
in, (with acc.), *into, upon*, (with abl.), *in, among.*
incendium, *a burning, conflagration.*
incendo, ere, cend-, cens-, to *set on fire; to burn up.*
incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
incido, ere, incid-, cas-, to *happen.*
incito, are, &c., to *set in motion, arouse, excite.*
incola, æ, *inhabitant.*
incolo, ere, colu-, cult-, to *inhabit, dwell, live.*
incolumis, e, *unhurt, safe.*

INCONDITUS.

inconditus, a, um, *rude, uncouth.*
incredibilis, e, *incredible.*
incuso, are, &c., to *blame, censure, find fault with, accuse.*
indignus, a, um, *unworthy.*
in-duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *lead on.*
indulgeo, ere, duls-, dult-, to *indulge.*
infans, antis, *infant.*
infero, ferre, intul-, illat-, to *bring upon, wage upon, inflict.*
infinitus, a, um, *boundless.*
in-fluo, ere, flux-, flux-, to *flow into.*
infreno, are, &c., to *bridle.*
ingenium, i, *intellect, natural disposition.*
ingens, entis, *huge.*
ingratus, a, um, *disagreeable, ungrateful.*
inimicus, i, *enemy.*
inimicitia, æ, *enmity.*
iniquus, a, um, *unjust.*
initium, i, *beginning.*
injuria, æ, *injury.*
in nascor, i, natus, to *spring up.*
innocens, entis, *innocent.*
innocentia, æ, *innocence, purity.*
inopia, æ, *want, scarcity.*
inquam, (§ 113,) *I say, (used only after one or more words of a quotation.)*
insidiæ, arum, *ambush, snares.*
in silio, ire, sili- & silu-, to *leap upon.*
instigo, are, &c., to *stir up.*
in stituo, ere, stitu-, stitut-, to *arrange, instruct.*
in struo, ere, strux-, struct, to *set in order, draw up, build.*
in suetus, a, um, *unaccustomed.*
insula, æ, *island.*
integer, gra, grum, *sound, unhurt.*

JACTO.

intelligo, ere, lex-, lect-, to *understand.*
inter, *between, among, in the midst of;* inter se, *with* or *against one another.* inter spoliandum, *in the act of despoiling.*
inter dico, ere, dix-, dict-, to *forbid.*
interdum, *sometimes.*
intereo, ire, interi-, interit-, to *die, perish,*
interficio, ere, fec-, fect-, to *kill.*
interus, a um, *inward.*
intersum, esse, fui, to *be of importance, to be between.*
nihil interest, *it makes no difference.*
introduco, ere, dux-, duct-, to *introduce.*
invado, ere, vas- vas-, to *attack, invade.*
in venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to *come upon, find, invent.*
in ventor, oris, *inventor*
in vestigo, are, &c., to *search out.*
in victus, a um, *invincible.*
invidia, æ, *envy.*
invito, are, to *invite.*
invitus, a, um, *unwilling.*
ipse, a, um, *self.*
ira, ae, *anger.*
iracundia, ae, *hasty temper*
irascor, i, to *be angry.*
iratus, a, um, *angry.*
iste, a, ud, *that (of yours.)*
ita, *thus, so.*
Italia, ae, *Italy.*
item, *likewise.*
iter, itineris, *journey, march, way.*

J.

jacio, ere, jec-, ject-, to *throw.*
jacto, are, &c., to *throw about, discuss.*

JAM.

jam, *now, already.*
jecur, (§ 45.) *the liver.*
jubar, aris, *sunshine.*
jubeo, ere, juss-, juss-, *to order.*
jucundus, a, um, *delightful.*
judex, icis, *judge.*
jugum, i, *a yoke. Two spears set upright with a third laid across the top were called jugum.*
Jugurtha, æ, *king of Numidia.*
jumentum, i, *beast of burden, such as horses or oxen.*
Juppiter, Jovis, *Jupiter.*
Juno, æ, *Juno, a mountain.*
jus, juris, *law, right:* (usually unwritten law, as opposed to *lex*, statute law).
jusjurandum, (§ 45), *oath.*
justus, a, um, *just.*
juvenis, is, *young man.*
juventus, utis, *youth.*
juvat, abat, &c., *it pleases.*

L.

Labienus, i, *a lieutenant of Cæsar.*
labor, oris, *labor.*
lac, lactis, *milk.*
lacesso, ere, ivi, itum, *to provoke.*
injuria lacessere, *to injure.*
lacrima, æ, *tear.*
lacus, us, *lake.*
laetus, *joyful.*
lanio, are, &c., *to tear to pieces.*
lapis, idis, *stone.*
largior, iri, itus, *to bribe.*
lateo, ere, latui, *to be hid.*
latitudo, inis, *breadth.*
latro, onis, *robber.*
latus, a, um, *wide, broad.*
laus, audis, *praise, glory.*
laudo, are, *to praise.*
laus, laudis, *praise, glory.*

MAGNANIMUS

lavo, are, lavi, lotum, lautum, lavatum, *to bathe.*
legatio, onis, *embassy.*
legatus, i, *ambassador, lieutenant.*
legio, onis, *legion.*
lego, ere, legi, lectum, *to read.*
leo, onis, *lion.*
lepus, oris, *hare.*
levis, e, *light, slight.*
levo, are, *to lighten, relieve.*
liber, a, um, *free.*
liber, bri, *book.*
liberi, orum, *children.*
libero, are, &c., *to free.*
libertas, atis, *liberty.*
licet, licuit, licitum est, *it is allowed, permitted, right, lawful.*
lignum, i, *wood.*
lingua, æ, *tongue, language.*
linter, tris, *boat.*
Lucus, i, *a Helvetian chief.*
littera, æ, *a letter* (of the alphabet).
litus, oris, *shore.*
locus, i, *pl.* i & a, *place.*
locupletes, is, *rich.*
longitudo, inis, *length.*
longus, a, um, *long.*
loquor, i, locutus, *to speak.*
ludus, i, *game, play.*
lumen, inis, *light.*
luna, æ, *moon.*
lupus, i, *wolf.*
lux, lucis, *light.*

M.

Macedonia, æ, *Macedonia.*
macto, are, &c., *to sacrifice.*
maestor, oris, *grief.* præ maestore, *for grief,* (a preventing cause.)
magis, maxime, *more, most.*
magister, i, *a master* (of a school, &c.)
magnanimus, a, um, *great-souled, magnanimous*

MAGNITUDO.

magnitudo, inis, *greatness.*
magnus, a, um, (major, maximus,) *great.*
maledico, ere, dix-, dict-, to *be abusive, revile, curse.*
malo, malle, malui, to *prefer.*
malum, i, *apple.*
malus, i, *mast of a ship.*
malus, a, um, (pejor, pessimus,) *bad, wicked, evil.*
mandatum, i, *a thing entrusted, command.*
mando, are, &c., to *entrust.*
maneo, ere, mans-, mans-, to *remain.*
manus, us, *hand.*
Marcus, i, *Mark.*
mare. is, *sea.*
maritimus, *bordering on the sea.*
Marius, i, *Marius.*
marmor, oris, *marble.*
mater, tris, *mother.*
maturo, are, &c., to *hasten.*
maturus, a, um, *ripe.*
mature, (adv.) *quickly, soon.*
medicamentum, i, *drug, dose.*
medicina, ae, *medicine.*
medicus, i, *physician.*
medius, a, um, *middle.*
melior, us, *better.*
memini, (§113), *I remember.*
memor, oris, *mindful.*
memoria, ae, *memory, recollection.*
mendacium, i. *falsehood, lie.*
mendax, acis, *false, lying.*
mens, mentis, *mind.*
mensa, ae, *table.*
mensis, is, *month.*
mentior, iri, itus, to *lie.*
mercator, oris, *merchant.*
Mercurius, i, *Mercury.*
meritus, a, um, *deserving.*
merges, itis, *sheaf.*
meridies, ei, *mid-day.*

MULTITUDO.

Messala, ae, *Messala.*
Metior, iri, mensus, to *measure.*
meto, ere, messu-, mess-, to *reap.*
metuo, ere, metu-, *rarely* metut-, to *fear, be apprehensive.*
metus, us, *apprehension, fear.*
meus, a, um, *my, mine.*
miles, itis, *soldier.*
militaris, e, *military.*
mille, (§64, 6,) *thousand.*
minor, ari, atus, to *threaten.*
minuo, ere, minu-, minut-, to *make less, weaken.*
miror, ari, atus, to *wonder.*
mirus, a, um, *wonderful.*
miser, a, um, *wretched.*
misereo, ere, u-, to *pity,* (generally used impersonally; § 135. c.)
mitto, ere, mis-, miss-, to *send.*
modus, i, *manner, measure, limit;* praeter modum, *beyond measure, unduly.*
moenia, ium, &c., *walls.*
mollis, e, *soft.*
moneo, ere, &c., to *advise, remind.*
monile, is, *necklace.*
mons, mont-is, *mountain.*
monstro, are, &c., to *show.*
mordeo, ere, momord-, mors-, to *champ, bite.*
morior, i, & iri, mortuus, moriturus, to *die.*
mortuus, a, um, *dead.*
moror, ari, atus, to *delay.*
mors, mortis, *death.*
morsus, us, *biting.*
mortalis, e, *mortal.*
mos, moris, *manner, custom.*
motus, us, *moving, insurrection.*
moveo, ere, mov-, mot-, to *move.*
mulier, eris, *woman.*
multus, (plus, plurimus,) *much, many.*
multitudo, inis, *multitude.*

MUNDUS.

mundus, i, *world.*
munio, ire, &c., to *fortify.*
murus, i, *wall.*
mus, muris, *mouse.*
musa, ae, *muse.*
muto, are, &c., to *change.*

N.

nactus, *participle from* nanciscor.
nam, *for,* (conj.)
namque, *for, indeed.*
nanciscor, i, nactus, to *get.*
narro, are, &c., to *tell, relate.*
nascor, i, natus, to *be born.*
natura, ae, *nature.*
natus, us, *birth.*
nauta, ae, *sailor.*
navale, is, *dock-yard.*
navigo, are, &c., to *sail.*
navis, is, *ship.*
ne, (final conj.) *that, not, lest.*
nec, (conj.) *neither, nor and not.*
necessarius, a, um, *critical, necessary.*
neco, are, &c., to *murder, kill.*
negligens, entis, *negligent;* part. adj.
negligo, ere, lex-, lect-, to *neglect.*
nego, are, &c., to *deny.*
negotium, i, *business.*
nemo, inis, *no man, no one.*
nemus, oris, *grove.*
nepos, otis, *grandson.*
Neptunus, i, *Neptune, God of the sea.*
neque, *and not, neither, nor.*
nescio, ire, &c., not to *know.*
neuter, a, um, *neither (of two.)*
neve, neu, *and, not, nor;* (neg fin. conj.)
nidifico, are, &c., to *build a nest.*
nidus, i. *nest.*
niger, a, um, *black.*

OBSIDEO.

nihil, (indecl.), *or* nihilum, i, *nothing.*
nimius, a, um, too much, *excessive.*
nisi, (cond. conj.), *unless, if not.*
nobilis, e, *noble.*
nobilitas, atis, *nobility.*
noceo, ere, &c., to *hurt, harm.*
nolo, nolle. nolui, to *be unwilling.*
nomen, inis, *name.*
non, *not.*
nonus, a, um, (§ 63), *ninth.*
non ne, (in direct questions, § 81, 4); in indirect questions, *if not, whether not.*
nosco, ere, nov-, not-, to *know.*
noster, a, um, *our, ours.*
novem, (§ 63), *nine.*
novus, a, um, *new, late.*
nox, noctis, *night.*
noxius, *hurtful.*
nubes, is, *cloud.*
nudo, are, &c., to *strip.*
nudus, a, um, *naked.*
nullus, a, um, (§ 56), *none, not any.*
num, § 81, 3.
Numa, ae, *Numa.*
Numantinus, a, um, *Numantian.*
numerus, i, *number.*
Numida, ae, *a Numidian.*
Numidia, ae, *Numidia.*
numquis, § 89.
nunc, *now.*
nuncio, are, to *announce.*
nuncius, i, *messenger.*
nunquam *or* numquam, *never.*

O.

ob, *for,* on account of.
obliviscor, oblitus, to forget.
obscuro, are, &c., to obscure.
ob secro, are, &c., to beseech.
obses, idis, hostage.
ob sideo, ere, sed., sess-, to besiege.

OBSIDIO.

obsidio, onis, siege.
ob sto, are, stit-, stat-, to stand before, hinder, prevent.
ob trunco, are, to slay.
occasus, us, going down, setting.
oc cido, (ob—caedo), cid-, cis-, to cut down, kill.
oc cido, (ob—cado), ere, cid-, cas, to fall, set.
oc cultus, a, um, hidden.
occupo, are, to seize, take possession of.
oceanus, i, ocean.
octavus, a, um, (§ 63), eighth.
octingenti, ae, a, (§ 63), eight hundred.
octo, (§ 63), eight.
oculus, i, eye.
odi, (§ 113, *Rem.* 1), I hate.
odium, i, hatred.
officium, i, duty, service.
olim, (adv.), formerly, anciently, (of the future) some time or other,
omnino, altogether, wholly, at all.
omnis, e, all, every.
onero, *are*, to load, lade.
onus, eris, burden.
opera, ae, pains, work, labor.
opinio, *onis*, opinion, belief.
opinor, *ari*, &c., to be of opinion.
oportet, uit, it is necessary, proper, it behooves.
oppidanus, a, um, of a town.
oppidum, i, town.
opportunitas, *atis*, fitness, suitableness.
opportunus, a, um, fit, favorable.
opprimo, ere, press-, press-, to press down, put down, suppress, overcome, crush, oppress.
oppugno, *are*, &c., to assault.
optimus, a, um, (bonus), best.

PARS.

opulens *or* opulentus, a, um, powerful.
opus, eris, work.
opus, (indecl.) need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need.
oraculum, i, oracle.
oratio, *onis*, speech, oration.
orator, *oris*, orator.
orbis, is, circle; orbis terrarum, the world.
ordo, inis, rank, order.
Orgetorix, igis, a Helvetian chief.
origo, inis, origin.
orior, *iri*, ortus, oriturus, to rise.
os, *oris*, mouth, face.
os, ossis, bone.
otium, i, leisure, ease.
ovis, is, sheep.
ovum, i, egg.

P.

paco, are, &c., to subdue
pagus, i, canton.
palus, udis, marsh, bog.
paluster, tris, tre, marshy.
panis, is, bread.
par, paris, equal.
paratus, a, um, ready, prepared.
parco, ere, peperc- pars-, & parcit- & pars-, to spare.
parens, entis, parent.
pareo, ere, &c. to obey, be obedient.
paries, etis, wall (of a house).
pario, ere, peper-, part-, to beget, bring forth.
Parmenio, onis, Parmenio.
paro, *are*, &c., to prepare.
parricida, ae, killer of a father, parricide.
pars, partis, part; una ex parte, on one side.

PARTIM.

partim (acc. of pars), partly.
parum, minus, minime, little.
parvus, a, um, small, little.
passus, us, pace; mille passus, a mile.
pastor, oris, shepherd.
patefacio, fec-, fact-, to lay open.
pateo, ere, patu-, to lie open.
pater, patris, father.
patienter, patiently.
patiens, entis, capable of enduring, patient,
patientia, ae, patience.
patina, ae, dish.
patior, i, passus, to suffer, endure, permit.
patria, ae, country.
pauci, ae, a, few.
paulatim, by degrees.
paulus, a, um, little; usually in the acc. and abl. neuter.
pauper, is poor.
paupertas, atis, poverty.
pavor, oris, trembling.
pax, pacis, peace.
peccatum, i, fault, sin.
pecco, are, &c., to do wrong, sin.
pectus, oris, breast.
pecunia, ae, sum of money.
pecus, oris, cattle.
pedes, itis, footman.
pedester, tris, tre, on foot.
pejor, us, (malus,) worse.
pellis, is, skin, hide.
pello, ere, pepul-, puls-, to beat, drive, rout.
pendo, ere, pepend-, pens-, to cause to hang, weigh, pay.
penes, in the power of.
penus, us and i, storehouse.
per, through.
per cutio, ere, cuss-, cuss-, to strike through, kill.

PISCIS.

perdo, ere, did-, dit-, to destroy, lose.
pes duco, ere, to lead through, extend.
per eo, ire, ii, itum, to perish.
per facilis, very easy
per fringo, ere, freg-, fract-, to break through.
perfuga, ae, deserter.
pergo, ere, perrex-, rect- to proceed.
periculosus, a, um, dangerous.
periculum, i, trial, danger.
peritus, skilled.
per moveo, ere, mov-, mot-, to move thoroughly, alarm.
pernicies, ei, destruction.
perpetuus, a, um, unending.
Persa, ae, Persian.
per sequor, i, secutus, to follow perseveringly, overtake.
per suado, ere, suas-, suas-, to persuade.
per terreo, ere, &c., to frighten thoroughly, terrify.
per tineo, ere, tinu-, tent-, to reach, extend, pertain, belong.
per turbo, are, &c., to confound.
per venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to come through, arrive.
pes, pedis, foot.
pessimus, a, um, (malus,) worst.
peto, ere, -iv-, -it-, to seek, ask.
phalanx gis, phalanx.
Philippus, i, Philip.
philosophus, i, philosopher.
pietas, atis, dutifulness.
piget, piguit and pigitum est, it disgusts, irks, troubles: piget me tui, I am disgusted with you.
piger, a, um, slow, lazy.
pilum, i, javelin.
pirata, ae, pirate.
piscis, is, fish.

PISO.

Piso, onis, Piso.
pius, a um, dutiful, pious.
placeo, ere, &c., to please.
Plato, onis, a Grecian philosopher.
plebes, ei and is, and plebs, plebis common people.
plenus, a, um, full.
pluma, ae, feather.
poculum, i, drinking cup.
poema, atis, poem.
Pœni, Carthagenians.
pœnitet, uit, it repents: p. me peccati, I repent of my sin.
polliceor, eri, &c., to promise.
pollicitatio, onis, promise.
Pompeius, i, Pompey.
pomum i, fruit.
pondus, eris, weight.
pono, ere, posu-, posit-, to put, place.
pons, pontis, bridge.
popular, ari, &c., to lay waste
populus, i, people
porta, ae, gate of a city.
porto, are, &c., to carry.
portus, us, harbor.
posco, ere, popposc-, to demand.
possum posse, potui, to be able.
post, after, behind.
postea, afterwards.
posterus, posterior, postremus or postumus, coming after: comp., of less account, inferior.
postquam, (temp. conj.), after.
postulo, are, &c., to demand.
potens, entis, powerful.
potentia, ae, power, ability.
potestas, atis, power, right.
potior, iri, &c., to get possession of, acquire.
prae, before, in comparison with, for: prae maerore, for grief.
praebeo, ere, &c., to furnish.
praeceptum, i, precept; from

PRODITOR.

praecipio, ere, cep-, cept- to instruct, order, command.
praecipue, especially.
praecipuus, a, um, especial.
praeclarus, a, um, very distinguished.
praeco, onis, crier, herald.
praeda, ae, booty.
praedico, are, &c., to boast.
praeditus, a, um, endowed.
praedor, ari, &c., to plunder.
praeficio, ere, fec-, fect-, to put over.
praemitto, mis-, miss- to send forward.
praemium, i, reward.
praepono, posu-, posit-, to prefer.
praesens, entis, present.
praesidium, i, garrison.
praestans, antis, excellent, distinguished.
praesto, are, stit-, stit-, to excel.
praesum, esse, fui, to be over.
praeter, past, besides, beyond.
praeterea, ire, iv-, it-, to pass by
praetermitto, mis-, miss-, to let slip.
praetor, oris, praetor, chief.
pravus, a, um, crooked, depraved.
premo, ere, press-, press-, to press.
pretium, i, price, value.
primus, a, um, first.
princeps ipis, chief.
prior, primus, former, sooner.
priusquam, before.
pristinus, a, um, former.
privatus, a, um, private.
pro, for, before.
procedo, ere, cess., cess., to go forward.
procul, at a distance.
procurro, ere, cucurr- & curr-, curs-, to run forward.
proditor, oris, traitor.

PRŒLIUM.

prœlium, i, battle.
profectio, onis, departure.
pro ficiscor, i, fectus, to set out.
pro figo, are, &c., to dash in pieces.
pro fugio, ere, fug-, fugit-, to flee, run away, escape.
progenies, ei, offspring.
progredior, i, gressus, to go forth or forward.
pro hibeo, ere, &c., to prevent, keep off.
promptus, a, um, ready, quick.
propero, are, &c., to hasten.
propinquus, a, um, near.
propior, proximus, nearer, next.
pro pono, ere, posu-, posit-, to set up.
propositum, i, purpose.
propter, on account of.
propterea, on this account.
pro pulso, are, &c., to repel.
pro sequor, i, secutus, to pursue.
pro sum, prodesse, profui, to benefit, to do good.
providentia, ae, foresight, providence.
provincia, ae, province.
prudens, entis, prudent.
prudentia, ae, prudence.
publicus, a, um, public.
pudet, puduit, it shames.
pudor, oris, shame, modesty.
puella, ae, girl.
puer, i, boy.
pugna, ae, fight.
pugno, are, &c, to fight.
pulcher, a, um, beautiful.
pulchritudo, inis, beauty.
pulvis, eris, dust.
Punicus, a, um, Carthagenian.
punio, ire, &c. to punish.
purgo, are, &c. to cleanse, excuse.
puto, are, to think.

Q.

quadraginta, (§ 63), forty.
quaero, ere, quaesiv-, quaesit-, to seek, ask.
qualis, of what kind, as.
quam, than, as.
quamquam, although.
quamvis, however much, although.
quantus, a, um, how great, as. tantus—quantus, as great—as.
quatuor, (§63) four.
queror, i, questus, to complain.
qui, quae, quod, who, which.
quicumque, whoever.
quidam, §89.
quidem, indeed.
quin, but that, that, but.
quindecim, (§63), fifteen.
quingenti, ae, a, (§63), five hundred.
quippe, surely, since.
quis, §89; quis? §88
quisnam, §88.
quispiam, quisquam, quisque, §89.
quisquis, §87, 2.
quivis, quilibet, §89.
quo, whither.
quo-ad, to what point, as long as, until.
quòd, because.
quo-minus, §193, *Rem.* 5.
quoniam, since, because.
quoque, also.
quot, how many, as.
quotannis, yearly.
quotidie, daily.
quum, when, since, although.

R.

ramus, i, branch, bough.
rapina, ae, plunder, pillage

RAPIO.

rapio, ere, rapu-, rapt-, to snatch, seize, carry off
ratio, onis, plan, reasoning, cause.
Rauraci, orum, a tribe of Gauls.
rebellio, onis, rebellion.
recens, entis, recent.
receptus, us, retreat.
recipio, cep., cept-, to take back, regain, recover. se recipere, to retreat, to recover oneself.
rectus, a, um, straight, right.
recupero, are, &c., to recover.
recuso, are, to object, repudiate.
red-do, ere, did-, dit-, to give back, render, make.
red eo, ire, redi-, redit-, to return.
redigo, ere, eg-, act-, to reduce.
red integro, are, &c., to renew.
reditus, us, return.
re duco, ere, dux-, duct-, to lead back.
re fero, ferre, tul-, lat-, to withdraw.
re fert, retulit, it concerns.
reficio, ere, fec-, fect-, to repair.
regina, æ, queen.
regio, onis, region, tract.
regnum, i, kingdom.
rego, ere, rex-, rect-, to rule.
religio, onis, vow, religion.
re linquo ere, liqui, lictum, to leave.
reliquus, a, um, the rest.
re nuncio, are, &c to carry back word.
reor, reri, ratus, to suppose
repens, entis, sudden.
repente, suddenly.
reperio, ire, reper , repert-, to find out.
repeto, ere, iv-, -it, to seek back.
repudio, are, &c., to refuse.
res, rei, thing
re scindo, ere, scid-, sciss-, to cut down.

SCAPHA.

re sisto, ere, stit-, to resist.
re spondeo, ere, spond-, spons- to answer.
rete, is, net.
re vello, ere, vell-, vuls-, to tear off.
re vereor, eri, &c., to reverence.
re voco, are, to recall.
rex, regis, king.
Rhenus, i, the Rhine.
Rhodanus, i, the Rhone.
robur, oris, heart of oak, strength.
rogo, are, &c., to ask.
Roma, æ, Rome.
Romanus, a, um, Roman.
rosa, æ, rose.
ruber, a, um, red.
rudens, entis, rope, cable.
rudis, e, rude, uncivilized,
rumpo, ere, rup-, rupt-, to break.
rupes, is, rock.
rursus, again.
rus, ruris, country.
rusticus, a, um, living in the country, rustic.

S.

Sabini, orum, Sabines.
sacer, a, um, sacred.
sacerdos, otis priest.
sæpe, often
sævus, a, um, savage, fierce.
sagitta, æ, arrow.
salar, aris, trout.
salto, are, &c., to dance.
saluber, bris, bre, wholesome.
salus, utis, safety, health.
sanctus, a, um, sacred, pure.
sanguis, inis, blood.
sanus, sound, healthy
sapiens, entis, wise.
sapientia, æ, wisdom. [ciently.
satis, enough, sufficient, suffi-
saucius, a, um, wounded.
saxum, i, rock.
scapha, æ, boat, skiff.

SCELUS — SUPERBUS

scelus, eris, crime, wickedness.
scio, ire, &c., to know.
Scipio, onis, Scipio.
scribo, ere, scrips-, script-, to write.
scriptor, oris, writer.
scutum, i, shield.
se cedo, ere, cess-, cess-, to secede.
se cerno, ere, crev, cret-, to separate.
seco, are, secui, sectum, secaturus, to cut.
secundus, a, um, following, second, favorable.
secundum, following, according to.
securis, is, axe.
sed, but.
sedeo, ere sed-, sess-, to sit.
sedes, is, seat, settlement.
sedile, is, seat.
seditio, onis, sedition.
semper, always.
sempiternus, a, um, everlasting.
senatus, us, & i, senate.
senex, senis, old.
sententia, æ, opinion; ex sententia, satisfactorily
Sequanus, a, um, Sequan.
sequor, i, secutus, to follow.
sermo, onis, conversation, talk.
servio, ire, &c., to be a slave, serve.
servitus, tutis, slavery.
servo, are, &c., to preserve.
servus, i, slave.
sex, (§ 63,) six.
sibilo, are, &c., to hiss.
sic, thus.
sidus, eris, star, constellation.
signum, i, sign, signal.
silva, æ, wood, forest.
silvestris or ter, e, woody.
similis, e, like.
simul, at the same time.
simul ac, as soon as.
sine, without.
singuli, æ, a, single, one at a time.
sino, ere, siv-, sit-, to put, permit.
sinus, us, gulf, bay.
sitio, ire, ivi, to be thirsty
sitis, is, thirst.
socer, i, father-in-law.
socius, i, companion.
soleo, ere, solitus, to be used, wont.
solus, a, um, only, alone.
solvo, ere, solv-, solut-, to loose
somnus, i, sleep.
sonus, i, sound.
soror, oris, sister
spatium, i, room, space, time.
specus, us, den, cave, grotto
spero, are, &c., to hope.
spes, ei, hope.
spolio, are, to spoil, rob, plunder
statuo, ere, statu-, statut-, to place put, determine
statura, æ, stature, size, height
stella, æ, star.
stimulus, i, goad.
stipendium, i, tax, tribute.
strenuus, a, um, nimble, active.
studeo, ere, to attend to, be eager for.
studium, zeal, desire; pl. studies
stultus, a, um, foolish.
stultitia, æ, folly
suadeo, ere, suas-, suas-, to advise.
subeo, ire, ii, itum, to go under.
subigo, ere, eg-, act-, to subdue.
subitus, a, um, sudden.
sub levo, are, &c., to relieve.
subsidium, reserve, support, help.
sub venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to come to one's assistance, help.
sui, § 78.
suus, a, um, § 80.
sum, esse, fui, to be.
sumo, ere, sumps-, sumpt-, to take.
supellex, lectilis, furniture.
superbia, æ, pride.
superbus, a, um, proud.

SUPERO.

supero, *are*, &c , to overcome.
superstitio, *onis*, superstition.
surgo, *ere*, surrex-, surrect-, to rise.
suscipio, *ere*, *cep-*, *cept-*, to undertake.
suspicor, *ari*, &c., to suspect.
sustineo, *ere*, tinu-, tent-, to sustain.

T.

taceo, *ere*, &c., to be silent.
tædet, uit, it wearies, disgusts.
talentum, i, talent.
talis, e, such.
tam, so.
tamen, nevertheless.
tametsi, although.
tandem, at length.
tango, ere, tetig-, tact-, to touch.
tantus, a, um, so much, so great.
tantus-dem, adem, udem, just as much.
tardo *are*, &c., to delay, retard.
tardus, a, um, slow.
Tarquinius, i, Tarquin.
taurus, i, bull.
tectum, i, roof.
tellus, *uris*, earth.
telum, i, dart.
temere, rashly.
tempestas, *tatis*, time, weather, (good or bad), tempest.
templum, i, temple.
tempus, oris, time.
tenax, *acis*, tenacious.
teneo, *ere*, tenu-, tent-, to hold.
tento, *are*, &c., to attempt.
tenuis, e, slender.
tergum, i, back.
terminus, i, end, limit.
terra, æ, earth, ground.
terreo, *ere*, &c., to frighten.
terror, *oris*, terror, fright.
tertius, a, um, (§63), third.
testis, is, witness.

TURBIDUS.

Thebæ, *arum*, Thebes.
Thrax, *acis*, Thracian.
thronus, i, throne.
Tiberis, is, the Tiber.
timeo, *ere*, timu-, to fear.
timidus, a, um, cowardly.
timor, *oris*, fear, panic.
tolero, *are*, &c., to endure.
tondeo, *ere*, totond-, tons-, to shear.
tonitrus, us, thunder.
tot, so many.
*tot*us, a, um, whole.
tra do, ere, did-, dit-, to deliver over, hand down.
tra jicio, cre, *jec-*, ject-, to ship over.
tra mes, itis, by-path.
tra no, *are*, &c., to swim across.
trans, across, beyond.
trans *duco*, ere, dux-, duct-, to lead over.
trans eo, ire, transi-, transit-, to go across, pass over, pass away.
transjicio, *see* traj.
tres, tria, (§63), three.
trib*u*nus, i, tribune.
tribus, us, tribe.
tribuo, ere, ui, *utum*, to give, assign.
triduum, i, three days' time.
triennium, i, three years' time.
tripartito, in three divisions.
triplex, icis, triple.
tristis, e, sad.
trucido, *are*, &c., to slay, butcher.
tuba, æ, trumpet.
tueor, *eri*, tuitus & *tutus*, to protect.
Tullius, i, Tully.
Tulli*a*num, i, a prison at Rome: built by king Servius Tullius.
tum, then.
tumultus, us, tumult, uproar.
tumulus, i, mound.
tunc, then.
turba, æ, crowd.
turbidus, a, um, disordered, muddy

TURBO.

turbo, are, &c., to throw into confusion.
turbo, inis, whirlwind.
turpis, e, base.
turris, is, tower.
tutor, ari, &c., to defend, protect.
tutus, a, um, safe.
tuus, a, um, § 80.
tyrannus, i, tyrant.

U.

ubi, where, when.
ubique, every where.
ulciscor, i, ultus, to avenge.
ullus, a, um, gen. any.
ululo, are, &c., to howl.
umbra, æ, shadow, shade.
umquam or unquam, ever.
una (parte), in one place together.
unda, æ, wave.
unde, whence, from which.
undique, on all sides.
universus, a, um, all, universal.
unus, a, um, one.
urbs, urbis, city.
uro, ere, uss-, ust-, to burn.
usus, us, using, use, practice.
ut, that, in order that.
uter? a, um, which of the two?
uterque, aque, umque, both.
utilis, e, useful.
utinam, O that!
utor, i, usus, to use.
uxor, oris, wife.

V

vaco, are, &c., to be unoccupied.
vacuus, a, um, empty.
vadum, i, ford.
vagor, ari, &c., to wander about.
valeo, ere, -ui, to be strong, well.
vallis, is, valley.
vallum, i, rampart.
varius, a, um, various.
vastitas, atis, devastation.
vasto, are, &c., to lay waste.
vates, is, prophet.

VIRTUS.

vectigal, alis, tax.
vehementer, (expressive).
veho, ere, vex-, vect-, to carry.
vel, or, even.
velox, ocis, swift.
velum, i, sail.
venator, oris, hunter.
vendo, ere, vendid-, to sell.
venenum, i, poison.
venio, ire, ven-, vent-, to come.
venter, tris, belly.
ventus, i, wind.
ver, veris, spring.
verbum, i, word.
vereor, eri, &c., to be afraid, fear.
vergo, ere, to turn, incline.
veritas, atis, truth.
Verres, is, Verres, (name).
versus, us, verse.
verus, a, um, true.
vescor, i, to eat.
vesper, i, & is, evening.
vester, a, um, § 81.
vestigium, i, foot-print.
vestis, is, clothing.
vetus, eris, old, ancient.
vexillum, i, flag, ensign.
vexo, are, to vex, harass, ruin.
via, æ, way.
victor, oris, conqueror.
vicus, i, village.
video, ere, vid-, vis, to see; passive, to seem.
vigilia, æ, watch.
vigilo, are, to watch.
viginti, (§ 63), twenty.
vincio, ire, vinx-, vinct-, to bind.
vinco, ere, vic-, vict-, to conquer.
vinculum, i, chain.
vinum, i, wine.
vir, viri, man, husband.
virgo, inis, virgin.
viridis, e, green.
virtus, utis, courage, virtue.

VITA.

vita, æ, life.
vitium, i, vice.
vitreus, a, um, made of glass.
vivo, ere, vix-, vict-, to live.
vivus, a, um, alive.
vix, scarcely.
voco, are, to call.
volo, velle volui, to will.
volo, are, &c., to fly
volvo, ere, volv- volut-, to roll.

VULTUS.

voluptas, atis, pleasure.
voro, are, &c., to devour.
voveo, ere, vov- vot-, to vow.
vox, vocis, voice.
vulgus, i, common people.
vulnero, are, &c., to wound.
vulnus, eris, wound.
vultur, uris, vulture.
vultus, us, countenance.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

Ability, potestas.
able (*to be*), possum.
abound, abundo
about, circiter, de.
above, super, supra
absent, absque; *to be* ~, abesse.
abuse, abuti, (*use amiss*;) maledicere, (*speak amiss*.)
access aditus.
accomplish, conficio *For the sake of those things*, ad eas res conficiendas.
accuse arguo, accuso.
accustom consuesco.
accustomed (*to be*), soleo.
acquire, comparo
acquit, absolvo.
across, trans.
afar, a, ab, e.
add, addo.
address appellare, compellare.
admire miror.
admonish, moneo.
adorn, decoro.
advance progredior, procedo.

ALTHOUGH.

advantage, commodum.
advice, consilium.
Æduan, Æduus.
affair, res.
afford, præbeo.
afraid, (*to be*) timeo, metuo, vereor.
after, (*prep.*) post; (*conj.*) postquam, posteaquam.
afterwards, postea.
against, contra, ad, adversus.
age, ætas.
agreeable, acceptus, gratus.
agriculture, agricultura.
aid, (*n.*,) auxilium.
aid, (*v.*,) subvenio.
air, aer.
alarm, perturbo, perterreo
Alexander, Alexander.
all, omnis
allure, illicio.
already jam.
also, etiam, quoque.
altar, ara
although, licet, quamvis, quanquam, etsi, &c

AMBASSADOR.

ambassador, legatus.
ambassy, legatio.
ambush, insidiæ.
among, (*of things*,) inter; (*of persons*,) apud.
ancient, vetus, antiquus.
anger, ira.
angry, iracundus.
———, *to be*, irascor.
animal, animal.
annoy, vexo.
another, (*of two*,) alter; (*of many*,) alius.
answer, respondeo.
any, § 89.
apiece, expressed by distributive numerals, § 63, 1, c.
approach, aggredior, accedo.
archer, sagittarius.
arise, orior.
arm, *v.*, armo.
arms, arma.
around, circum.
arrival, adventus.
arrow, sagitta.
art, ars.
as, (*conj.*) quam.
as great—as, tantus—quantus.
as many—as, tot—quot.
such—as, talis—qualis.
just as much—as, tantusdem—qu.
ascend, ascendo.
ascert in, cognosco.
ashamed, (*to be*) *pudet*, § 135, c.
ask, rogo, peto, interrogo.
asleep, (*to fall*) dormito.
assault, oppugno.
assert, confirmo.
assistance, auxilium; (*to come to one's assistance*,) subvenio.
atrocious, atrox.
attack, (*n.*), impetus.
attack, (*v.*), oppugno, aggredior.
attempt, tento, conor.
authority, auctoritas.

BODY.

avoid, vito.
await, exspecto.

B.

back, tergum.
bad, malus.
barbarian, barbarus.
base, turpis.
battle, prœlium.
be, esse.
bear, fero, tolero.
beat, (*defeat*), pello, vinco.
beautiful, pulcher.
beauty, pulchritudo.
because, quod, quia, quum.
become, fio; *it becomes*, decet.
bed-chamber, cubiculum.
bee, apis.
before, (*prep.*) ante; (*conj.*) antequam, priusquam.
beg, rogo, peto.
begin, cœpi.
behold, conspicio, aspicio.
behoove, *it behooves*, opertet.
believe, credo.
benefit, beneficium.
best, optimus.
bestow, *labor*, *pains*, operam dar.
between, inter.
beware, caveo.
big, magnus, amplus.
bind, vincio.
bird, avis.
birth, natus, us; *before one's birth*, ante aliquem natum.
bite, mordeo.
biting, morsus.
blame, reprehendo, incuso.
blind, cæcus.
blood, sanguis.
boar, aper.
boast, prædico.
boat, scapha, linter.
body, corpus; *nobody*, nemo, nullus; *anybody*, § 89.

BOLDLY.

boldly, audaciter.
book, liber.
born, (*to be*), nascor.
both, ambo (*both together*), uterque (*both separately*). *On both sides*, utrimque; *by both parties*, ab utrisque.
boundary, finis.
bow, arcus.
boy, puer.
brave, fortis.
bravely, fortiter.
bread, panis.
break through, perfringo.
break (*a law*), violo.
bribe, (*v.*), largior.
bribe, (*n.*), largitio, pecunia.
bridle, infreno.
bring, fero; *bring word*, nuntio; *bring back word*, renuntio.
Britain, Brittannia.
Briton, Britannus.
broad, latus.
brother, frater.
build, ædificare.
bull, taurus.
burden, onus.
burn, incendo, exuro. *burn down*, *be burnt down*, deflagro
business, negotium, res, (*pl.*)
but sed, verum, vero.
buy, emo.
by far, longe.

C.

calamity, calamitas.
call, vocare; —— *together*, convocare; —— *back*, revocare.
camp, castra.
can, possum.
canton, pagus.
captive, captivus.
care, cura.
carry, porto, fero.
cause, causa.

COUNTRY.

cavalry, equitatus.
certain, certus; *a. c. one*, quidam.
chain, vinculum.
chance, casus, fors.
characteristic, (*it is c. of a poor man*, pauperis est.)
chariot, currus.
chief, princeps.
children, liberi.
choose, deligo.
citizen, civis.
city, urbs.
civil, civilis.
civilization cultus, humanitas.
cloud, nubes.
collect, colligo, comparo.
come, venio.
command, jubeo, impero.
commit (*to any one*,) mando.
common, communis: *c. people*, plebs.
commonwealth, respublica.
companion, comes, socius.
compel, cogo.
complain, queror.
conceal, celo.
condemn, condemno.
confess, confiteor.
conquer, vinco.
conscious, conscius.
conspire, conjuro.
conspiracy, conjuratio.
consul, consul.
consult, consulo.
contend, contendo, certo.
contest, certamen.
convenience, commodum.
conversation, sermo.
cook, coquo.
corn, frumentum.
correct, corrigo.
corrupt, corrumpo.
cost, stare aliqua re.
countenance, vultus
country, terra, regio.

COURAGE.

courage, virtus, fortitudo.
covetous, avarus.
cowardly, timidus.
create creo.
crime, scelus.
cross, transeo.
crown, corona.
cruel, crudelis, atrox.
cultivate, colo.
cup, poculum.
custom, consuetudo; *according to custom*, ex consuetudine.
cut, secus.

D.

dance salto.
danger, periculum.
dare, audeo.
dart, telum.
day, dies; *to-day*, hodie.
dead, mortuus.
dear, carus.
death, mors.
debate, disputo.
deceive, fallo.
decoy, illicio.
dedicate, dico.
deem, existimo, duco, haeco
deep, altus
defend, defendo, defenso, tueor.
defer, differo
delay, moror.
delight, delecto juvo.
demand posco, postulo, flagito.
deny, nego.
depart, discedo.
depraved, pravus.
deprive, privo, spolio.
depth, altitudo.
desire, cupio.
desirous, avidus, cupidus.
despair, despero.
destitute, expers., inops.
destroy, deleo.
devoid, vacuus, expers.

END.

devour, voro, devoro.
dictator, dictator.
die, morior
differ (*in opinion.*) dissentio.
difference; — *what d. does it make?* Quid interest?
difficult, difficilis.
disgrace dedecus.
dish, catinus catinum.
dismiss, dimitto.
displease, displiceo.
dispute disputo
distant, (*to be.*) absum.
distinguished, praestans, praeclarus.
ditch, fossa.
divide, divido.
do, facio
dog canis.
double, duplex. *to double* duplico
doubt, dubitatio. *to doubt*, dubito.
doubtful, dubius.
dove columba
down-hill, deorsum.
drink bibo
dust, pulvis.
duty officium, munus. *It is the king's duty, my duty*, §133.
dwell, habito, incolo.

E.

eagle, aquila
earth terra tellus.
earthen, fictilis
easy facilis; *easily*, facile. *very easy* perfacilis
eat, edo, vescor.
edict, edictum; *to issue an edict*, edico.
egg, ovum.
eight, octo, §63.
either—or, aut—aut.
eloquence eloquentia.
embassy, legatio
encamp, castra pono consido.
encourage, hortor, cohortor.
end, finis.

ENDEAVOR.

endeavor, conor.
endure, fero, patior, tolero.
enemy, hostis.
enmity, inimicitia.
enough, satis.
err, erro.
especially, præcipue.
special, præcipuus.
establish, confirmo, constituo.
esteem, æstimo.
even etiam; *not even*, ne quidem.
every omnis.
evil, malus, (noun,) malum.
excellent, præstans.
excite, concito, excito, instigo.
excuse, purgo.
exercise exercitus.

F.

face, facies.
faithful, fidus.
fall, cado.
fame, fama.
famous, clarus.
far, (*adv.*), longe.
farmer, agricola.
father, pater.
fault, culpa, delictum, peccatum.
it is my fault, per me stat.
favor faveo.
fear, timor, metus; *to fear*, timeo, metuo, vereor.
feather pluma.
fertile, ferax.
fever, febris.
few, pauci.
field, ager.
fifty, § 63.
fight, (*v.*), pugno; (*n.*), pugna.
figure, figura.
fill, compleo, impleo.
find, invenio, reperio.
finish, conficio.
fire, ignis.
first, primus.
fish, piscis.

GATE.

fit, aptus, idoneus.
five, § 63.
flag, vexillum.
flank, latus; *on the fl.* ab latere.
flattering, blandus.
fleet classis.
flesh caro.
flock, grex.
flog, verbero.
flow, fluo; — *into*, influo.
flower flos.
fly, volo.
follow, sequor.
fond, amans, cupidus.
food cibus.
fool, foolish, stultus.
folly, stultitia.
foot, pes; *at the foot of a mountain*, sub monte.
footman, pedes.
for, (*conj.*), nam, enim, &c.
for these things, ob has res.
for grief, (*preventing cause*,) præ mœrore.
for the purpose, causa.
force, vis.
forces, copiæ.
forest, silva.
forget, obliviscor.
form, forma, figura.
fortify communio.
fortitude, æquus animus, fortitudo.
fortune, fortuna.
four § 63.
free, (*adj.*), liber; (*v.*), libero.
fresh integer.
friend, amicus.
friendship, amicitia.
fright, pavor, timor, terror.
frighten, terreo.
fruit, fructus.
full, plenus.
furniture, supellex.

G.

garden, hortus.
gate, porta.

GENERAL.

general, imperator.
German, Germanus.
Germany, Germania.
gift donum.
girl, puella.
give, do.
glory, gloria.
go, eo, profiscor.
— *out*, exeo.
God, deus.
gold, aurum.
golden, aureus.
good, bonus.
goose, anser.
govern, rego, impere.
grammar, grammatica.
grandson nepos.
great, magnus.
green, viridis.
Greece, Græcia.
grief, dolor, mœror.
ground, terra, humus.
grow, cresco.
guard, præsidium.
guest, hospes.
guide dux.
gulp down, devoro.

H.

half, dimidium.
hand, manus.
happy, beatus.
harbor, portus.
hasten, propero, festino, maturo.
hatred, odium.
have, habeo, esse with dative.
head, caput.
hear, audio.
heart, cor.
heavy, gravis; *heavily*, graviter.
heel, calx.
height, altitudo.
help, auxilium.
hide, abdo, lateo.
high, altus.

INSOLENCE.

hill, collis.
hinder, impedio, obsto.
hindrance, impedimentum.
hold, teneo, habeo,—*in*, contineo.
home, domus.
hope, spes; *to hope*, spero.
horn, cornu.
horse, equus.
horseman, eques.
hostage, obses.
hour, hora.
house, domus.
human, humanus.
hunger, fames.
hungry, esuriens.
hunter, venator.
hurl, conjicio.
hurt, noceo.
hurtful, noxius.

I.

I, ego.
if, si.
ignorant, ignarus, inscius.
image, effigies.
imitate, imitor.
immortal, immortalis.
immortality, immortalitas.
impatient, impatiens.
implore, obsecro.
import, importo.
impossible, (*it is*,) fieri non potest.
incapable of restraining, impotens.
increase, augeo, cresco.
indulge, indulgeo.
infant, infans.
inferior, *of less account*, inferior.
infinite, infinitus.
inflict, inferre.
inform certiorem facere.
inhabit, incolo.
inhabitant, incola.
injure, noceo, injuria, lacesso.
injury, injuria.
insolence, insolentia.

INSTIGATE.

instigate, insito, instigo
instruct, instituo, præcipio.
introduce, introduco.
intrust, mando.
invade, invado.
inventor, inventor.
invincible, invictus.
invite, invito.
iron, ferrum.

J.

journey, iter.
joyful, lætus, jucundus.
judge, judex.
just, justus, æquus.

K.

keep, servo; *keep in*, contineo; *keep off*, prohibeo.
key, clavis.
kid, hœdus.
kill, occido, trucido, neco.
kind, benignus.
king, rex.
kingdom, regnum.
knife, culter.
know, nosco, scio; *not to know*, nescio.

L.

labor, labor.
lamb, agnus.
language, lingua.
land, terra, ager.
last, ultimus.
law, lex, jus.
lead, duco; *lead on*, adduco, induco; *to lead over*, transduco; *to lead against*, adduco.
leaf, folium.
learn, disco.
learned, doctus.
leave, relinquo.
legion, legio.
length, longitudo.
less, minor.
letter (*epistle*), epistola.
letter (*of the alphabet*,) litera.
levy, conscribo.
liberty, libertas.

MISERABLE.

lie (*bid*), lateo.
to lie, mentior.
lie (*falsehood*), mendacium.
liar, mendax.
life, vita, anima.
light, (*adj.*), levis; (*n.*), lux.
like, similis.
line of battle, acies.
lion, leo.
little, parvus.
live, vivo, habito.
liver, jecur.
load, onus.
to load, onero.
long, (*adj.*), longus; (*adv.*), diu.
look at, aspicio.
look to, consulo (*with dat.*)
lose, amitto.
love, amor; *to love*, amo.
low, humilis.
lurk, lateo.
lute, fides, ium.

M.

magnanimous, magnanimus.
maid-servant, ancilla.
make, facio, reddo.
maltreat, violo.
man, homo, vir.
manner, modus.
many, multi; *how many*, quot.
marble, marmor.
mast, malus.
master, magister, dominus.
means, facultas.
measure, metior.
medicine, medicina.
memory, memoria.
merchant, mercator.
Mercury, Mercurius.
messenger, nuntius.
milk, lac.
mile, mille passus.
mind, animus, mens.
miserable, miser.

MONEY.

money, pecunia.
month, mensis.
moon, luna.
morals, mores.
more plus, amplius, magis.
mother, mater.
mountain, mons.
move, moveo.
much, multus.
murder, neco, occido
music musica.
must, §178.

N.

name, nomen.
nation, natio, gens.
nature, natura. [quus.
near, (*prep.*) prope; (*adj.*) propin-
need, opus.
neglect, neglego.
neighboring, finitimus.
neither (*of two*) neuter.
neither—nor, neque—neque, nec—nec—neque
nest, nidus; *to build a n.*, nidifico.
net, rete
never, nunquam, ne unquam
new, novus.
next, proximus
night, nox
nine, §68
no, nullus
no one, *none*, n.—quisquam
noble, nobilis.
nobility, nobilitas.
noise, clamor, strepitus.
none, nullus.
not, non.
nothing nihil.
number, numerus.

O.

O! O! oh!
O that! utinam
oath, jusjurandum.
obedient, dicto audiens.

PERISH

obey, pareo.
obscure, obscuro.
obtain, potior, nanciscor.
occupy, occupo. [bus.
off, — *two miles off*, a duobus milli-
often, sæpe. [annos natus.
old, senex; *five years old*, quinque
oldest, maximus natu.
one, unus; — *of two*, alter; — *of many* alius, (*when followed by another.*)
on horseback, ex equo *or* equis
opinion, sententia
opportunity, facultas, potestas.
oppress, opprimo.
or, vel, ve, aut
oracle, oraculum.
orator, orator.
oration oratio.
origin, origo.
ought oportet, *or* debitive with esse.
our, noster.
out of, e, ex
overcome, supero, vinco
overtake, consequor.
ox, bos.

P

pace, passus.
pain dolor
pains, opera.
panic, timor.
parent parens.
parricide, parricida.
part pars.
partly, partim.
pass away, transeo
pass by prætereo.
patiently, æquo animo.
pay, pendo.
peace, pax. [plebes.
people populus; *common p.*, plebs,
perceive, intelligo, animadverto.
perish, pereo.

PERSUADE.

persuade, persuadeo.
philosopher, philosophus.
pirate, pirata.
pity, misereor, miseret, § 135.
place, locus.
pleasant, gratus.
please, placeo.
pleasure, voluptas.
plow, aro.
to *plunder*, prædor, diripio.
plunder, præda.
poet, poeta.
point, acies.
poison, venenum.
poor, pauper.
post, locus.
poverty, paupertas, egestas.
power, potestas, vis.
powerful, potens.
prefer, præpono.
prepare, paro.
present, presens.
preserve, servo, conservo.
prevent, impedio, obsto, deterreo.
price, pretium.
pride, superbia.
priest, sacerdos.
prison, carcer.
prisoner, captivus.
private, privatus.
promise, polliceor.
protect, tutari.
proud, superbus.
providence, providentia.
province, provincia.
provoke, lacoesso.
prudent, prudens.
public, publicus.
punish, punio.
purpose, propositum; *on p.*, consulto.
pursue, persequor.
put, pono; —*into winter quarters*, in hiberna collocare.

Q.

queen, regina.
quickly, celeriter.

R.

rain, imber.
ram, aries.
rampart, vallum.
rank, ordo.
reach, ad locum pervenio.
read, lego.
ready, promptus, paratus.
reason, *mental faculty*, ratio.
rebellion, rebellio.
rebuke, reprehendo.
recall, revoco.
receive, accipio.
recent, recens.
redress, (*to ask*,) res repetere.
refinement humanitas.
refrain, sibi temperare quin.
reject, repudio.
rejoice, gaudeo.
relieve, levo.
religion, religio.
remain, maneo.
remember, memini, memoria teneo.
remind, moneo, admoneo.
render, reddo.
renew, redintegro.
repair, reficio.
repent, pœnitet, § 135.
reply, respondeo.
report, renuntiatio.
reprove, reprehendo.
resolve, statuo.
rest, reliquus, § 128, *Rem.* 6.
retard, tardo.
retire, excedo, se recipere.
retreat, recipio.
return, redeo, reddo.
reverence, revereor.
reward, præmium.
Rhine, Rhenus.
Rhone, Rhodanus.
rich, dives.

RICHES.

riches, divitiæ.
ride, equito.
river, flumen, amnis.
road, via, iter.
robber, prædo.
rock, rupes, saxum.
rope, rudens.
rose, rosa.
rough, asper.
rout, fugo, profligo.
rule, rego.
run, curro; — *forward*, procurro.

S.

sacred, sacer, sanctus.
sacrifice, macto.
safe, tutus.
safety, salus.
sagacious, argutus.
sail, velum. *to sail*, navigo.
sailor, nauta.
sake, causa.
same, idem.
savage, atrox, ferus.
save, servo.
say, dico inquam.
scout, explorator.
sea, mare.
seat, sedile.
second, secundus.
see, video.
seek, peto, quæro.
seem, videor.
seize, occupo, rapio, arripio.
sell, vendo.
senate, senatus.
send, mitto; — *forward*, præmitto.
separate, divido, secerno.
serpent, serpens.
serve, servio.
set, pono; *set up*, colloco, propono.
seven, § 63.
severe, gravis.
shade, umbra.

STIR UP.

sheaf, merges.
sheep, ovis.
shear, tondeo.
shepherd, pastor.
shield, scutum.
ship, navis.
shore, litus.
short, brevis.
shortness, brevitas.
shout, clamor; *to* ———, clamo.
show, monstro.
side, latus, pars.
signal, signum.
silver, argentum.
sin, peccatum.
since, quum, quoniam.
sing, canto.
sister, soror.
sit, sedeo.
six, § 63.
size, magnitudo.
slave, servus
slavery, servitus.
slay, trucido, occido.
sleep, dormio.
slinger, funditor.
slow, tardus, piger.
small, parvus, exiguus.
snatch up, arripio.
soldier, miles.
some, aliquis, quidam, &c.
son, filius.
soon, mature.
soul, animus.
space, spatium.
spare, parco.
speak, loquor.
speech, oratio.
spur, calcar.
stag, cervus.
stand, sto; — *out*, exsisto.
state, civitas.
stay, maneo.

STONE.

stone lapis.
storm, tempestas.
strength, robur, vis.
strike, percutio.
strong, firmus, validus.
study, studia, pl.
subdue, paco.
subjugate, subigo.
such, talis.
sudden, subitus, repentinus.
sue for, peto.
sufficiently, satis.
suitable, aptus, ideneus.
summer, æstas.
sun, sol.
sunset, solis occasus.
sup, cœno.
superstition, superstitio.
support, sustineo.
suppose, arbitror, opinor, existimo.
suppress, opprimo. [deditio.
surrender, trado, dedo; *surrender*,
surround, circumdo, circumfundo.
suspect, suspicor.
sustain, sustineo.
sweet, dulcis.
swell, augeo.
swift, celer, velox.
swiftly, celeriter.
swiftness, celeritas.
swim across, trano.
sword, gladius; *the sword*, ferrum.

T.

table, mensa.
take, sumo, capio.
talk, loquor, colloquor.
teach, doceo.
tear, lacrima.
tear to pieces, lanio.
tempest, tempestas.
temper, (*hasty*,) iracundia.
ten, § 63.
tenacious, tenax.
terrible, atrox, terribilis.

UNDERTAKE.

terrify, perterreo.
than, quam.
then, tum.
thick, densus.
thief, fur.
thing, res.
think, reor, cogito, existimo, puto.
thirst, sitis. *to thirst*, sitio.
thirty, § 63.
though, § 209.
thousand, mille.
threaten, minor,
through, per. [transjicio.
throw, jacio, jacto; *throw across*,
thrust through, transfigo.
thunder, tonitru.
till, dum, donec, quoad.
time, tempus
together, una, con-
tooth, dens.
top, summus, (mons, &c.)
torture, cruciatus.
towards, ad, adversus.
tower, turris.
town, oppidum.
traitor, proditor.
transport, transporto.
treaty, fœdus.
tree, arbor.
tribute, stipendium.
true, verus.
truth, veritas.
trumpet, tuba.
trust, confido.
turn, verto.
twenty, two, &c., § 63.

U.

unable, impotens, *to be*—, non posse.
unaccustomed, insuetus.
unarmed, inermis.
uncertain, incertus.
under, sub.
understand, intelligo.
undertake, suscipio.

UNDULY.

unduly, praeter modum.
unnatural, impietas.
unhurt, integer.
unjust, iniquus.
unlike, dissimilis.
until, dum, donec, quod.
unwilling, invitus; *to be* —, nolo.
urge on, concito, incito.
use, usus.
useful, utilis.

V.

vacant, *to be*, vaco.
valor, virtus, fortitudo.
vast, ingens, immanis.
very, valde, maxime, —, *to give*, vexo.
vice, vitium.
victory, victoria.
violate, violo.
virtue, virtus, probitas.
vowe, vox.
vow, votum.
vulture, vultur.

W.

wage, gero; —— *upon*, infero.
wait for, exspecto.
walk, ambulo.
wall, murus.
wander, erro, vagor.
want, *be in want of*, egeo.
war, bellum.
warn, moneo, admoneo.
watch, vigilia; *to watch*, vigilo.
water, aqua.
wave, fluctus.
way, via, iter.
weak, infirmus.
weary, fessus, defessus.
weep, lacrimo, fleo.
weight, pondus.
well, bene; *to be*—vale.
what? quid? quis? *what*, quod.
when, quum.
whence, unde.

YOUTH.

where, ubi.
whether, num, utrum, an.
which? quis? uter, *of two*.
while, albus.
whither, quo.
who? qui? quis?
whole, totus.
why? cur? quare?
wicked, improbus.
wide, latus.
wife, uxor, conjux.
wind, ventus.
wine, vinum.
wing, ala.
winter, hiems.
winter quarters, hiberna.
wisdom, sapientia.
wise, sapiens.
wish, volo.
with, cum.
without, sine.
witness, testis.
woman, mulier.
wonder, miror.
wonderful, mirus.
wood, silva.
word, verbum; *bring*, —, *mult*.
work, opus.
world, mundus, orbis terrarum.
worse, *worst*, pejor, pessimus.
worship, colo.
worthy, dignus.
wound, vulnus; *to wound*, vulnero.
wretched, miser.
writ, scribo. *writer*, scriptor.
wrong, (*to do*,) pecco, male facio.

Y.

year, annus. *yearly*, quotannis.
yesterday, heri.
yet, tamen.
yield, cedo, concedo.
yoke, jugum.
your, tuus, vester.
young, juvenis. *youth*, juventus.

Our Own Series of School Books

PREPARED BY

Richard Sterling, A. M., & J. E. Campbell, A.

CONSISTING OF

I. Our Own Primer. For the use of children, pp. 32, 12mo.

II. Our Own Spelling Book. For schools. pp. 112.

III. Our Own First Reader. Arranged to follow the Primer and containing easy lessons for those beginning to read, with spelling lessons accompanying. pp. 72, 12mo.

IV. Our Own Second Reader. The lessons in this book have been carefully selected to suit the progress of those who have finished the First Reader, and at the same time to furnish both entertainment and instruction, pp. 168, 12mo.

V. Our Own Third Reader. In this book the most difficult words of each lesson are defined, to aid the pupil in understanding what he reads. Each lesson is also followed by an Exercise to be written on the black-board or slate, for the purpose of teaching the pupil to spell and punctuate. These exercises contain a vast amount of useful and interesting information in regard to places and things in the Confederate States. pp. 200.

VI. Our Own Fourth Reader. The lessons in this book will be found to possess high literary merit, without being above the capacity of the young reader. Definitions of the more difficult words are continued. The selections are almost entirely from writers in our own country.

VII. Our Own Fifth Reader. A rhetorical Reader for the more advanced classes in Academies and High Schools. This book consists chiefly of selections from the writings of authors of the highest literary attainments in the Confederate States.

OUR OWN SCHOOL GRAMMARS.

By C. W. Smythe, A. M.

Our Own Primary Grammar. Designed for the use of beginners, and containing only the simple facts of the language. pp. 72, 12mo.

Our Own School Grammar. Designed for our Schools and Academies, as a sequel to the Primary Grammar, and embracing a complete elementary statement of the subject.

STERLING, CAMPBELL & ALBRIGHT,

PUBLISHERS,

GREENSBORO, N. C.